



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





1. France - Hist.

Hattie Winslow
Sept 1881

Josie Winslow

Sept 1882

March 1883

Fannie Winslow

Sept.

KIT

Francis Boston
Finished it
June 5th 1813.

FRENCH HISTORY

FOR

ENGLISH CHILDREN

stephen
DAL



Sub in R.D.
12/9/25 O.K.

FRENCH HISTORY

FOR

ENGLISH CHILDREN

1

BY

SARAH BROOK

NEW YORK
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

WITH COLOURED MAPS

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.

1881

E.c.

TO NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
225277A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1925 L

TO NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
225277A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R 1925 L

TO LAWRENCE

WHO WAS BORN

THE SAME WEEK THAT THIS BOOK WAS BEGUN

IT IS DEDICATED

AT PRESENT WITHOUT PERMISSION

BY THE AUTHOR

1881

5 X 4 9 2



CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
ANCIENT GAUL	1

CHAPTER II.

CÆSAR IN GAUL (B.C. 58-51)	6
--------------------------------------	---

CHAPTER III.

GAUL A ROMAN PROVINCE (B.C. 70-250 A.D.)	12
--	----

CHAPTER IV.

CONQUEST OF GAUL BY THE FRANKS (300 A.D.)	15
---	----

CHAPTER V.

THE MEROVINGIAN KINGS (481-687)	19
---	----

CHAPTER VI.

THE MAYORS OF THE PALACE (687-741)	26
--	----

	PAGE
CHAPTER VII.	
THE CARLOVINGIANS (741-768)	32
CHAPTER VIII.	
CHARLEMAGNE (771-814)	37
CHAPTER IX.	
DESCENDANTS OF CHARLEMAGNE (814-843)	44
CHAPTER X.	
THE LAST CARLOVINGIAN KINGS (843-987)	48
CHAPTER XI.	
HUGH CAPET—ROBERT (987-1031)	55
CHAPTER XII.	
HENRY I. (1031-1060)	61
CHAPTER XIII.	
PHILIP I. (1060-1108)	68
CHAPTER XIV.	
LOUIS VI. (1108-1137)	77

	PAGE
CHAPTER XV.	
LOUIS VII. (1137-1180)	82
CHAPTER XVI.	
PHILIP II. (1180-1223)	91
CHAPTER XVII.	
PHILIP II.—(<i>continued</i>). 1180-1223	100
CHAPTER XVIII.	
LOUIS VIII. (1223-1226)	109
CHAPTER XIX.	
LOUIS IX. (1226-1270)	112
CHAPTER XX.	
PHILIP III. (1270-1286)	123
CHAPTER XXI.	
PHILIP IV. (1286-1314)	130
CHAPTER XXII.	
LOUIS X. (1314-1316)	139

CHAPTER XXIII.	
PHILIP V. (1316-1322)	PAGE 144
CHAPTER XXIV.	
CHARLES IV. (1322-1328)	149
CHAPTER XXV.	
PHILIP VI. (1328-1350)	153
CHAPTER XXVI.	
JOHN (1340-1356)	164
CHAPTER XXVII.	
CHARLES V. (1364-1380)	176
CHAPTER XXVIII.	
CHARLES VI. (1380-1422)	183
CHAPTER XXIX.	
CHARLES VI.—(<i>continued</i>). 1392-1422	191
CHAPTER XXX.	
CHARLES VII. (1422-1461)	199

	PAGE
CHAPTER XXXI.	
LOUIS XI. (1461-1483)	213
CHAPTER XXXII.	
CHARLES VIII. (1483-1498)	223
CHAPTER XXXIII.	
LOUIS XII. (1498-1515)	230
CHAPTER XXXIV.	
FRANCIS I. (1515-1547)	236
CHAPTER XXXV.	
FRANCIS I.—(continued). 1515-1547	246
CHAPTER XXXVI.	
HENRY II. (1547-1559)	254
CHAPTER XXXVII.	
FRANCIS II. (1559-1560)	263
CHAPTER XXXVIII.	
CHARLES IX. (1560-1574)	271

CHAPTER XXXIX.

	PAGE
HENRY III. (1574-1589)	284

CHAPTER XL.

HENRY IV. (1589-1610)	296
---------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLI.

HENRY IV.—(<i>continued</i>). 1598-1610	305
---	-----

CHAPTER XLII.

LOUIS XIII. (1610-1643)	316
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLIII.

LOUIS XIV. (1643-1715)	329
----------------------------------	-----

CHAPTER XLIV.

LOUIS XIV.—(<i>continued</i>). 1643-1715	340
--	-----

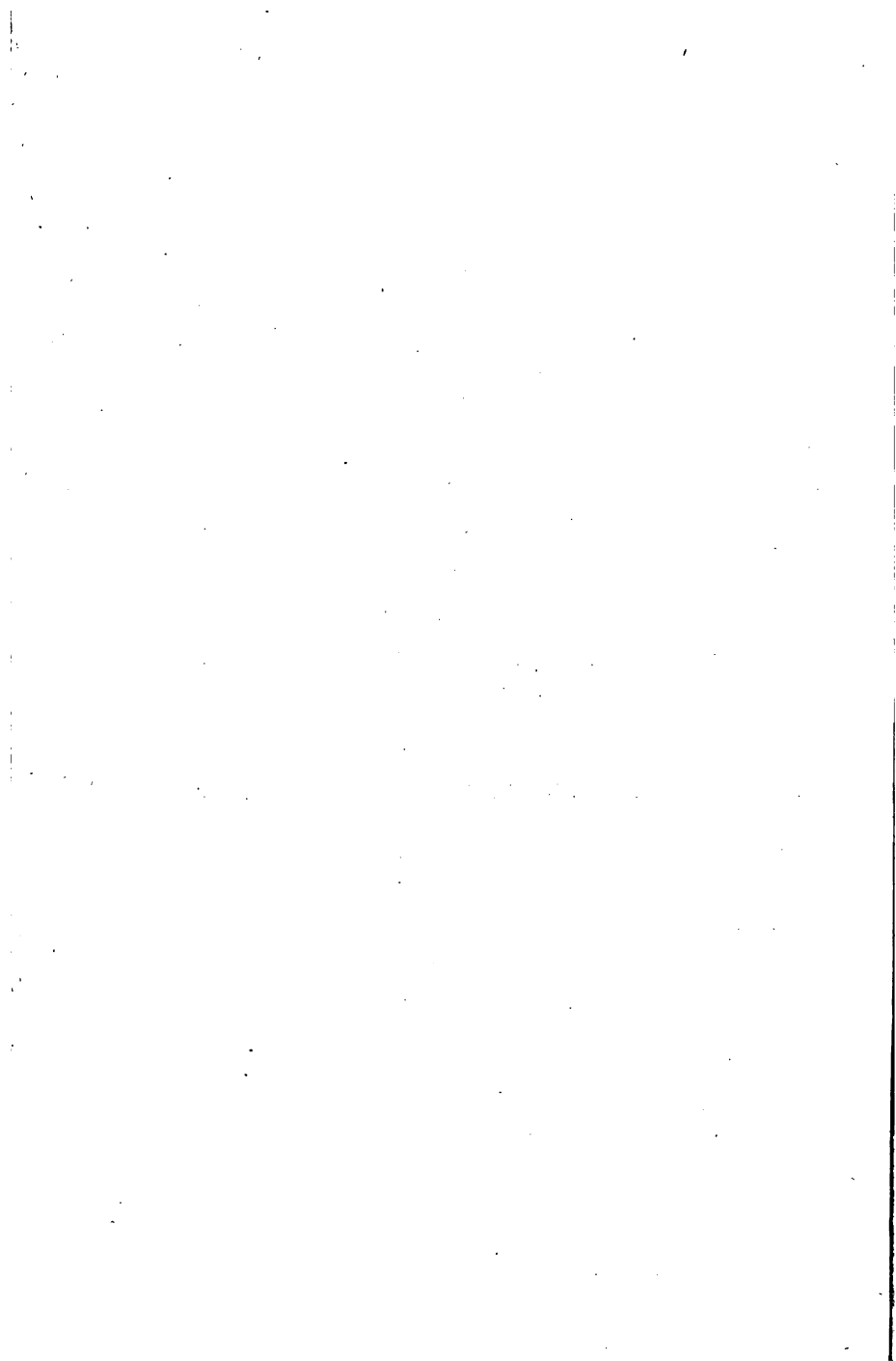
CHAPTER XLV.

LOUIS XIV.—(<i>concluded</i>). 1643-1715	350
--	-----

CHAPTER XLVI.

LOUIS XV. (1715-1774)	362
---------------------------------	-----

	PAGE
CHAPTER XLVII.	
LOUIS XVI. (1774-1792)	375
CHAPTER XLVIII.	
THE REVOLUTION (1789-1792)	391
CHAPTER XLIX.	
THE REVOLUTION (1792-1795)	408
CHAPTER L.	
DIRECTORY AND CONSULATE (1795-1800)	420
CHAPTER LI.	
THE EMPEROR NAPOLEON (1804-1815)	434
CONCLUSION.	
CONCLUSION (1815-1880)	446



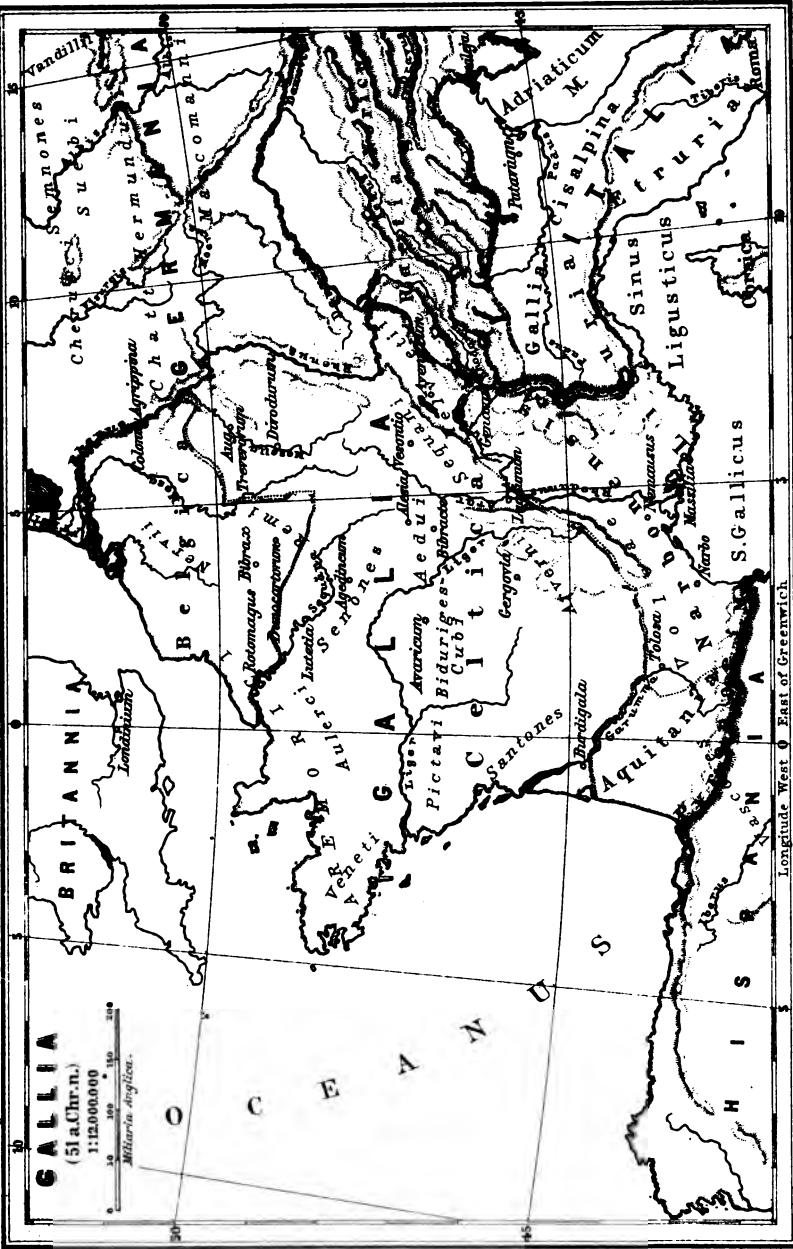
LIST OF MAPS.

	I.	
GALLIA		<i>To face page 1</i>
	II.	
THE EMPIRE OF THE FRANKS IN 507		19
	III.	
THE EMPIRE OF CHARLEMAGNE		47
	IV.	
FRANCE IN THE ELEVENTH CENTURY		61
	V.	
FRANCE IN THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY		101
	VI.	
FRANCE IN 1328-1461		153
	VII.	
FRANCE, 1589-1610		297
	VIII.	
FRANCE, 1643-1715		329
	IX.	
EUROPE, 1811		435



THE ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION
PUBLIC LIBRARY

French History.



Longitude West 0 East of Greenwich

London, Macmillan & Co.

Wagner & Debes Geog. Ensch. Tafeln.

FRENCH HISTORY

FOR

ENGLISH CHILDREN.

CHAPTER I.

ANCIENT GAUL.

THE country which we now call France was not always called so, nor were the people who live in it always called the French. When it is first mentioned, which is in old Latin books written more than 1800 years ago, it is called Gallia, or Gaul, and the people are spoken of as Gauls.

Gaul was in some respects the same as France is now, and in some respects very different. It was the same, or nearly the same, in its mountains, rivers, and some of the chief towns; it was different in its roads, fields, villages, and more than all, in the people who lived in it. When I say that all the towns were the same, I do not mean that they look the same now as they did then, but that the Gauls had towns in many of the places where the French now have them, and that they have lasted with almost the same names ever since.

If you look at the map you will see that France is a country about three times as big as England; it has the

sea on two sides of it, the north and the west; on the south are first a range of mountains called the Pyrenees, separating it from Spain, and farther along another sea called the Mediterranean; on the east some more mountains called the Alps, Germany, and Belgium. Some way to the east of the eastern boundary you will see a river called the Rhine flowing from the south to the north, and ending in the German Ocean. Many of the rulers of France have wished and done their best to conquer the countries between France and the Rhine, but in this they have never succeeded.

There are in France four great rivers, and many smaller ones; they now flow through great cities and well-cultivated fields, often bearing steamboats and barges, and supplying water to hundreds of villages, mills, and factories. In the time of the old Gauls they flowed through immense forests, which covered a great part of the country, and through swamps where no one lived but elks, beavers, and great wild bulls, larger and fiercer than any that are now to be seen. The Gauls themselves were wild and fierce; they knew very little except about hunting and taking care of the flocks; they had no clothes, but painted their bodies, and pricked patterns on their skins, which is called tattooing, and which they thought a great ornament. Sometimes hatchets and knives of stone which belonged to the old Gauls are found buried in the ground in France, or arrows pointed with sharp stones, or spears to hunt the boar, or long narrow shields, which they used in war, or some of their small boats made of willow and covered with the skin of some beast, usually of an ox, like the coracles of the old Britons, of

which you have read. Gaul was in those days a colder country than France now is; the winds were more violent, and the rivers were often covered with ice.

By degrees the Gauls began to find out that their country was fertile; that is, that whatever seed they sowed in the ground would grow up quickly and bear good fruit, and some of them began to make it their business to sow seed, and cut down the grain when it grew up, and to work in the fields as our farmers do, so that the people might have something else to eat besides the animals that the hunters brought home. The Gauls invented ploughs and sieves, and other useful instruments. As time went on, they found that besides being fertile, their country was rich in metals; they dug mines and found copper, iron, lead, and even silver and gold. Ships came to Gaul from other countries, and brought useful and beautiful objects of all kinds, which they gave to the Gauls in return for some of the metal out of the mines. The Gauls grew rich, and spent their riches in making themselves more comfortable in many ways. Their food at this time was chiefly pork and ham, and they kept great flocks of pigs in their forests and meadows; they drank a sort of beer made of barley. In some parts of Gaul they had begun to grow the vine, which we find now all over the south of France, and from which the French get grapes to make their wine.

The Gauls began to wear clothes and ornaments; rings and bracelets of gold or other metal, and they built themselves houses of earth and wood, covered with straw or thatch. They made walls round their villages of beams of wood and blocks of stone, to protect them from their

enemies, for they were still very much in the habit of going to war with one another, and they had other enemies besides, as we shall see.

The Gauls, like the old Britons, were heathens, and believed in many gods, who lived, as they thought, in the earth, the forests, the rocks, and the rivers. Their priests were called Druids, and were old and wise men, who had studied often for twenty years before they were considered wise enough to become "Men of the Oak," which was the name of the chief Druids.

The Druids taught the young men, and gave them lessons in all kinds of natural history; and they held a great meeting every year, at which they settled any question or dispute that might be brought for them to decide, and sometimes they made laws for the country. But their chief business was to worship their gods, and teach the people how to worship them. Once every year the Druids went out to look for mistletoe, which they believed to be a sacred plant, and they thought it specially valuable when it grew upon the oak, which they considered the finest of trees. When the mistletoe was found upon an oak, the people came from all parts of the country and stood round the tree, while a Druid, dressed in white, climbed up with a golden sickle, and cut off the mistletoe, which the other Druids caught in a white cloth, and carried away as a precious treasure. They thought that gathering this mistletoe was pleasing to their gods, for the Gauls did not know of the one God in whom we believe, and who cares only that people should do right, and not that they should gather plants, however precious and rare, in His honour. But the Druids did worse than this, for they

thought it was pleasing to their gods to kill men—usually prisoners taken in battle—at their altars. They also believed that by killing one man they might persuade the gods to spare the life of another who might be ill or in danger. There were female Druids, called Druidesses, who usually lived by the sea-shore in some wild, lonely place, and were often to be seen by night waving torches and singing wild songs in the darkness. The people supposed them to have the power of raising or quieting the winds and waves by their song.

CHAPTER II.

CÆSAR IN GAUL (B.C. 58-51).

I SAID that the first books in which the Gauls are spoken of are Latin books. Latin was the language of the Romans, the most powerful nation that has ever existed. The people of Rome began by conquering the cities near them, till they were masters of all Italy, and they then made war upon the countries round Italy, amongst others, upon Gaul. The Romans were wiser than the Gauls, and had better arms and better generals, and knew how to make roads from one place to another, and bridges across any rivers that might be in their way; and they were soon masters of part of the south of France, where they built cities and settled themselves. Some of the Gauls had fought against the Romans, and tried to prevent them from coming into the country, and these people the Romans treated harshly, making them obey the Roman governors and pay them great sums of money. Other Gauls had yielded to the Romans at once, and they were allowed to remain free, promising to help the Romans whenever they went to war.

Julius Cæsar was a great Roman general, who was sent by the consuls or chief rulers of Rome to govern the part of Gaul which had already been conquered, and to conquer the people of some of the farther part, who seemed inclined to rise up against the Romans. He had a great deal of

hard fighting for eight years, for the Gauls resisted him very bravely; and it often happened that in some part of the country which he had just conquered, and where he thought the people would remain faithful to their promises to him, they would rise up against him as soon as his back was turned, and all his work would have to be done over again. Cæsar, in his accounts of these wars, often speaks of the Gauls as faithless and changeable, ready to believe the first person who spoke to them, especially any one who told them they were ill-treated, and advised them to rise up against the Romans.

The Gauls sometimes asked for help from the Germans who lived on the other side of the Rhine, who were far more savage and wild than the Gauls had now become, and who liked fighting better than any other employment; so much so, that after helping the Gauls against the Romans, they would sometimes themselves turn against the Gauls, and take some of their land from them. Thus Cæsar had often Gauls and Germans fighting together against him, but he was so wise and brave a general, and his soldiers obeyed him so well and showed such patience and courage, that all Gaul was at last conquered by the Romans, and was improved by them in many ways.

I will now give an account of the siege of Alesia, that you may have some idea of the way in which the Gauls and Romans fought. I must first say that the people of Gaul were divided into tribes or separate bodies, living each in a special part of the country, and each tribe under chiefs or principal men of its own. Some tribes were much larger than others; some of the larger had more than two hundred thousand members, while others had only a few

hundred. The part of the country where each tribe lived was called after the name of the tribe, so that Gaul was broken up into divisions something like the English counties, but with the difference that they had no one ruler over them like our Queen, nor government of any kind like our Houses of Parliament. Each tribe managed its own affairs for itself, and they often made war upon one another. It is clear that a country would not be likely to grow rich or strong while its people were fighting among themselves. If the men of Middlesex had a war with the men of Kent, no ships from London would be able to go down the Thames, and if there were a chance of such a war, it is not likely that we should have built ships which might so easily be taken from us by enemies. Railroads, too, would never have been made over all England if the different counties were in the habit of going to war with each other. One of the great improvements that Cæsar made in Gaul, was to force the different tribes to live in peace. This gave them time to attend to working in their fields, improving their towns, and other peaceful and useful occupations. In course of time the different tribes became friendly, and their country was divided into provinces, which were afterwards formed into a kingdom with one king over them.

The siege of Alesia, which I am going to describe, happened towards the end of Cæsar's wars in Gaul. All the Gaulish tribes had joined together to try and drive him out of the country, and at their head they had a brave leader named Vercingetorix, meaning General-in-chief. After having been defeated by Cæsar in several battles, and lost many great cities, Vercingetorix led his army to a town called Alesia, and set up his camp there. The

town was on the top of a hill, with other hills round it, a plain in front, and a river flowing on each side. Cæsar brought his army to the foot of the hill, and began to dig a deep ditch, called a trench, to protect his men from any sudden attack of the Gauls. When Vercingetorix saw that Cæsar meant to shut him and his army up in Alesia, and to oblige them to yield to him by not allowing any food to come in to them, he sent away a body of his soldiers to try and collect food for him in their own countries, and to make their way back with it through the army of the enemy. He kept with him eighty thousand of his best soldiers to help him to resist Cæsar.

Cæsar built towers and a wall behind the trench; behind these again two other trenches, then another wall with stakes like stags' horns sticking out from it to prevent the enemy from climbing up it, and with turrets all along the top. He made another small trench, at the bottom of which he stuck very sharp stakes hidden by branches of trees, so that whoever got down into it should be run into by the stakes. These works went the whole way round the foot of the hill on which Alesia stood, a distance of eleven miles. The men in Alesia finding that Cæsar had made all these preparations against them, and that their friends did not come back to bring them food, held a council, in which one of their chief men made a speech, proposing that all the old, weak, and useless people in the town should be put to death, and eaten by the others. Many of the Gauls said that this cruel plan was too horrible, and refused to listen to it. It was at last settled that these old and weak people should be sent away from

the Gaulish camp, and try to make their way past the Romans and out into the country beyond; but Cæsar would not let them pass him, and they had to go back into the town.

In the meantime, the Gauls who had been sent away to fetch food, came back with a store, and tried to make their way into the town, but the Romans came out to fight them, and drove them away. The Gauls in Alesia came out from the town shouting, to encourage their friends, but when they saw them drawing back before the Romans, they returned, disappointed, into the town. A few days later, the Gauls made a fierce attack on the Roman camp, but in vain; they went from one part to another, throwing earth into the trenches so that they might pass safely even over those with stakes at the bottom, but everywhere they met the Roman soldiers, and Cæsar stood on a high hill to watch his men, and send help to any of them who seemed to be in difficulty. At last, seeing that his soldiers were beginning to yield, he rushed down himself into the battle. The Romans gave a shout, threw away the darts or javelins with which they had been fighting, drew their swords, and followed Cæsar; some of the horse soldiers went round to surprise the Gauls at the back. The Gauls turned and fled. Cæsar went on to the gates of the city, which was the next day given up to him.

Vercingetorix assembled his soldiers in the town, and told them that he was ready to give himself up to Cæsar if they wished it, or that, if they chose, they might kill him, as he thought that if he were dead, or Cæsar's prisoner, Cæsar might be willing to spare the lives of his

soldiers. The Gauls settled that he should be given up to Cæsar with the other chiefs.

Cæsar sat at the head of his soldiers, and all the Gaulish chieftains in turns were brought before him, and laid down their arms. Cæsar took to Rome the general Vercingetorix, who was afterwards put to death in prison; he gave to each Roman soldier one Gaul for a slave, as a reward for their victory.

CHAPTER III.

GAUL A ROMAN PROVINCE (B.C. 70-250 A.D.)

WHEN Cæsar was made Consul, or chief ruler in Rome, he had no more time to attend to the Gauls; but many of the Romans stayed in Gaul, and built or conquered cities there, and lived under Roman laws. They taught the Gauls who lived near them to talk their own language, Latin; and most of the words which the French use now are so much like Latin that a person knowing one of these languages finds it a great help in understanding the other. The Gauls improved in many ways; they learned to dress like the Romans, to build their houses of stone and marble instead of wood and earth, and to make roads through their thick forests, so that it might be easy to go from one part of the country to another. Many schools and colleges were set up, and the Gauls learned to read Latin, and also studied law and science, and whatever else the Romans would teach them. Many Gauls changed their old names and took Roman ones.

When the Gauls began going to the Roman colleges, and reading Latin books, they left off caring to be taught by the Druids, for the Druids had no books, but learned everything by heart, and knew much less than the Romans. By degrees the people left off believing in the Druids and their old gods altogether, and determined to worship the

same gods as the Romans; the Roman priests took for themselves the riches of the Druids, and the Druids hid themselves in wild parts of the country, and were at last forgotten by the people. In some parts of England and Ireland and France, we still see the circles of stones, or the curious piles of four stones, called cromlechs or dolmens, three stones standing round, and one lying on the top, which mark the places where the Druids sacrificed in old days.

The Gauls lived thus peacefully for about three hundred years; they came to be considered as Roman subjects, and the Romans helped them whenever they were attacked by any of the fierce German tribes who lived on the other side of the Rhine. These tribes were, as I said before, very wild and ignorant, loving nothing so well as war, and apt sometimes to come into Gaul and carry off anything they could find, food or goods or treasures, from the people. The most important thing that happened to the Gauls during this time was that many of them became Christians. Men came from Italy to teach them about the one God in whom we now believe, and many, both of the Romans and the Gauls, listened to them, believed what they said, and left off praying to idols and sacrificing to their gods. The other Gauls were at first angry at this change, drove the Christians out of the towns, and put some of them to death; but by degrees more and more of them began to believe the new teaching, till at last all the country became Christian. ✕

Each city had a bishop, the old Roman temples were turned into churches, and figures of the Apostles were set up instead of the statues of the old Roman emperors. By

this time every one had left off speaking the Gallic language, and the Gauls used a kind of bad Latin, which at last became French, a good deal like what is now spoken in France. The Gauls, during all these years, seemed to be growing more and more wise and happy, and to be improving in every way ; but the people were really not happy, for the Romans expected them to pay great sums of money, which were spent, not in Gaul, but in Rome, for the Roman emperor to pay his army, or use in whatever way he chose. The Gauls knew that it would be of no use to refuse to pay the money, for the Romans were stronger than they ; but when they paid it they had very little left for themselves, and this made them dislike the Romans, who were themselves growing poorer and weaker, and less brave and wise, every year. Another reason for the unhappiness of the Gauls was that a great number of them were slaves, and were very badly treated by their masters, who often went away to amuse themselves at Rome or other great towns, leaving the poor slaves, with very little food and bad houses to live in, to work on their lands and make money for them to spend when they came back.

CHAPTER IV.

CONQUEST OF GAUL BY THE FRANKS (300 A.D.)

I SAID that the Romans were growing weaker and less wise than they had been ; the fierce tribes of Germany, on the other hand, were growing stronger and more powerful. Many of them left their own country, which was not so pleasant as Gaul or Italy, because the people had not taken any pains to improve it, and it was still covered with thick forests and swamps, and had no good roads or corn-fields, or orchards, and was altogether dreary and poor ; so the German tribes came in great numbers, some into Gaul and some into Italy. The Roman emperors sent soldiers, and sometimes went themselves, to help the Gauls to resist these enemies, but in vain ; there were so many of them, that as soon as one army had been defeated, another appeared. At one time Rome itself was taken by the Germans, and though they were afraid to stay there long, they did a great deal of harm, for they stole or destroyed most of what they found.

Many of the Germans had passed through Gaul on their way to Rome, and had destroyed the harvests, the trees, and the flocks, besides taking the people for slaves.

A writer of that time says :—"Neither strong places surrounded by water, nor castles built upon steep rocks, could escape their furious attacks and cunning stratagems.

If the whole ocean had flowed over the Gaulish lands, the ruin of Gaul would have been less complete." After nearly a hundred years of this trouble and disturbance, one of the Roman emperors made an agreement with the King of the Goths, one of the German nations, that he would give up to the Goths a third part of Gaul, keeping for Rome only one province in the south, which was nearer to Italy, and could be more easily defended than the others.

The Gauls were in despair. After fighting against the Germans for more than sixty years, and bearing bravely all kinds of want and suffering, they were to become the subjects and probably the slaves of their fierce enemies. They wrote in vain to the emperor, begging not to be delivered up to the Goths; they then turned for help to the Greek emperor, who also refused to hear them; they were at last forced to yield to the Goths. Two other German tribes had also made themselves masters of a part of Gaul; of these the fiercest and most savage was that of the Franks, who, for some reason, were better liked by the Gauls, especially by the Gaulish bishops, than the Goths or any other Germans.

The King of the Franks died and left his crown to his young son Clovis, who showed himself, as he grew up, to be a wise and brave prince. He first attacked and conquered the Roman chief who was governing the part of the country which had been kept by Rome. Clovis took from him several provinces, which was the name given to divisions of the country like our English counties. He afterwards made war against a fierce tribe of Germans who were trying to force their way into Gaul and settle there, as the Goths, Burgundians, and Franks had done.

Clovis at this time was, like the other Franks, a heathen, but his wife was a Christian, and had often tried to persuade him to be the same. In a great battle against the Germans the Franks seemed likely to be defeated. Clovis called for help upon the God of his wife, and swore that if he conquered in this battle, he would become a Christian. The Franks were victorious, and Clovis was baptized with all his chief warriors. After this the Gaulish clergy took the side of the Franks more than ever; the Goths were also Christians, but they believed some things which the clergy thought were untrue, while the Franks believed just what the Romans taught them.

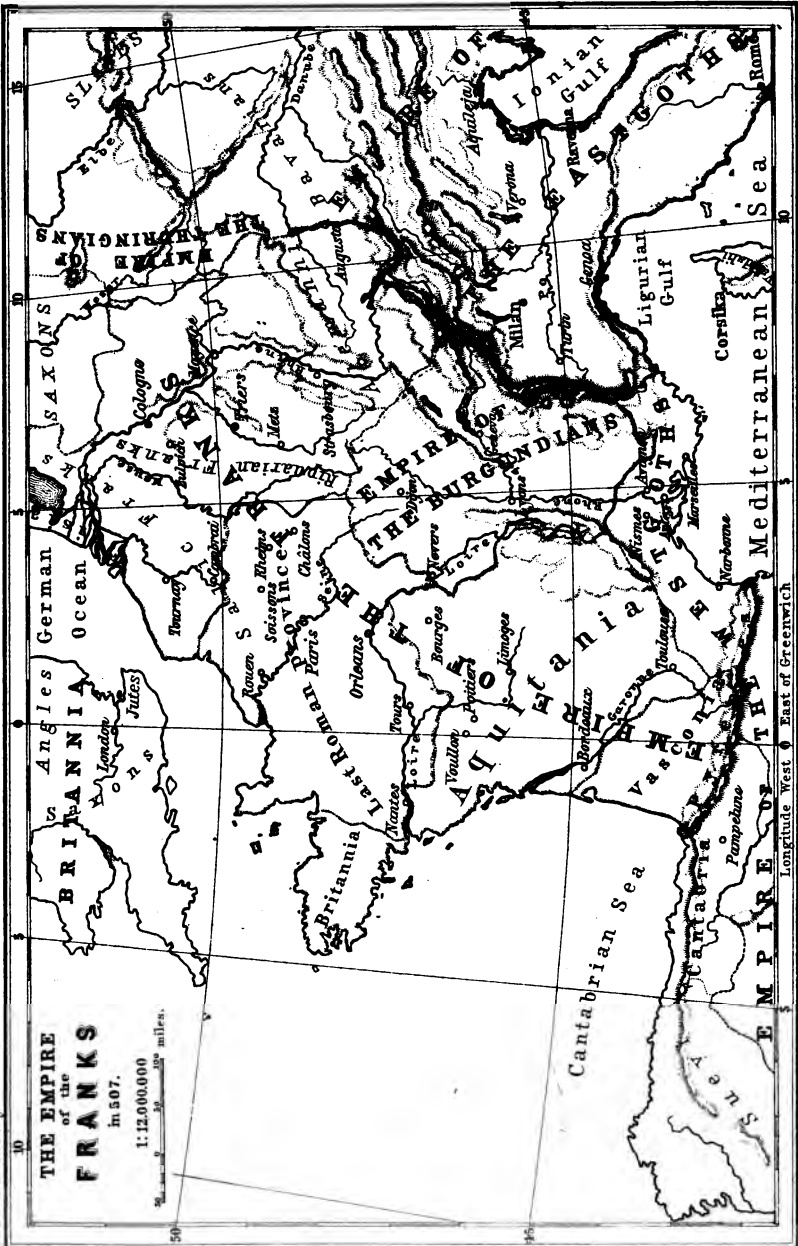
Clovis, however, though he was a Christian, was still horribly fierce and cruel. He killed many of his relations and the other princes of his tribe, so that there might be no one to try to become king instead of him. He conquered all the land of the Burgundians, and a great part of what belonged to the Goths, so that he became king of almost all the whole of Gaul. The Franks settled themselves comfortably in the country, and more and more Franks from Germany were constantly passing into Gaul and establishing themselves there.

The Franks, like most barbarous people, had a great dislike to living in towns; the king, when he was not at war, went from one part of the country to another, hunting and amusing himself, and his chief warriors followed him. He gave them land for their own to reward their services to him. This land they kept for their lifetime, and sometimes left it to their sons, for the chiefs often grew as powerful as the king, so that when he wished to take back the land he was not able to do so.

Sometimes in war the chiefs took land for themselves, and gave parts of it to their followers without the king having anything to do with it. You see that it was very different being king of the Franks from being king of any of the countries of Europe at the present day. If an Englishman conquers land now, it belongs to the Queen; if a Frenchman conquers it, to the French Republic; if a German, to the Emperor of Germany. But the king in those days was not much more than the general of his tribe, having very little power over them in times of peace, and he was obliged to allow the chiefs to keep the land they had won, because he could not prevent them from doing so.

We do not know much of the state of the Gauls at this time. Probably they were rather better off at first under the Franks than they had been under the Romans, because the Franks were not accustomed to have slaves, and did not expect such large sums of money from the Gauls as the Romans had done; but the country soon fell into all kinds of disturbance and confusion, and the Gauls were worse off than they had ever been before.

THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



London, Macmillan & Co.

Wagner & Debes' Geogr. Atlas, Leipzig.

CHAPTER V.

THE MEROVINGIAN KINGS (481-687).

WHEN Clovis died he left four sons. It was a custom among the Franks that the sons of a king should divide among themselves the country that their father had governed. In most of the countries of Europe, at the present time, the eldest son becomes king of the whole kingdom on the death of his father, and the younger sons are made Dukes, and have money given to them, but no part of the country to govern, which is a much better plan, for when there are different rulers of equal power in the same country, they are almost sure to go to war with each other, and no country can be prosperous while one part of its people is fighting against another part. The sons of Clovis divided their father's kingdom into four parts, and drew lots to settle which division should belong to each of them.

One had Paris and the country round, and was called King of Paris, another was King of Orleans, a third King of Soissons, and the fourth, who reigned over that part of Gaul which was nearest to Germany and to the river Rhine, was King of Metz. The Franks then began to attack the wild neighbours who lived to the south and east of them, and they were usually successful in their wars. In a battle against the Burgundians the King of Orleans

was killed. He left three sons, still children, who were under the care of their grandmother.

Their uncles, the Kings of Paris and of Soissons, seized the children and carried them away. They then sent to the grandmother a pair of scissors and a sword, with a message, saying, "We await thy wishes as to the three children; shall they be slain or shorn?" that is, shall they be killed, or shall they have their hair cut off, and be turned into monks—men who live shut up from every one in a building called a monastery, and do nothing but pray and sing hymns, and never come out into the world again. When the poor old grandmother got this message, "Shall they be slain or shorn?" she was in such despair at the idea of the children being shut up all their lives in a monastery, that she cried out, "Slain rather than shorn." When the cruel uncles heard this, they seized up in their arms first the eldest boy and then the second, and killed them by dashing them against the floor, but some one who was standing near caught up the third boy, carried him out, and escaped with him. The child was put into a monastery, and lived and died a monk. After his death he was worshipped as a saint, and St. Cloud, a village near Paris, where many of the French kings have lived, was named after him.

The lands of the King of Orleans were divided between the Kings of Soissons and of Paris, and when the King of Paris died soon after, the King of Soissons became ruler of the whole.

The King of Metz meanwhile had died, and left his kingdom to his son, a brave prince, who made many expeditions against the Germans, and tried to govern wisely

with the help of a Gaulish friend, who taught him much that he himself had learned from the Romans. The King of Soissons at last seized his land also, and so became the only king of the Franks. He died soon after, saying, "Oh! how great must be the King of Heaven, if He can thus kill so mighty a king as I."

I have not mentioned the names of the four sons of Clovis, because they are long, hard, and so much like one another, that it is confusing to try to remember them; and as they lived so long ago, and we know so little about them, their names are not very important to us. It is more useful to know the names of their chief cities, as that gives us some idea as to what part of the country that is now France belonged to the Franks at the time of which I am writing.

Paris, Orleans, Soissons, and Metz, the four towns after which these four kings were called, are all near together, and all in the same part of France. If the whole of France were divided into three horizontal strips, that is, strips running from east to west—Paris, Soissons, and Metz would all be in the topmost or most northern strip, and Orleans close to the top of the next strip. This northern part of the country, where the Franks had settled, was called after them, *Francia*, and all the country that the Franks conquered was also called *Francia*, till at last that name belonged to all that had been Gaul, and it was but a small change to pronounce *Francia* as we now do *France*.

The King of Soissons died, and, like his father, left four sons. One became King of Paris, another King of Soissons, another King of Burgundy, and the fourth, who governed the same country that had before belonged to the

King of Metz, was now called King of Austrasia, a word meaning east kingdom. Burgundy was a country which had been conquered by the last king of Orleans; it was south of Francia, and on the east side of France.

The King of Paris died, and the King of Soissons, whose name was Hilperik, seized upon his lands, joined them to his own, and called the whole Neustria, or west kingdom. Frankish Gaul was now divided into three parts, Neustria, Austrasia, and Burgundy. Neustria was the country which is now the north of France; the country which was Austrasia is now part of it the north-east corner of France; part of it Belgium, and part of it the western side of Germany. The Neustrians and Austrasians were usually at war with each other; the Burgundians took the side sometimes of one, sometimes of the other.

The kings of Neustria and of Austrasia had each the misfortune, or the folly, to have a horribly wicked wife; they are almost the worst women of whom we ever hear. The Queen of Neustria was called Fredegond, the Queen of Austrasia Brunehild, and it would be hard to say which of the two was the worse. Fredegond was at first the slave of the King of Neustria, who had a young and amiable wife; Fredegond murdered the wife, and persuaded Hilperik the king to marry her instead. The king was a weak and bad man; having married her, he let her do all the bad things she chose, and sometimes helped her in them. She had two of her stepsons murdered; she murdered a bishop who had displeased her; she murdered the King of Austrasia, who had conquered her husband in battle, and had just been declared King of Neustria, as well as of Austrasia; at last she murdered her husband.

She then governed, and governed well, the kingdom of Neustria for her son, who was still a child, and when she died she left him firmly settled on the throne. Brunehild, Queen of Austrasia, was a bitter enemy of Fredegond, for which she had good reason, as the queen whom Fredegond had murdered, in order to become queen herself, was Brunehild's sister. Brunehild persuaded her husband, who was by nature a peaceful man, to make war on the Neustrian king: he was successful, as I said before, and had just been declared King of Neustria when two pages sent by Fredegond appeared before him, pretended to have business to do with him, and while he was talking to them murdered him.

Brunehild was taken prisoner, but managed to escape, and went back to Austrasia, where she governed the country for her son, who was a child like the King of Neustria. She built churches, made roads, and was great and prosperous, till she quarrelled with the chiefs of the country, and murdered several of them. They rose against her, and drove her into Burgundy. She made war upon them, and in later years murdered her grandson with his children because he took part against her. At last she was taken prisoner by the Austrasians, and put to death with great cruelty.

After the death of Brunehild, Fredegond's son became King of all the Franks, and in Neustria every one obeyed him; but in Austrasia he found two sets of enemies, the great chiefs and the bishops. The bishops had by this time become rich and powerful; they had a great deal of land, for people who were dying, and had no children to whom to leave their land, often left it to the Church, and

even those who had children often thought it right to leave to the Church some of their land or some money.

The clergy, by which I mean all the clergymen in the country—bishops, deans, village priests, spoken of together—had separate courts of justice. If a clergyman did anything wrong, he was not tried like other men in the court belonging to the king, or to one of the great lords of the country, but he was tried in the court of the clergy, judged by the clergy, and punished less severely than he would have been if tried in the other courts. The bishops in Austrasia thought themselves too great to obey the king in everything he chose to command, so they and the great Austrasian chiefs joined together to resist the king if he did anything to displease them.

The clergy had one power which the king never tried to take from them, it was that of sheltering and protecting people who came for safety into the churches. Any man who was pursued by an enemy, or who wanted to escape from any danger, might go into a sanctuary, which was either some particular church or the chapel of some monastery, or the place where some saint or good man was buried. When a person was in a sanctuary he was safe, no one might come in after him to take him away, and so long as he stayed there his enemies could not get at him. It was no matter whether he was good or bad, whether he was trying to escape from wicked enemies, or from honest people wishing to punish him for some harm that he had done; any one who had gone into the sanctuary to hurt him there, or to drag him out of it by force, would have done what was thought to be a most wicked deed, and would probably have been killed by the priests on his way.

When any great person, such as a prince or noble, was in sanctuary, his servants were allowed to go in and wait upon him; and the clergy of the place provided food and whatever else they might want for those who were poor. One of the people whom Fredegond tried to murder, her own stepson, stayed in sanctuary for some time, with the soldiers of the king, his father, watching to take him prisoner when he should come out. He got tired of the sanctuary at last, left it secretly, and was soon after caught and murdered.

This power of the clergy was on the whole useful to the country, as the Franks were still fierce and cruel, and the strong often ill-treated the weak, and found no one to prevent them. When there were no fixed laws by which it could be settled what people might and might not do, and very few wise judges to determine whether any particular person had done wrong or not, it was very likely that people would be punished unjustly, and it was a good thing that there should be means by which innocent people could escape, even though people who were not innocent sometimes made use of them.

CHAPTER VI.

THE MAYORS OF THE PALACE (687-741).

WHEN Clotaire, son of Fredegond, died, he left two sons. They did not, as their uncles and great-uncles had done, divide the land into two parts and each reign over one ; but one of them, whose name was Dagobert, gathered together an army and made himself master of both Neustria and Austrasia. He gave to his brother land in the south part of the country, a part which no Frankish king had ever before even visited, so that the people felt great pride and pleasure in having a king to themselves. Dagobert took Paris for his chief town ; he made himself a splendid court, took journeys through the country doing justice to his subjects, and made presents of lands and goods to the people whom he wished to have for friends. "His coming struck terror into bishops and chiefs, but filled the poor with joy." He encouraged the building of churches, and had copies of the old Frankish laws written out and sent about the kingdom. }

After ten years he died, leaving two sons, one eight and the other four years old. The elder had already been made King of Austrasia, for the Austrasians had wished for a king to themselves, and Dagobert had sent them his elder son ; the younger was King of Neustria. Of course while they were children these kings had no power, but

they did not gain more as they grew up. There followed three more kings in Neustria and four in Austrasia, none of whom could make themselves obeyed, or were considered as of any importance in the kingdom.

In both countries the chief man next to the king was called the Mayor of the Palace; he had the chief command in time of war, and sometimes had to hold a court and do justice. The Mayor of the Palace was chosen by the chiefs, and in Austrasia always took their side against the king; in Neustria he usually took the side of the king against the chiefs. As the kings' power grew less, that of the chiefs increased; the kings came to be known as *Fainéant* or *Do-nothing* kings, and the really important person was the Mayor of the Palace.

All the kings who had descended from Clovis were called *Merwing* or *Merovingian* kings, from the name of the chief family among the Frankish tribes. After the death of Dagobert there was no other Merovingian king of any power or importance. All the Merovingian kings had long yellow hair which was never cut, but which fell round their shoulders; and when they lost all power in the State this was their only distinction, and they used to be driven about Paris in carriages drawn by oxen, looking very splendid, but despised by every one who saw them, because they had no power and did nothing useful to any one, and so had no right to be kings.

The *Fainéant* kings settled nothing for themselves, but sat on their throne and pretended to rule, answering to the people who came to speak with them on business exactly what they had been told beforehand to say by the Mayor of the Palace. This went on for nearly a hundred years,

and one particular family became more famous in Austrasia than any other, so that the Mayor of the Palace was always chosen from it. The men in this family were all wise, brave, and vigorous. At the time when Dagobert's little son became king of Austrasia, the Mayor of the Palace was named Pepin ; and all through the reign of that king, and of several others who came after him, Pepin had more power in Austrasia than any one else, and both there and in Neustria behaved as if he were himself the king. He made war when he chose and against whom he chose, chiefly against the Germans who lived on the other side of the Rhine, and who were very wild and fierce, and sometimes attacked his land.

Pepin tried to keep them quiet in two ways ; sometimes he marched against them with an army, sometimes he sent a body of monks to try and teach them to be Christians.

When Pepin died, his son Karl took for himself all that had belonged to his father. The Neustrians tried to escape from his power, but he was too strong for them, and they were obliged to obey him as they had obeyed Pepin.

Karl was poor, and soon saw that he would have to carry on great wars against the enemies of the Franks. He wanted money with which to make presents to the great chiefs, that they might like him, and be willing to fight in his battles. In those days there was no regular army and no regular soldiers. When the king wanted to make war he called upon all his chiefs to go with him. Some of the chiefs to whom he had given land had promised in return that they would go out and fight his battles with a certain

number of men whenever he wished it, and sometimes these chiefs had given part of their land to some of their friends in return for the same promise, so that a king could usually count upon a certain number of men when he went to war. Others of the chiefs had taken land for themselves, as I said before, and made no promise to any one; but they were usually willing to help the king, because war was a great amusement to them, and because they were anxious to keep enemies away from their country, and because they hoped to have some share in the goods and money which might be taken from the enemy. But Karl was not a king, the chiefs had made no promise to him, and it was all the more necessary for him to have some reward to offer to the soldiers who should fight for him.

Clovis had given land to his chiefs, but now all the land already belonged to some one, and Karl did not dare to take any away from the great chiefs, who would have turned against him and become dangerous enemies. But the bishops and clergy had great riches, and Karl thought that they did very little to deserve them, for as they grew rich they became selfish and idle, and did not think about teaching the people and doing their duty, but only how to make themselves grand and comfortable, so that no one respected them. Karl took away from them the rich lands that belonged to the Church, and gave them to his warriors.

Of course the clergy were very angry, and in many old books we may read all the bad things that they say of Karl; but the chiefs were pleased, and the men to whom the lands were given fought with Karl bravely against all their enemies. They had first to fight the Saxons, a race

of Germans who lived on the farther side of the Rhine, some of whom had before this time gone to Britain and established themselves there as you have read in English histories. The Saxons were defeated, and Karl next prepared to defend himself against the Arabs, who came from Spain over the Pyrenees to try and make themselves masters of France. *

The Arabs lived in Arabia, which is in Asia, on the east side of the Red Sea, and for many hundred years they had been poor people, living in tribes, never leaving their country, spending their time in hunting and taking care of their flocks, scarcely noticed at all by any other nation.

A hundred and fifty years before the time of which I am speaking, an Arabian merchant appeared among his countrymen and taught them a religion. It was not the Christian religion, for he was not a Christian himself, nor was it the religion of any other nation. He taught them his own ideas about God, and they believed that he was a prophet or a man sent by God on purpose to teach them. He believed it himself, and as his name was Mahomet, they called the religion he taught them Mahometanism and themselves Mahommedans, as the people who believe what Jesus Christ taught call themselves Christians. When they had learned what they believed to be true, they determined to make all the rest of the world believe it as well.

They left their own country and began to make war on the people round. The mild ignorant shepherds had turned into fierce soldiers ; they conquered Persia, Egypt, part of Africa, Spain. Whenever they conquered a country, they asked the people whether or not they would become Ma-

hommedans. If they said Yes, the Arabs treated them well, gave them good governors, and ruled them kindly. If they said No, the Mahommedans used them as slaves, made them pay tribute, or sums of money, and sometimes put them to death. Many of the nations conquered by the Arabs were too much afraid of them not to pretend to agree with them whether they really did so or not.

The Arabs had in this way become masters of Spain, and now they wished to conquer France ; but when they had passed the Pyrenees and begun their march against a French town, they found Karl with his army ready to resist them. There was a great battle between the two armies, called the battle of Tours, and in the end Karl conquered the Mahommedans, killed, some say, three hundred thousand Arabs, and drove the rest out of France. He has been called Karl the Hammer, or in French Charles Martel, in memory of the blows which he gave his enemies on this occasion.

The rest of his life he passed in fighting, sometimes against the Saxons, sometimes against the people in the south of France. He was called Duke of the Franks. When he died he left his dukedom to be divided between his two sons.

↑

CHAPTER VII.

THE CARLOVINGIANS (741-768).

I SAID that at this time the bishops and other clergy had grown idle and selfish, and taught the people nothing. The chief teachers of the people were the monks. These were men who shut themselves up in a house by themselves, called a monastery, and spent most of their time in praying. They were not allowed to marry, and they never saw their friends, or went to shows or amusements of any kind. They wore a plain dress, usually brown or black, hanging loose round their feet, and their hair was shaven. In each monastery there was a chief man chosen by the monks from among themselves, and called an abbot, whom they all obeyed.

These monks did not always live in the monastery ; sometimes the abbot would send out one or two to preach in a particular town, or in some savage country, such as Saxony, where the people had not yet learned to be Christians. In the east of Europe the monks often joined in disturbances that rose in the cities, and excited the people to join together against some emperor or pope, but the western monks were far more quiet and peaceable, and taught the people only to know and to do what was right, according to their own ideas.

Many of the monks who did not go out to teach the

heathen, but stayed in the convent, studied, read books or wrote them, and copied out books that had been written, or old songs ; for as neither printing nor paper had at that time been invented, anything that people wanted their children and grandchildren to remember had to be written down on parchment and kept in a great roll, and as the writing it down was often a long business, and the monks had plenty of time to spare, copying out writings of all kinds came to be one of their chief employments. They did it very beautifully, with little pictures or patterns, called illuminations, at the beginnings and ends of lines and chapters.

The monks were very much respected because of their knowledge, their virtue, and their industry. Men who were tired of their life, who had been disappointed or defeated, or who repented of wrong things they had done, often made themselves monks. Sometimes children were put into monasteries by their relations to prevent them from becoming kings or chiefs, or great men in any way, for no monk could ever come out into the world again. Sometimes, also, men who had led good and happy lives thought that they should be better and happier in a monastery than in their homes or kingdoms.

In the time of Charles Martel several kings became monks. An English monk named Winfrid had been sent by the Pope and by Charles Martel to preach to the Saxons. He persuaded thousands of them to be baptized, and the king, as a reward, made him a bishop, and afterwards an archbishop. But Winfrid would not be satisfied while there were still ignorant people to be taught ; he gave his bishopric to a friend, and went to teach in a wild

part of the country, where many people were persuaded by him to agree to be baptized. On the morning when they were all assembled for the baptism, a body of heathens attacked them, and killed Winfrid, with the whole assembly. Winfrid is also called Boniface, and you may sometimes hear him spoken of as St. Boniface.

There was one person in Europe whom all the monks and abbots considered as their head in whatever country they lived, and whom they all obeyed absolutely, and that was the Bishop of Rome, called the Pope. As Rome had been the most powerful city in the world, and even at this time was one of the most important, so the Bishop of Rome had more power than the bishop of any other city, and was called pope or father. Many of the other bishops obeyed him and imitated him in all that he did; all monks and abbots obeyed him, and even kings and princes always tried to please him, because it was considered that he could give subjects leave to disobey their kings, or to turn them out of their kingdoms; so they all wished to have the Pope for their friend.

- A Pope died in Rome just at the same time as Charles Martel, Duke of the Franks, and the chief clergy chose a new Pope called Zacharias.

The elder of Karl's two sons, after ruling well and prosperously for six years over half of the land his father left, went into a monastery and made over all his lands to his younger brother Pepin. He joined an Italian monastery, and lived there peacefully for some years. But at that time many Frankish chiefs made journeys to Rome, and their road passed near the monastery of the Duke of the Franks, so that they thought it only proper to pay

him a visit on their way ; till at last he was so much disturbed by the number of his visitors, and their talk about wars and battles, and all the affairs of the kingdom, that he went away to another monastery out of the reach of all travellers, and lived there in quiet and contentment for the rest of his life. When his elder brother became a monk, Pepin, the second son of Charles Martel, became the only duke of the Franks. He is known as Pepin le Bref, or the Short. He was not long duke, for by this time every one began to think it absurd that one set of men should have the name of kings, while another set had all the power. One Merovingian king after another had led the same lazy useless life ; at this time there was one called Hilderik. Pepin asked the Pope whether he might make himself king and turn out Hilderik.

Zacharias wished to make friends with Pepin, who was strong and warlike, and would, Zacharias hoped, help him against some of his enemies. So the answer of the Pope was : "He who has the power, ought also to have the name, of king." The Pope having agreed to this change, all the Franks did the same. Hilderik's long flowing locks, the sign of his being a king, were cut off, and he was shut up in a monastery. He died two years afterwards, and was the last of the Merovingian kings.

Pepin was crowned by Winfrid, whom I mentioned before, and he was the first of another line of kings called the Carolingians, from Carolus, Latin for Charles, which was the name of Pepin's father, and of his still greater son.

Pepin, who owed his crown to the Pope, did him good service in return for it. He marched into Italy to defend

Rome and its bishop against some fierce Italian enemies called the Lombards. He drove back the Lombards, took from them some of the land which they had conquered from other enemies, and though it was not his to give, made a present of it to the Pope, who till then had had no land. But from this time Pepin's gift was handed down from one Pope to another, and by degrees they conquered more, and became masters of a kingdom in Italy.

Pepin had, like his father, to fight against the Saxons, but he was not able to conquer them, though he kept them out of France. He besieged a town in Southern Gaul belonging to the Arabs for seven years, and at last took it, and drove the last remaining Arabs over the Pyrenees and back into Spain. Pepin reigned for sixteen years; he then fell ill and died, dividing his kingdom between his two sons.

CHAPTER VIII.

CHARLEMAGNE (771-814).

PEPIN'S two sons, Karl and Karloman, divided between them their father's kingdom. Karloman died three years later, and Karl became king of the whole. Karl is the German for Charles, and while some of Karl's subjects, who lived in Austrasia and spoke a language something like the present German, called him Karl, the Neustrians, who talked the language which has now become French, called him Charles, and when he became great and powerful they added on to Charles a Latin word, *magnus*, meaning great, Charles-magnus, and he was written of in history and is to this day known as Charlemagne.

Charlemagne was one of the wisest and most powerful kings that ever ruled over any country. His kingdom was very large; it had in it almost all that is now Germany, and almost all of Italy. In Italy the Popes had asked him to help them against the Lombards, which he did, and after some trouble conquered that turbulent nation, had the king shut up in a monastery, and gave the high places in the State to Frankish chiefs instead of Lombards. He also made war on the Arabs in Spain, on the Aquitanians, who were the people living in the south-west part of France, and on other nations whose names I will not

mention, except that of the Saxons, the old enemies of his father and grandfather, against whom Charlemagne fought for thirty-three years, and at last succeeded in conquering them and forcing them to become Christians.

Charlemagne led a life of war ; he went out to fight each summer, and came back to his own kingdom when the severe winter weather began. He was hardly ever defeated, for he was wise, warlike, and very active, moving his soldiers about so quickly that he took his enemies by surprise, and was able with a small body of men to do them as much harm as a slower general would have done with a larger number. He held a council of war every Easter, at which all his great chiefs, counts, viscounts, barons, and even bishops were present, and he then told them what wars he meant to undertake that year, and asked them if they agreed, which they always did.

Charlemagne had made improvements in the armour and weapons of his soldiers. They wore helmets on their heads with vizors or pieces of steel that could be pulled down to defend their faces while they were fighting, and put up when they were in no danger, and a long buckler or shield, instead of the round shield covered with skins, of the old Gaul. The Franks fought with long-pointed, two-handed swords, and with heavy clubs, covered with iron knots, which must have killed their enemies in the most unpleasant way possible. Charlemagne bought particularly strong horses, bred in the pastures of the Rhine, for his men, and he knew so much geography that, his army being thus prepared, he was able always to send his soldiers to the weakest parts of the country he wished to attack.

He cared for other things, however, besides war ; he

watched over the education of his subjects and the laws of the country ; he sent officers into the different provinces to see that the judges were doing justice honestly to the people ; he assembled all the chief men of the country twice every year to help him to make laws, and to tell him of any matter in which they or their neighbours had been ill-treated, and wanted help or advice. He was anxious to help, to watch over, and to protect the poor. Many of his laws about slaves are still remaining.

At this time there were more slaves in Gaul than there had ever been before ; nine-tenths of the people were in this state. The labourers on an estate, who were always slaves, were considered as part of the land, and if the estate was sold or given away, they went with it. The only way in which a slave could escape from slavery was by fleeing for help to a monastery, and as they were carefully watched by their masters' servants, this was very difficult. No one thought or cared about the slaves ; but Charlemagne, who was just and humane to all his subjects, made laws to protect them as far as he could against unkind masters and the hardships they often had to suffer.

Charlemagne was fond of study of all sorts ; he knew Latin and Greek, studied grammar, astronomy, music ; he improved the German language, which was his own, by inventing some of the words that were wanting in it, such as the names of seasons, months, and winds. He tried also to learn to write, but that was too hard for him. He liked to see the wisest men of his time at his court, and he received them well, and learned from them as much as possible.

There is a story about him which shows how much he

cared that his subjects should be well taught and should learn to be industrious and wise. Some monks came to his court and asked leave to set up a school, which Charlemagne granted them, and came often to see how the boys were learning, and what progress they made.

On one of these visits he was told that some of the boys, who were the sons of poor men, had worked very well, but that others, the sons of noblemen, who thought there would never be need for them to work for their bread, had been idle and troublesome. Charlemagne called up all the boys before him, put the good ones on his right hand, and the bad on his left, and made them a speech, in which he thanked the poor boys for having done his bidding and their duty, and promised them monasteries, bishoprics, and all kinds of honours if they continued to do well, but severely reprovèd the young noblemen, telling them that if they did not make up for their idleness by hard work, they would get no good from Karl. We are not told how the boys behaved afterwards, but we must hope that they paid more attention to the king's lecture than they had done to those of their schoolmaster.

Charlemagne was gay and cheerful, fond of hunting, feasting, joking, and all kinds of amusement. A monk who lived soon afterwards has left many stories about him. He tells us how the king once commanded a troop of courtiers, who were standing round him in all their silk, feathers, and fine clothes, to follow him to the chase as they were, through storm, mud, and brambles; and how he made an unhappy chorister, who had forgotten his responses, imitate the others who were singing, by making a set of faces to look as if he were singing too.

Charlemagne never had any illness till he was seventy years old, and to the end of his life he would have no more to do with doctors than he could help, saying they always advised him to eat boiled meat instead of roast, which he preferred.

Charlemagne was always on friendly terms with the Pope, as his father, Pepin le Bref, had been. One of the Popes called Leo had to fly from Rome because the Romans rose up against him, accused him of several wicked deeds, and tried to put out his eyes. He went for help to Charlemagne, who received him kindly, and after keeping him at his court for a year, took him back to Rome, overcame and punished his enemies, and established Leo as Pope again. Before Charlemagne left Rome a solemn meeting was held on Christmas Day in the year 800 A.D., at which the Pope crowned the Frankish king with a golden crown, poured holy oil upon his head, and declared him to be the Emperor of the Romans.

I must go back about eight hundred years to explain what was meant by emperor. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of the Gauls, had gone back to Rome when his work in Gaul was ended, and had been chosen Dictator, which was the name given to the person who had the chief power in Rome. Dictators usually kept their power for six months only, but he was made Dictator for life. He was soon afterwards murdered by some of the Romans, who thought he had too much power; but after his death such struggles, wars, and disturbances of all kinds took place amongst the different men who wanted to become rulers of the country, that the Romans determined to choose one ruler once for all, to call him Emperor, and to allow him to leave the

title to his son, or to any one he might choose to succeed him.

From this time, for four hundred years, one emperor after another reigned over all the country belonging to the Romans. At last the first Christian emperor, who found the people of Rome hard to govern, and inclined to rise up against him, and resist him in many ways, determined to leave Rome and build a new city for his capital. This he did, and called it after his own name, Constantinople. It is now the capital of Turkey, and, as may be seen in the map, is a long way from Rome.

This emperor left two sons, one of whom ruled in Rome, and the other in Constantinople. The country which had made one empire was divided into two—the Western Empire, which had Rome for its capital, and the Eastern, which had Constantinople. Since the barbarians had taken Rome there had been no Emperor of the West; the Pope had been the chief person in Rome, and it might have been supposed that the Pope would not wish to have an emperor over himself, but would rather continue to be the chief man in the city and in the country.

But the Popes had enemies in Italy, and they wished to find some nation to fight their battles, be their soldiers, and protect them in all difficulties. Pope Leo thought that by making Charlemagne emperor, which was supposed to give him power over all Italy and all other countries belonging to the Romans, he should make sure of always having him for a friend; and as Charlemagne was the best and bravest soldier in Europe, the Pope thought he would be the best possible friend to have.

Charlemagne therefore became Emperor of France,

of Germany, and of Italy. He himself was a German and not a Frenchman; he spoke German, and his dress, his habits, and his tastes, were German.

He felt himself growing old, and determined to divide his empire among his sons, of whom he had three. Two of them, however, died before their father. Louis, the third son, was the only one remaining at Charlemagne's death, and he became, like his father, Emperor of the West, and ruler over the whole of his father's enormous empire.

CHAPTER IX.

DESCENDANTS OF CHARLEMAGNE (814-843).

(THE new emperor gained the name of Louis le Débonnaire from his gentleness and piety. He was a good but a weak man. He was anxious to do good to all his subjects and improve their condition, and while his father lived he governed Aquitaine, a province in the south of France, wisely and well with the help of his wife. He could do nothing without the help of others ; he had many Churchmen about him, and he himself was at one time anxious to be a monk. He had three sons, and his reign is remarkable chiefly for the quarrels he had with them, and they with each other.

After Louis had reigned for three years, he called together an assembly of the Franks, and told them the arrangement he had made for the division of the empire at his death. His eldest son was to be emperor, to have Italy, most of France, and a great part of Germany ; his second son was to have a small part of France ; the third a small part of Germany. The younger sons, although they were called kings, were to do nothing important without asking leave of their brother, the emperor. The younger sons were angry at this arrangement, as they had hoped that the empire would be equally divided, and that each would have complete power over his own share.

They did not dare, however, to rebel against their father, and all went well till the wife of Louis died about two years later. Louis, in his sorrow, again thought of becoming a monk, but his chiefs persuaded him to remain on the throne and to choose another wife. Search was made for the most beautiful lady in the kingdom, and at last one was chosen, called Judith, beautiful, clever, but so ambitious or fond of power, as to cause great trouble to the emperor. She soon had a son called Charles, of whom the three sons of Louis became jealous. The emperor made another division of his empire, by which he took away a small part of the country that was to have belonged to one of the others, to make a share for his fourth son Charles. The other brothers were angry at this, and rose up against their father.

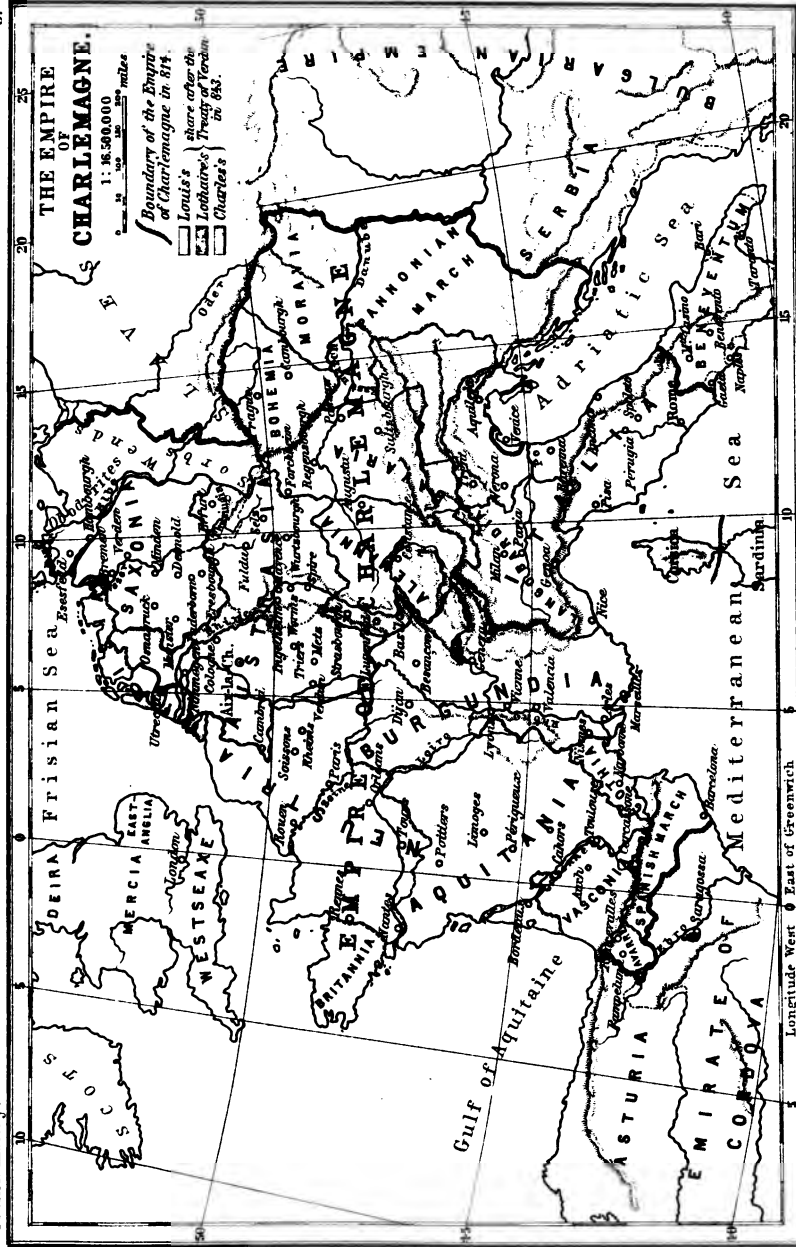
The nobles, the clergy, the soldiers, joined the sons, all having some reason for disliking Louis or Judith, and the emperor was taken prisoner and shut up in a convent, while his eldest son reigned in his name. Soon, however, some of the Germans returned to the side of Louis, brought him out of the convent, and restored him to power. From this time to the end of his life the poor emperor had no more quiet. Sometimes one, sometimes another, sometimes two of his sons at once, rebelled against him. He had not many wars with enemies outside the kingdom, but he had wars with his own subjects and children, which was much worse. At last he died on his way back from making war against his second son.

One of the three elder sons had died, so that there were now only three altogether—Lothaire, Louis, and Charles. Lothaire tried to make himself emperor as his father had

been, and called upon his brothers to submit to him. They refused, and a great battle was fought at a place called Fontanet between Lothaire on one side, Louis and Charles on the other. The question was whether Charlemagne's empire should remain one country and be governed by one man, the kings of the different divisions being all less great than the emperor, and obliged to consult him in what they did; or whether the different countries of Europe should be entirely separate from one another, and the king of each should govern as he chose.

The battle was a terrible one; it is said that 40,000 men were killed on each side. Louis and Charles were victorious, and drove Lothaire from the field. But still he would not yield; he collected more men, and again attacked his brothers, who were too strong for him, and drove him from one place to another. At last Lothaire yielded, and sent a message to his brothers, saying he would be content with a third part of the empire, if they would allow him a larger share than their own, as he was still to be called emperor. They agreed, and a treaty of peace was made. Charles had France, Louis Germany, Lothaire Italy and a strip of land between France and Germany, part of which is still called Lorraine from its old name Lotharingia, meaning the land of Lothaire. This is the strip of land for which the French and the Germans have so often fought with one another. Lothaire, King of Italy, was called Emperor, but had no power over the other two. One remarkable event happened while the war was going on between Lothaire and his brothers. After the battle of Fontanet, Louis and Charles determined to take an oath of fidelity to each other before their two

THE MERRILL
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ARTS, LITERATURE
AND SCIENCE FOUNDATIONS



Longitude West of East of Greenwich

London, Macmillan & Co.

Wagner & Debes Geog. Anstalt Leipzig.

armies—that is, to promise solemnly that they would always be friends and faithful to one another.

The soldiers were drawn up : Charles explained to his men, the Gallic Franks, and Louis to his followers, the Germans, what the oath was which they were going to take ; then Charles took the oath in Frankish language, so that the Germans might understand, while Louis took it in the language spoken at that time in Charles's country, then called Francia, now known as France. The oaths were written down and kept, and that taken by Louis is the oldest piece of French writing that remains to us. It is like enough to the present French for people to be able to understand it now. It was a language which came from the mixing of the German spoken by the Franks when they first came into Gaul with the Latin which had been brought into the country and taught to the old Gauls by the Romans, but there was much more of the Latin than of the German. From this time we may begin to use the word France, which has been the name of the country since the time of King Charles.

CHAPTER X.

THE LAST CARLOVINGIAN KINGS (843-987).

CHARLES, who was known as Charles the Bald, was the first king who ruled over France alone: we saw that the old Merovingian kings were rulers over part only of the country; and Pepin, Charlemagne, and Louis le Débonnaire were rulers over other countries as well.

From the time of Louis le Débonnaire France and Germany have been completely different countries, and have never had the same ruler. Charles had no other country besides France to govern, and there was no other king beside him in France; but yet he ought not to be considered as a French king, for he had not power over the whole country. Three large provinces refused to obey him, the great lords did what they pleased without considering him, and the Normans came into many of the large towns to carry off whatever treasures they might find there. Charles himself was not a Frenchman but a German, as his father, Louis le Débonnaire, and his grandfather, Charlemagne, had been. He could speak Latin, however, and his subjects were quickly losing all the German out of their language, and speaking only what was called Romance, a language made from the mingling of bad, incorrect Latin, such as was talked by the common people, with some remains of the language belonging to the old Gauls before they were invaded by the Romans.

When the Emperor Lothaire died, Charles wished to be made emperor, and was crowned King of Italy by the Pope. He afterwards made war on the sons of his other brother, Louis, King of Germany, but they defeated him and drove him back towards France. On his way across the mountain called the Mont Cenis, he was taken ill, and died in a poor hut.

One of the few remarkable events that happened in his reign was that, in order to please the nobles, and persuade them to go and fight with him against the sons of Louis, Charles made a law that the lands held by his chief nobles should become hereditary, that is, might be passed on from father to son, and not come back to the king at all. This had for some time been the custom, but it now became the law.

After Charles, his son, Louis the Stammerer, became king, and reigned for two years; he was weak, foolish, and ready to obey the nobles instead of making them obey him. When he died, his kingdom was divided between his two elder sons, who were as weak as himself, and could not even defend the small part of the country which belonged to them. They both died, and the King of Germany, who was emperor, called himself King of France also; but he was a foolish, helpless man, and could not defend the people against the Northmen, who invaded them at this time in great numbers.

The state of France under these weak, foolish kings was miserable. The powerful people in the country were the great nobles and the Northmen. France was divided into many provinces, some of which had the same names that the French provinces have to this day, such as Cham-

pagne, Anjou, Brittany, Burgundy. Each of these provinces belonged to a chief or nobleman, called sometimes Duke and sometimes Count. They were the descendants, sons, grandsons, or great-grandsons of the chiefs to whom the first kings had given these pieces of land in reward for their services in battle, or who had conquered them for themselves when they first came into the country. Sometimes the prince of one of these provinces would die and leave no children, when the king would take the land for himself, and either keep it, or, more probably, give it to some other chief whom he wished to please or reward. About this time the chiefs, who had been called *lendes*, began to be known as barons—a name under which much is to be heard of them in the History of England.

The barons, when first their lands were given to them by the king, had promised to do certain things in return for them; to follow him with a fixed number of men when he went to war, and to do other services of different kinds; but their descendants often refused to perform what had been promised, and would hardly allow that the king was in any way greater than they. The great barons gave away part of their lands to other barons, less rich and less strong than they, who were called their vassals, and the great barons were the vassals of the king.

Many of the barons were careless, idle men, who cared more for war and amusement than for work of any peaceful kind. They were fond of fighting, hunting, and feasting, but could not bear to work in the field, to till the ground, or to take care of their flocks. They therefore bought or made prisoners great numbers of slaves, and left them to attend to the lands, while they themselves went to the court of

the chief baron in the neighbourhood, and made merry there, feasting and hunting. It may be imagined that the slaves, left to themselves, did not cultivate the lands as well as they might have done if they had been paid for their work and directed by their masters. Large parts of the country had been allowed to grow wild, and forests and sheepwalks covered the ground where cornfields and villages should have stood. In the forests were thieves, who lived upon what they could steal from travellers or from some peaceful household or monastery.

Another misfortune which happened to the people was that their country was attacked by the Northmen or Normans, who lived in Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. They were fierce heathens, poor, brave, and active, who were always leaving their own barren land to look for some rich country from which they might steal food, goods, money—anything that came in their way. They could go to any place that could be reached by water. They sailed along the coast of France and up all the rivers, burning, stealing, and destroying as they went; some of them went to England, some to Russia, others to Spain, Italy, Iceland, Greenland, and America.

In England they were bravely resisted by King Alfred, who drove them out of the country many times, and at last allowed some of them to come and settle there on condition of their becoming Christians. The French kings and nobles were not so brave, they could do nothing but give the Northmen money to persuade them to go away, which of course made them come back again all the sooner.

At last the Northmen made themselves masters of

several cities in the north of France, and stayed there instead of going back to their own country. They had a leader named Rolf or Rollo, under whom they lived, and the country which they had taken for theirs soon showed an example of peace and prosperity to all the country round.

The king and the clergy thought it would be well to have these powerful neighbours for friends rather than for enemies, and as they could not be driven out of the country, the king sent to Rollo, offering him his daughter for a wife, and the country in which he had settled for himself and his sons for ever, on condition of his acknowledging the French king as his lord, becoming a Christian, and living in peace with the rest of the kingdom. Rollo agreed, became a Christian, married Gisela the French princess, built towns and fine buildings, and ruled his country so well, that in twenty years' time, Normandy, the land of the Northmen, was the best governed province in France. The Normans quickly learned the new French language, and by making laws and writing ballads in it, did much to settle it and bring it into common use.

Among the other provinces or divisions of the country was one named France, which was gradually giving its name to the whole. Paris was the capital of this province, which was not at that time considered as in any way more important than the other provinces. It had a duke named Odo, one of the few men who had bravely resisted the Danes, and after the death of the son of Louis the Stammerer, when the only remaining Carolingian prince was a child of five years old, the nobles chose Odo of Paris to be their king.

His kingdom was a small one ; he had no power beyond the duchy of France, and even in his own duchy the nobles were gaining more and more power, building strong castles, keeping bodies of soldiers, doing justice themselves, and defending from all enemies their servants and the poor people who lived in their villages. By degrees a village gathered round each castle, and every noble became like a king of a very small kingdom. This was a bad thing for the power of the kings, but it was good for the poor, who in this way were protected from every one except their own master, who often used them badly enough. They were called serfs, and were something between slaves and servants, but more like slaves, as they were paid for their work only by the houses and food which were given to them, and could never leave the estate of one lord to go away to another ; but if the estate were sold they were sold with it, as if they had been mere instruments or tools for work.

Odo had been king for about six years when he was attacked by the Carlovingian prince, Charles the Simple, who was now growing up to be a man. Some of Odo's subjects took the side of Charles, others were faithful to Odo. After some fighting it was agreed that Odo should be king while he lived, and Charles after him. This was done ; Odo died, Charles became king, and Robert, Odo's brother, was made duke of the duchy of France.

Charles reigned for twenty-four years. He is called Charles the Simple out of politeness ; his nickname, *Le Sot*, really means the Fool, and as he seems to have done nothing all the twenty-four years of his reign, he probably deserved the name. The one important thing that happened in his reign was the settlement of the Normans

in France. Even in that matter Charles did only what he was advised to do by the clergy.

The settlement of the Normans is a very important event, and makes the reign of Charles the Simple worth remembering. From that time the French had before them an example of good government and of a prosperous country, of courage, activity, and liberty; and it was important for England also in a different way.

At last Charles's nobles rose up against him and drove him from the country. He returned with an army, and tried to make himself king once more, but was taken prisoner by one of his barons, and kept so till he died seven years afterwards.

His son Louis, who had been brought up in England, was then made king. He was a brave, spirited young man, and defended himself for some years against the German Emperor, who tried to become master of France; and the King of Denmark, who attacked his country and at one time made him prisoner. Louis died from a fall out hunting; his son and grandson succeeded him, reigning, one for thirty-two years, the other for one year. The grandson had no children, and thus the family of the Carolingians, the descendants of Charlemagne, came to an end.

CHAPTER XI.

HUGH CAPET—ROBERT (987-1031).

THE brave Count Odo, who had been made king before the reign of Charles the Simple, had left a brother, called Robert, the Duke of France. Robert had a son, named Hugh the Great, who had more power than any one else in France through the reigns of the last Carlovingian kings, and who might have been king himself had he wished it. He was brave and wise, and might have made a good king, but he died Duke of France, leaving behind him a son, also named Hugh, who was made duke in his father's place.

When the Carlovingians were all dead—except one who was an uncle of the last king, and lived at the Court of the German emperor—the barons of northern France all joined in choosing Hugh, Duke of France, to be their king. They did not consider that this made him much more important or more powerful than themselves. He was solemnly crowned, and he managed to make friends, in the course of his reign, with many of the nobles, with the clergy, and the people of the towns. He made himself master, by degrees, of several of the states where the barons had been ruling, each like a small king in his own country.

From this time, for seven hundred years, the kings of France were constantly trying to gain one province after

another from the great counts and dukes, who passed them down from father to son, as the kings of France did with the country.

I have mentioned the names of some of the chief provinces—Anjou, Burgundy, Brittany, Normandy. There were several others, but these were four of the most important. Normandy was conquered about 200 years later than the time of which I write; Anjou and Burgundy were taken by the French king about 500 years later, their princes having died without children; Brittany was won later still by a French king marrying the daughter of the last of the dukes.

Thus it was only by very small degrees that France grew to its present size, and the early kings had but little power, for their barons were nearly as strong as they. The clergy were on the side of Hugh, for he had many abbeys and church lands belonging to him, and they wished to have him for a friend. Hugh also made friends with the Duke of Normandy, but some of the other barons joined together to try and drive him from the kingdom. Hugh was able to resist them. He fought against them for some years, in spite of some of the men, whom he most trusted, deserting him and going over to the other side. Hugh was successful at last; his chief enemy died, and he continued king till his death, though not without many struggles.

He was never master of any part of France south of the Loire. There was a strong duke there, and another in Normandy. But they did not dispute Hugh's right to be king, or object to his son being so after him. Hugh was called Capet, either from a hood or cape which he

used to wear instead of a crown, or from the size of his head—*caput* being the Latin for head. He was the first of the line of kings called Capetians, who reigned in France about twice as long as the Carlovingsians had done.

The next king was Robert, the son of Hugh. He had been crowned in his father's lifetime, and when Hugh died, carried on the government by himself. Robert was a kind, gentle, humble man, but not a wise one, and so not fit to be a king. He was foolishly good-natured, letting people have everything they wanted, without considering whether or not it was right for them to have it. He once saw a man cutting off a gold ornament from his own royal robe; he only laughed and let the thief take it. Another day he saw a priest steal a candlestick out of a church. He said, "My friend, run for your life to your home in Lorraine," and gave him money for his escape. A king who behaves to thieves in this way, as if what they were doing were quite right and proper, is not likely to have honest subjects.

He was always followed about by twelve poor men, and as his wife did not like to see beggars at dinner with her and the king, he would sometimes hide one under the table and pass down to him food off his own plate.

Robert had a wife named Bertha, of whom he was very fond. The Pope found out that she was the fourth cousin of the king, and told him that she must not remain his wife. It was supposed that the Pope had the right to settle such matters, but the king resisted for some time. The Pope then laid the country under a ban. I have already said that most of the bishops in all countries obeyed

the Pope, and as time went on people of all kinds got more and more into the habit of obeying him, though in France both the clergy and the king were inclined to resist him, and declare that they could settle their own affairs without his advice. The Pope used sometimes to tell the subjects of a king that they need obey him no longer, and it was then considered that he had left off being king, and if he did not yield of himself, the friends of the Pope would sometimes rise up against him, and turn him out of the kingdom by force.

The Pope had other powers ; he could excommunicate any one who displeased him. An excommunicated person was, as much as possible, cut off from every one else ; no one was to speak to him, to wait upon him, to sell him food or anything else. He was never to be allowed to go into a church, and was considered by all who believed in the Pope as an enemy and an outlaw. Sometimes the Pope would put the whole kingdom under a ban or interdict, and then all the people in it were considered excommunicated, no services might be held in the country, and it was believed that any one who died excommunicated would be shut out from heaven.

When Robert refused to give up his wife, and the Pope laid the kingdom under a ban, the French bishops excommunicated Robert and Bertha. After a time Robert yielded, sent away his wife, and soon after married another, named Constance, who was beautiful and clever, but gave great trouble to the king by her bad temper and self-will.

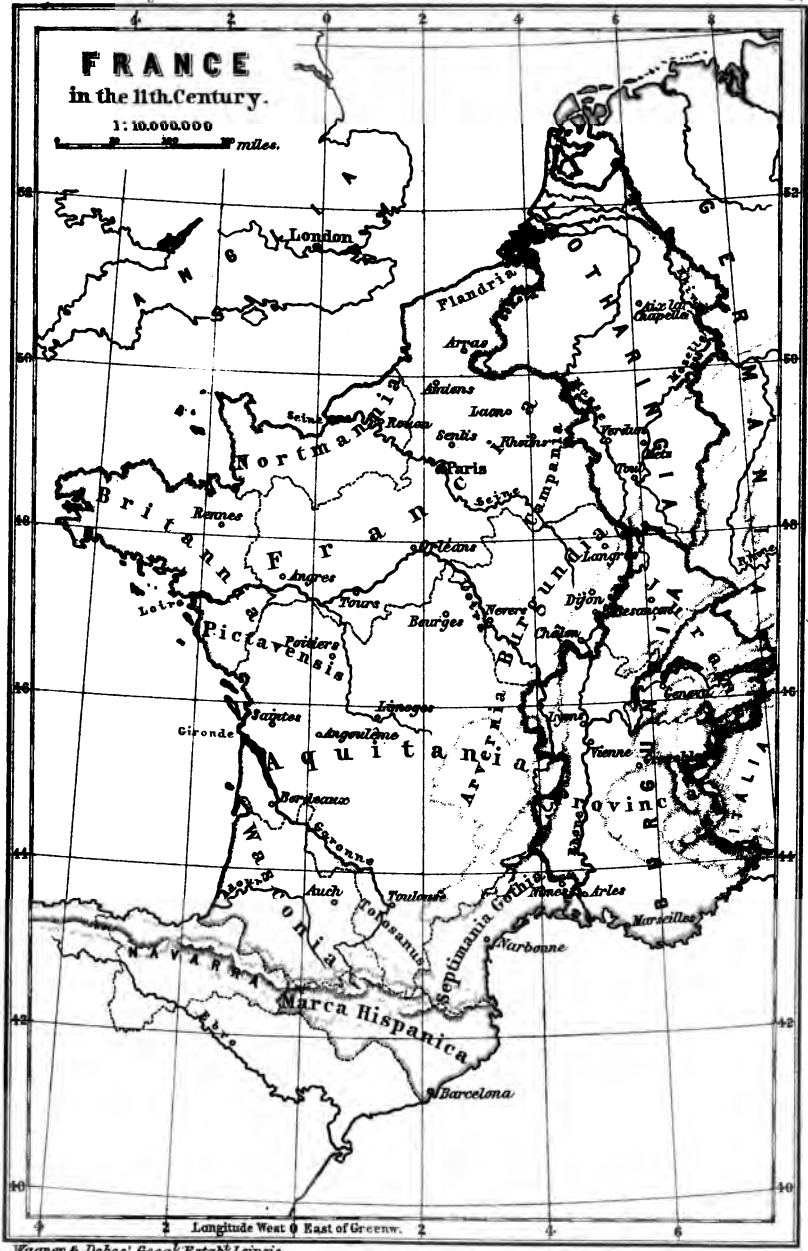
At this time there arose an idea among the people of Europe that the world was coming to an end. There have always been, and there still are, people who think they can

find out what we are particularly told in the Bible that no one knows, when the world as it is now will come to an end, and men will live upon it no longer. There had for some time been an idea that the world would end one thousand years after the birth of Jesus Christ, and as the year came near, people became so much frightened that many of them gave up their lands, went into monasteries, or made journeys called pilgrimages to churches and holy places, all of which would, they thought, be pleasing to God, and make them more fit to die. They imagined that they saw signs and figures in the sky, and as in those days people knew nothing about comets, eclipses, meteors, or any of the curious sights that are often to be seen by those who watch for them, it is very likely that they did see many wonderful things in the sky which they could not explain, but which certainly did not mean that the world was coming to an end; for it has gone on from that time to this, for more than eight hundred years, and, as far as we know, there is no reason why it should not go on for another eight hundred years, or longer still.

The eldest son of King Robert and Constance was crowned while his father was still alive, but died soon after. The king then had his youngest son crowned, which displeased Constance, who wished one of his elder brothers to be king. Robert had struggles with many of the great barons, the Duke of Anjou in particular; and twice in his reign there was a rising up against him in different parts of the country. Once some poor peasants tried vainly to resist their powerful lords, and again some men, who had a different religion from their neighbours, rose up and made some confusion and disturbance; but Robert managed to

overcome them all and remained king till his death, which happened almost at the same time as the deaths of the two other great princes of France, the Duke of Normandy and the Duke of Aquitaine.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



CHAPTER XII.

HENRY I. (1031-1060).

A SUBJECT of the Duke of Anjou, who naturally disliked King Robert as the enemy of his master, wrote in a history of his own time, "Robert we have ourselves seen reigning most slothfully ; his son, the present kinglet Henry, is not at all behind him in laziness." It is probably true that Robert was slothful ; he does not seem to have done much in the thirty-five years of his reign ; the wonder is how so weak and foolish a man, with so many enemies, can have kept himself on the throne for so long a time.

His son Henry was as weak as he had been. At the beginning of his reign he was attacked by his mother, Constance, and one of his brothers. It was, perhaps, as well for him that Constance died a few months later, and he was left to govern his kingdom as best he could.

At this time many of his subjects were again disturbed by fears of the end of the world. They thought that as it had not come one thousand years after the birth of Jesus Christ, it might come one thousand years after His death. Some people felt so sure of this, that they said it was of no use to sow corn, as they should be dead by the next year. They thus did what they could to make themselves die, for of course when the next year came, they had nothing to eat.

There followed one after another three years in which the weather was so horrible that there was neither seed-time nor harvest. All over Europe there was famine, misery, and sickness. The poor people had nothing to eat but roots, grass, and clay, and they died by thousands. Sometimes troops of wolves came out of the forests, and devoured every one whom they met.

But after these three dreadful years there came a time of great plenty, and the people took courage again. There were fresh pilgrimages made to Jerusalem, and the bishops, seeing that the country was being ruined by the weakness of the king and the lawlessness of the people, thought that now was a good time to persuade the people to live quietly and peacefully, neither to fight with one another, nor to hurt harmless passengers. The barons found it hard to give up their private wars; but at last the bishops met together and determined that on certain days in every week, and on all days at certain times of the year, fighting should be entirely forbidden, and every one should be bound to keep what was called The Peace of God.

This law answered very well. From Thursday evening to Monday morning in each week no one might fight at all, and this was a great stop to private wars, that is to wars between one chief and another, while the rest of the country was at peace. It obliged the barons to stay more at home in their castles and with their families than they had ever done before.

This led them to take more interest in peaceful business, to keep their houses in better order, and to look after their lands and fields more carefully than in old times, when they could fight every day in the year. It was a

great comfort to all travellers and peaceful people to have some days on which they could travel without any fear of meeting the fierce soldiers, who probably did not care much whether passers-by were friends or enemies, if there seemed a good chance that anything could be taken from them.

It was in the reign of Henry I. that one of the dukes of Normandy died, leaving behind him a child named William, who was duke after him, and who, after showing himself to be a brave and wise warrior in his own country, was to lead his Normans to another, where he would become even more powerful than he had been in France.

King Henry's first wife died, and he married the daughter of the Duke of Russia, the most distant prince of whom he could hear, in order that there might be no fear of her being found to be his relation, as had happened to Robert with Bertha. They had a son named Philip, who when he was seven years old was crowned, as was then the custom, while his father was still alive.

All this time the emperors of Germany were following one another on the throne, but we have nothing to do with them. France and Germany were at this time distinct countries, and though it might have happened that the French King should also be Emperor of Germany—and in fact the empire was once offered to King Robert—it never did happen that the same sovereign ruled over the two countries.

When the emperor died a fresh one was chosen by the people; it was not always the son of the last emperor, but any one who seemed strong or wise, or able to govern well. In France, as you see, the son always succeeded his father.

Henry I. was not a great man ; he took no part in anything that was going on in Europe ; he behaved as if he were no greater than his own barons, and let the emperor conquer part of France without seeming to care at all, or interfering in any way. He died at last, and his son Philip became sole King of France.

Philip I. seems to have been much the same kind of man as his father. He had a long reign, and many important things happened in different parts of Europe, but he took no share in them whatever. Soon after King Henry's death, William, Duke of Normandy, came to tell Philip that he had determined to go to England in hopes of making himself king there, and offering if Philip would help him with men or money, to do homage to the King of France for any country he might conquer, that is to acknowledge Philip to be his master, and to do nothing important without consulting him. But Philip would have nothing to do with William, refused him all help, and sent him away. William easily found other friends, and as many followers as he wanted ; he sailed to England, landed at Pevensey, defeated Harold King of England, who was killed at the battle of Hastings, and reigned over England for many years as William the Conqueror, leaving his crown to his son. He owed no gratitude to the man who had refused to help him, and instead of being Philip's vassal, as he might have been if Philip had agreed to his offers, he was now a king much stronger and more powerful than Philip himself.

Philip, like his grandfather Robert, had a quarrel with the Pope about his wife. This time it was clearly the king who was in the wrong. Philip sent away his wife, and

carried off the wife of the Duke of Anjou. The Pope told him to send away the Duke of Anjou's wife and to take back his own. He promised to do so, and broke his promises. The Pope excommunicated him, but was too busy with wars and troubles of his own to have much time to attend to Philip's evil doings. At this time there were great wars between the Emperor of Germany and the Pope. The Popes were very anxious to have the Kings of France on their side, and Philip was allowed to go on living his bad life in peace for some time.

At last the Pope went over the Alps to hold a council in France. The country had again fallen into a miserable state. The barons grew more and more fierce, and disturbed all their more peaceful neighbours by their wars with one another. An old writer of those times says, "War was preferred before peace by the princes of the earth, who quarrelled ceaselessly." The Pope had a proposal to make to the barons and people, which he hoped would make them stop quarrelling with one another, rid the country of some if not most of the fiercest of the barons, and bring honour and power to himself.

I said that when people believed the end of the world to be near, many of them made pilgrimages, or long journeys, to places which they thought holy, usually to the tomb of some good man. It was generally thought that the longer and more difficult the journey, the more good was to be had from the pilgrimage. The tomb most distant from the countries of Europe was also that which in itself was the most holy, the tomb of Jesus Christ in Jerusalem.

It is hard to believe that people in those days, when

there were few and bad roads, no trains, no steamboats, scarcely any carriages, no comfortable inns by the way, or maps to show the road, can have made their way from France, England, or Ireland, to Jerusalem ; but it did happen again and again that pilgrims took the journey successfully, saw the sepulchre of Christ, and came home believing that everything they had done wrong was forgiven them, and that they had done what was more pleasing to God than anything else.

This had begun hundreds of years before the time of Philip I. The Romans used to take the journey, which for them was not so long a one ; some of the old Latin writers used to try to turn away people from making this pilgrimage ; they said that the journey was unnecessary, for that people who believed God to be everywhere present, might pray to Him in their own homes as well as anywhere else. But people continued to go in great numbers ; the journey was interesting, there were new countries to be seen, exciting adventures to be gone through, and valuable things to be bought cheaply in the East, and sold for a great price in Europe.

Some people went for these reasons, but probably more went disliking the journey and thinking that what was so unpleasant must be right to do. Many people have an idea that it is right to do unpleasant things, not because of any reason for doing them, or of their being of any use to any one, but just because they are disagreeable. In those days any one who had done anything wrong was told by the priests to punish himself by doing something he did not like—going without food for a long time, giving away a great deal of money, or going on a pilgrimage.

Arrangements were made in many countries for the convenience of pilgrims. Charlemagne ordered that they should be provided with food and lodging all through his kingdom ; many of the monasteries were built partly as resting-places for them. The Mahommedans who had conquered Jerusalem treated them well, and allowed them to worship undisturbed at the sepulchre ; but after a time the Mahommedans began to fight with one another, and the journey to Jerusalem became unsafe. At last the Turks conquered Jerusalem, and settled themselves there. They at once began to ill-treat the Christians, to take away what money they had, and to make them as uncomfortable as possible.

When the Christians got back to Europe they told every one how badly they had been treated ; and in particular a monk called Peter the Hermit not only made the Pope very angry by his account of what he had seen, but travelled over all Europe describing the cruelty of the Turks in many different countries, and trying to persuade his hearers to send protection and help.

With Peter the Hermit telling them the same things as their own friends, the people who heard him were easily persuaded to believe what he said. The Pope meant to help him by making a speech on the same subject at the council which was to be held in France. He hoped to be able to persuade many of the barons and people in France to go in an army to the Holy Land, which was the name given to the country of which Jerusalem was the chief town, and force the Turks to behave well to the Christians, to give them leave to worship at the sepulchre, or at least to promise not to ill-treat them on their way to Jerusalem.

CHAPTER XIII.

PHILIP I. (1060-1108).

THE Council was held at a place called Clermont, in the centre of France. The Pope had first to arrange several matters of business. Among other things he again excommunicated Philip I. of France ; but little notice was taken of this, as every one was much more interested in the question about Jerusalem. The Pope made his great speech to a large meeting of people. He described the cruelties of the Turks, and the way in which they behaved at Jerusalem, and called upon every one who heard him to go to the defence of the Holy City and the sepulchre of Christ. He promised that all those who went should be forgiven everything wrong they had done, and if they died by the way, should go at once to heaven.

None of the common people doubted that the Popes had the power of saying whether they should go to heaven or not, and Pope Urban's promise persuaded many men to take the journey who might otherwise have stayed at home. The Pope asked his hearers whether they would go, and they cried out, "Dieu le veut ;" God wills it. The Pope then begged the bishops, who were going home to their different parts of the country, to preach to their people as he had done to them, and to try to persuade as many men as possible to join an army which was soon to set out for

Jerusalem. Some of the bishops promised eagerly ; "some wept, some doubted, some were disturbed ;" but when they got back among their people and began to obey the Pope's commands, they found that the poor people, who had probably heard some of the speeches of Peter the Hermit, were ready and eager to set out on the journey, and by degrees not men only but women and children came to declare themselves ready to follow Peter, or any one who would show them the way to the Holy Land.

Several of the great barons also declared themselves ready to be leaders of the army. It was to set out in nine months ; but the poor people were too eager to wait so long. A band of serfs, monks, people who owed money and could not pay, with other bad men who wanted to escape from the country, all met together and set out with Peter the Hermit for a guide. They had only eight horsemen among them, and one soldier named Walter the Penniless. They managed to reach Asia after many wanderings, and were at once attacked by the Turks and entirely destroyed. When their friends who were following them arrived at the place, they found only a pyramid of whitened bones. Peter the Hermit, however, seems in some way or other to have escaped.

The Pope was anxious that this war against the Turks should be considered a specially holy one, and that every-one who went on it should be respected by his neighbours, so that others might be led to follow his example. He gave crosses to all the soldiers who set out on the journey to the Holy Land ; they were sometimes small metal ornaments, or more often linen or cloth cut into the shape of a cross. These men with the cross were called

Crusaders, from a Latin word meaning cross, and the war was called a Crusade.

The barons, counts, and dukes assembled their men slowly. They formed three great armies; one was from Lorraine, the country between France and Germany, of which the people were German rather than French; they were led by one of the bravest soldiers of that time, Godfrey, Duke of Bouillon. The second army was entirely French, and had at its head, Hugh the brother of Philip I.; Robert, Duke of Normandy, the brother of the English king, William Rufus; and the Duke of Brittany. The third army was made up of Aquitanians and other men from the south of France, and was led by the chief man of those parts, the Count of Toulouse.

These three armies went different ways through Europe, and were a great trouble to the countries through which they had to pass, especially to the Emperor of Constantinople, who had to let them stay in his city while they were waiting to cross over into Asia. They all met in Asia at last, and marched towards Jerusalem. They came to a city named Antioch, and after a long siege took it, and made one of their chiefs Prince there. Many thousands of the Crusaders had been killed in the journey to Antioch and the siege. There had been about six hundred thousand of them; there were now only forty thousand, and Jerusalem was defended by a large Turkish army. But the Crusaders had gone too far to turn back; they attacked Jerusalem, and after a siege of five weeks and a great struggle, the Christians became masters of it, exactly two years and eleven months after the day fixed for the setting out of the Crusade.

Godfrey of Bouillon was made King of Jerusalem; two other leaders made themselves princes of two of the other chief towns; many of the Crusaders, among them Peter the Hermit, went home to Europe; and others stayed to help to rule the new kingdom. The Turks waited their time. Soon after the end of the first Crusade Philip had his eldest son crowned, and they reigned together for eight years, at the end of which time Philip died, and his son Louis became sole king.

Many great changes came to the French people in consequence of the Crusades. Some of these were changes for the better, and some changes for the worse. One of the worst changes was that people became accustomed to think it right to fight with any one whose religion was different from their own. They had been taught that a crusade was a holy war, and that it was right and noble to undertake it, and they were next taught that every war was a crusade which was ordered by the Pope, or was against people who did not believe in the religion he taught.

The Crusades, for there were many others after the first one, besides accustoming people to wars about religion, had the bad consequence of wasting the lives of great numbers of men. I have said that more than five hundred thousand men died on the way from France to Antioch, and of course the Mahommedans were killed also in great numbers. The Christians died in vain, for they could not drive the Saracens out of the Holy Land, nor even keep Jerusalem long.

Another change that came at this time was that the Pope became even more powerful than he had been

before, because all the Crusaders looked to him as their head. He was able to get rid of any one who displeased or resisted him by a command to take the cross, as it was called ; which means to go on a crusade, where very likely the crusader would be killed, or if not, he would be away for many years, and would probably have to spend so much money in making ready for the expedition that he would come home poor and weak, and not in a state to give trouble to the Pope. The Crusades were a change for the better for the serfs and men who were not nobles. According to the laws of that time, no one could be both a soldier and a slave ; so that if a serf became a Crusader he left off being a slave, and it would have been thought so wicked to take a man away from the army and make him a serf again, that no master dared do it. A serf sometimes, without going on the Crusade, bought his freedom from his master, who was only too glad to find anything to sell.

The nobles who were going on a crusade, and wanted money with which to prepare for their journey, were glad also to sell some part of their lands to any one who would give them money in return. The people who had money to spare were the burghers, as they were called ; that is men who lived in a bourg or town, but had no estate of their own, and were not nobles. A law was made that whoever, with the consent of the king, bought an estate from a noble, should himself become a noble. Thus a new set of nobles was formed, richer than the old nobles, though less powerful, and more inclined to submit to the king, who had made the law by which they became nobles.

To the king also these changes brought more power than had belonged to the old kings, as some of the nobles sold their lands to him instead of to the burghers, and he was able to give them away to any one he liked, and to put into power those who would be most obedient to him. Other nobles gave their lands to monasteries, and the monks and clergy grew rich like so many of their neighbours.

But all the riches which came to the King, Pope, burghers, and monasteries, were lost by the nobles, and this made a great change in the state of the country. The nobles, who had lived as small kings, each in his own castle with his serfs around him, and had refused to obey even the king of the country, became by the end of the Crusades so weak that they were obliged to be obedient, while the burghers and other common people had grown so strong, that the nobles did not dare to ill-treat them as of old.

At the end of the first Crusade, however, the nobles were still powerful, and when they made Godfrey de Bouillon King of Jerusalem, and had to settle laws by which he might govern his kingdom, they were made as like as possible to the laws and customs which were common in Europe. The barons and even the burghers had slaves, and the land was held on feudal tenure; this means that the kings gave land to their chief subjects on condition of their doing certain things in return for it; in particular, of their going out to fight with a certain number of followers, when the king wanted soldiers.

The men who held the land were called the vassals of the king, and they in their turn gave part of their land to

other men, who became their vassals, and made them the same promises that the barons had made to the king. The kings of Jerusalem governed well, and kept their vassals in good order, and the pilgrims from Europe were surprised to see the difference between the order at Jerusalem and the disorder and confusion of their own countries.

At this time there were many brave and good soldiers who had no land or money, but fought well, and were much respected by their friends and feared by their enemies. Most of these were knights, great numbers of whom distinguished themselves in the Crusades. The knights, to begin with, were usually the sons of the great barons. The land of a baron almost always went at his death to his eldest son. The younger sons of the chief were often sent to the castle of some other baron or chief to be taught all the exercises which it was proper for a gentleman of those days to understand.

They were first made pages, and learned to wait upon the lady of the castle. When the page grew older he was taught to ride and use the sword or spear. He then became a squire, received a sword and belt from the priest, and followed his lord to war. He held his master's horse, carried his armour, guarded his prisoners, or watched his banner.

At the age of twenty-one, if he had been brave and faithful as a squire, he was considered fit to be made a knight. This was a serious and important event. The young man who was to become a knight kept watch in a chapel all the night before, praying and fasting. In the morning an address was made to him by a priest, who explained the duties of a knight—to serve his king, to

defend his country, to punish any one whom he found doing wrong, to help the weak and oppressed, in particular to help all women, and to do justice and judgment. He took an oath to keep the laws ; a new suit of armour was then put upon him, and he knelt down before his lord, who dubbed him a knight ; that is, tapped him on the shoulder with the flat of his sword, saying, Rise up, Sir John, or Sir James, or whatever his name might be. After this he was a knight, or in French, a chevalier ; meaning a man who rides on horseback, for the common people always went on foot. His chief business was to fight ; his chief duty was to keep the oaths which he had taken when he became a knight ; to defend the weak and innocent against the strong and cruel, ladies against their enemies, and all Christians against heathens or Mahomedans. In a peaceful and well-ordered country a knight would not find much to do. English people of the present day have laws, judges, and policemen to defend the weak from the strong, the good from the bad, and even a man on horseback is not allowed to interfere with them ; but in those times France was not a peaceful or well-ordered country, and there was plenty to be done by any strong man who cared for order and justice.

But it was in the Holy Land as Crusaders that the knights chiefly distinguished themselves. All the bravest soldiers were knights, kings were always knighted, and if a man who was not a knight did anything specially brave, he was often knighted, as a reward, upon the battlefield. There is a word which was used in those times to express the qualities which a good knight ought to have, and which is still used to express the same qualities ; chival-

rous meant brave, polite, unselfish, truthful, and the time of chivalry means the time in which those virtues were supposed to belong to the best soldiers. Probably, however, there were never more than a few knights who really kept their vows as they should have been kept, and there were bad as well as good men among them, as in every other body of people.

CHAPTER XIV.

LOUIS VI. (1108-1137).

PHILIP I. was succeeded by his son Louis VI., called sometimes *le Batailleur*, the Fighter; sometimes *l'Eveillé*, the Wide-awake. Both these names seem to show that he was an active, warlike king; and indeed, it was under his reign that the French kings first came to be considered as important people, and as decidedly more powerful than their great vassals. When Louis first became sole king, on the death of his father, he found his vassals oppressing the merchants and poor people in their lands, and quite disobedient to him. He had happily a genius for war, and was at the head of a body of soldiers made up of brave young men who were sent to Paris by the great vassals.

The clergy were friendly to him, and the common people respected and loved him, because he showed himself a lover of justice and a defender of the weak. The great vassals had taken land close to the walls of Paris, and the first care of Louis was to drive them back to a respectful distance, which he did with the help of a small army. He then attacked and defeated two counts, who were disturbing the churches of Rheims and of Orleans, and he carried on many other small wars with his different vassals, in which

he was usually the conqueror, till at last they were all brought into good order, and made to submit to him.

He did justice upon all wicked men, calling them before his court, giving them a fair trial, and punishing them if they were found guilty of ill-treating their neighbours or doing any other harm. Louis went to war with the Normans, but they were too strong for him, and he was obliged to go back to his own kingdom, and spend a few years of quiet.

But soon after, the King of England and the Emperor of Germany made a plan together to attack the eastern side of France, and take one of Louis's chief cities from him. Louis called upon his vassals to come to his help, and they, who were by this time accustomed to obey him, came together in great numbers. Louis brought out the *Oriflamme*, the royal standard or flag, which was considered especially sacred, was usually kept on the altar of the church at St. Denis, and was used only on great occasions. It was of flame-red silk, with three points on its lower side, tipped with green.

Louis collected so large an army that the German emperor did not dare to come into France; he gave up his plan, and Louis made peace with the King of England.

Soon after this they had to march against the Duke of Aquitaine, one of his most powerful vassals, who ruled over most of the south of France.

The duke, like so many others of the king's enemies, submitted when he saw Louis come against him, and their dispute was settled as the king wished. The next expedition was against the people of Flanders, some of whom had murdered their count. The king here put many people to

death with horrible cruelty, made a new count, and went home again.

Louis was now growing old, and, as was the custom with the kings of France, he had his eldest son Philip crowned and made king along with him, to help him in performing his duties as king, though, as Philip was only fourteen when he was crowned, he can hardly have been of much use to his father. But he was a very intelligent and promising boy, and his father was deeply grieved when two years afterwards his son met with an accident of which he died. The young prince was riding through the streets of Paris when a pig ran between the legs of his horse, which fell over with the prince upon it, hurting him so much that he died that night. His younger brother, Louis, called the Young, was then crowned king with his father.

Louis lived after this for about six years. Before he died he arranged a marriage between his son Louis and the daughter of the Duke of Aquitaine, a young lady who would have the greater part of the south of France for her own on the death of her father. The Duke of Aquitaine proposed the marriage, and Louis was very much pleased at it, thinking that Aquitaine, which had hitherto obeyed only its own duke, and treated the French king with very little respect, would now become a part of the French kingdom.

The bride and bridegroom were both children, but they were married at Bordeaux, and the bride, whose name was Eleanor, was crowned Queen of France. Eleanor was to have many adventures, and most of them unpleasant ones, in the course of her life. She was to be the wife of

two kings, the mother of two, to reign both in France and England, and to pass some years in prison. The two fathers of Louis and Eleanor were both ill at the time of the marriage, and died shortly after. The Duke of Aquitaine never returned from a pilgrimage which he had been making, and Eleanor became mistress of Aquitaine. Louis VI. died at Paris, and his son, the young Louis, became sole king.

In these days a king is not usually admired because he has fought a great number of battles. It is considered so great a misfortune to have to go to war, that in thinking of the best and greatest kind of king we usually imagine one who keeps his country in peace. But in those times no King of France could have made himself respected or obeyed without conquering his great vassals, who at the beginning of his reign were, as I said, almost as powerful as himself. Louis VI. did conquer many of them, and even when he failed, as in his war with the Duke of Normandy, he showed courage and energy which made his weaker enemies afraid of him. His wars prepared more peaceful reigns for his son and grandson. From this time the King of France was not only the chief man in France, but was respected and looked upon as an important person in all Europe.

Louis was much beloved by all his subjects. He was just and generous, "and so mirthful that some even reckoned him a simpleton." In his reign lived several great men, of whom I shall mention two in particular. One was an abbot named Suger, the dearest friend of Louis, whose life he wrote, and whose son, Louis VII., he helped in the government of the kingdom. The other was

also an abbot, named Bernard, called afterwards St. Bernard, a great friend of the Pope, and one of the most eloquent men that ever lived, which means that he could speak well and persuade his hearers to believe as he did and to do as he wished. Both Suger and St. Bernard, however, though they became famous in the reign of Louis VI., have more to do with the reign of his son, Louis VII., and therefore I will leave what more is to be said of them for another chapter.

Louis VI. is usually known as Louis le Gros, or the Fat, because in his old age he became fat from illness. The more active names which he won when he was young give a better idea of his nature.

CHAPTER XV.

LOUIS VII. (1137-1180).

LOUIS VII. succeeded, or came after, his father Louis VI. This king was still called Le Jeune (the Young), and it is the name by which he is known in history. All the kings of that time had names given them from something special about their look or behaviour, and not only kings but private people were distinguished in the same way, as many people were then without surnames, and a nickname of that sort was necessary to know apart two Johns, two Edwards, or any two people with the same Christian name. The custom was used for the kings, and certainly must have been necessary for them also, when a father and son had the same name and were ruling together.

Louis had been brought up under the care of the Abbot Suger, of whom I spoke in the last chapter. He had seen a great deal of monks and Churchmen, and was inclined to look up to them and obey them in everything, more than it is fitting for a king to do. Suger, however, was the best adviser he could have had, and his reign began well. He and Eleanor were crowned, and every one was pleased to see the north and south of France bound together by this marriage.

Louis soon found, however, that the men of Aquitaine were not yet much inclined to submit to him. He had a

quarrel with them, another with the King of England, and a third with the Pope, before he had been king for more than a year or two.

He wished to persuade one of the nobles, who was his friend, to marry the sister of his own wife, Eleanor of Aquitaine, in order that some lands which were hers might belong to a friend of the king. The difficulty was that the noble who was to have married this lady had already a wife to whom he had been married for some years.

Louis persuaded him to send away his wife and marry Eleanor's sister. Some of the bishops of France who were friends of the nobleman gave him leave to do this, and it was considered at that time that the clergy had the power of settling whether or not a marriage should be broken off, if either the husband or wife wished it to be so.

The brother of the poor lady who was thus sent away was a great nobleman called the Count of Champagne, and he, as may be imagined, was very angry at the way in which his sister was treated. He called upon the Pope to take her side, and the Pope, who had already quarrelled with Louis, as I said before, excommunicated the faithless husband and the bishops who had given him leave to send away his wife. Louis attacked the Count of Champagne, and there was war between them for some months. At last Louis attacked and took a place called Vitri, which he burned down. The flames destroyed a church into which thirteen hundred men, women, and children had gone for safety. They were all burned, and the king was near enough to hear their cries. Whether or not he had intended that they should be burned we do not know, but he afterwards repented deeply of his cruelty, and made a peace

with the Count of Champagne and with the Pope. The Pope had put France under an interdict, forbidding any church service to be held in any city where the king might be. A new Pope, who was chosen just at this time, on the death of the other, took off the interdict, and France was again at peace.

About this time news came to Europe that the kingdom of Jerusalem, which the Christians had set up in the East, was in danger. The Turks had watched their time, and had seen that the barons in the Holy Land were growing proud and turbulent, disobedient to their king, and not able to govern the people who should have been their subjects. One of the kings of Jerusalem had been killed by a fall from his horse, and had left his crown to a child of twelve years old, called Baldwin III. The Turks made use of the opportunity, suddenly attacked a large town named Edessa, killed many of the people who lived in it, and took away all their riches. The Christians were afraid that the Mahommedans might go on to other cities, and at last take from them all the country they had conquered in the reign of King Philip I. They called upon the Christians of the West to help them.

The Pope was anxious for another Crusade ; his friend St. Bernard went from one town of France to another, preaching, as Peter the Hermit had done, of the cruelties of the Turks, and the misery of the Christians, and calling upon all good servants of the Pope to take the cross and set out for the Holy Land. Louis, who was young and fond of adventure, was easily persuaded to lead an army to Jerusalem. The Pope said as before, that the Crusaders should be forgiven for all their sins, and Louis hoped in

this way to gain pardon for burning the church at Vitry, for which he still felt deep remorse. His faithful adviser Suger told him that his duty as a king was to stay at home and manage the affairs of his kingdom, but Louis would not listen to this ; and he ordered that a great meeting should be held at a place called Vezelay, where St. Bernard should address the people, and persuade as many as possible of them to take the cross.

The meeting was held on Easter Day. Immense crowds of people gathered together and listened to Bernard's eloquent speech. Before he had gone far a cry rose of "Crosses! crosses!" St. Bernard and the king, who was with him, gave away as many crosses as they had with them, and were even obliged to tear up some of their clothes to find stuff for more. After this Bernard went to Germany, and though he spoke Latin, so that the Germans could not understand what he said, his voice and his manner had such an effect upon them, that the Emperor Conrad and many of his chief noblemen took the cross at once.

Some of the Crusaders wished Bernard to lead the Crusade, but he remembered how Peter the Hermit had failed, and refused to do so. Louis, by the advice of the bishops and chief noblemen, made Suger regent, or ruler of the kingdom while he should be away, and set off for the Holy Land a few months after the meeting of Vezelay ; the Emperor Conrad having gone on a short time before him.

This Crusade, which seemed to promise great success, caused the death of many thousands of people, but was of no use whatever. The Crusaders began to quarrel with the people of the countries through which they passed before they were out of Europe. The kings had made

arrangements for having food supplied to their armies, but there were difficulties about finding enough for all, and the Crusaders, if they were not satisfied, took by force whatever they wanted from the people. When they reached Asia, their troubles grew worse. The German army, which was in front, lost its way, was attacked by the Turks, was completely defeated, and almost destroyed. The French king went on more carefully, but was also obliged to fight the Turks, and lost many of his best soldiers. The leaders of the army then found that they did not know their way, and their guides deserted them from fear of the Turks. The army was much hindered by the crowds of women and children who had insisted on going with their husbands and fathers to Jerusalem.

At last a man was found who knew his way through the country. He was a simple French knight named Gilbert, and to him was given full power over the whole army. He guided them safely, without being attacked by the Turks, to a town called Satalia, where there were some Christian soldiers, and where they could buy food. He then went back to his duties as a common soldier, and nothing more is known of him.

At Satalia the king was persuaded to desert his army and subjects. He left them to wander on as best they might on foot to Jerusalem, and himself, with his queen and some of his chief nobles, embarked in a few ships which they found there, and sailed to Antioch, from which town they travelled easily to Jerusalem. There Louis went to the chief church, prayed for pardon at the altar of the Sepulchre, and turned homewards, believing that he had done a great and good deed.

The poor pilgrims left at Satalia had been meanwhile in a state of the greatest misery. They had tried to make their way to Jerusalem, but found it impossible, as they were without food, and the Turks were in wait for them. The governor of Satalia would not allow them to come into the town, and many of them died of hunger ; others had food given them by their enemies the Turks, who were moved to pity for them, and treated them more charitably than did their fellow-Christians. More than three thousand young men were persuaded by the Turks to become Mahommedans ; most of the others died at last from illness or misery, or in battle.

Louis, on his way home, attacked a Turkish town named Damascus, and besieged it for some weeks, but then found that he was not strong enough to take it, and as he received letters from Suger in France, begging him to hasten home as fast as possible, he at last left the Holy Land and sailed for Europe. His subjects in France, who had heard how he had deserted the Crusaders, and how he was coming home without having taken any fresh towns or done anything to help the Christians in the East, were very angry with him. Some of them had wished to make his brother king instead of him, and would perhaps have done so but for the courage of the faithful Suger, who, with the help of St. Bernard and of letters from the Pope, had put an end to all disturbance by the time the king reached France. Louis had left his country with a hundred and fifty thousand pilgrims ; he brought back two or three hundred knights.

I know of only one good thing which came to the French from this Crusade. As the German army had been

almost entirely destroyed, the few soldiers who remained out of it had joined the army of Louis, and the French had learned to look upon Louis as a King as great as the Emperor, and had begun to feel themselves to be a nation apart from the Germans or any other people.

Louis found his kingdom in a state better than that in which he had left it. Suger had brought all the affairs of the country into good order, and had even paid debts of the king's with money of his own. When Louis came back Suger left the government altogether, and went to live privately at his own home, first giving the king some good advice, which Louis would have done well to follow. One piece of advice was not to quarrel with his wife Eleanor. Eleanor seems to have been an active, interfering woman, and she was probably very much vexed to see her husband begin so much and perform so little. She used to say that he was more a monk than a king, and they had lived an unhappy life together even before the Crusade. Eleanor went with Louis to Jerusalem, but when they came back she said that she wished to be separated from him. Suger wished the king to do all in his power to prevent this, but Louis gave way, and said he would do whatever might be settled by a council of the clergy which was to meet and consider the question. It was decided that the king and queen should be separated, and Eleanor left the French court and went to Aquitaine, the country which had belonged to her, and which, by her marriage with the French king, had become part of his kingdom, but was now his no longer. She very soon after married Henry, Count of Anjou.

This Henry was the grandson of an English king,

Henry I. His mother, Matilda, had wished to be queen of England, and had had a war with her cousin Stephen, which had ended in an agreement that Stephen should be King of England while he lived, and that the next king should be not his own son, but Matilda's son, Henry, who had now married Eleanor of Aquitane. A year or two afterwards Stephen died and Henry became King of England. Eleanor was thus for the second time the wife of a king.

Henry was still vassal of the French king for the duchies and counties which he held in France, Anjou, Aquitaine, and several others, for he constantly went over to France and conquered more provinces from the weak Louis. In later years Louis found a mean way of revenging himself upon Henry by helping Henry's sons to rebel against their father. He invited the eldest to the French court, and encouraged him to resist Henry. It was perhaps some kind of excuse for him that the young prince had married his daughter.

Louis married another wife after Eleanor had left him, and when she died, a third. It was not till he had been married for thirty years that he at last had a son, at whose birth the whole French nation was so much delighted that he was called Dieudonné, or, given by God. At the age of fifteen this son Philip was crowned, like so many of the early French kings, in his father's lifetime. A few months later Louis VII. died. He had reigned for forty-three years, and had done very little for his people. An old writer says, "Louis was pious towards God, mild to his subjects, full of respect for the clergy, but more simple than was fitting for a king. He trusted too much

to the advice of his nobles, who cared nothing for honesty or justice, and so was guilty of more than one serious fault, in spite of the goodness of his disposition."

Under his reign, however, were seen the good results of his father's victories. The barons were more obedient than they had been to former kings, the whole country was growing more orderly, and the people were being freed from the tyranny of the nobles.

Louis made agreements with some of the chief towns that they should not belong to any nobleman or bishop as they had all done before, but that they should govern themselves, make laws for themselves, choose their judges and other officers, and have other powers which they had never before enjoyed. In return, they were to pay the king sums of money from time to time, and to send men to his armies, like his great vassals, when he went to war. Such an arrangement made with a town was called a commune, and many towns wished to have communes given to them. After a time the town itself came to be called a commune, as well as the arrangement making it so. Louis VI. had given a few communes, but Louis VII. gave many more, and this was one of the ways in which the kings and the common people came to be of more importance, and the nobles of less importance, in France, as both the money which the communes now paid to the king, and the powers which the king gave to the communes, had before belonged to the nobles, so that they were left poorer and weaker, less able to resist the king or to oppress the people.

CHAPTER XVI.

PHILIP II. (1180-1223).

THE next king was Philip II. son of Louis. I have said how he was named Dieudonné, and how joyfully his birth was welcomed by all the people of France. He grew up a wise and a strong king, though he was not in all respects a good man, and he did more to make France a great and powerful country than any of the kings before him had done. He was only fifteen at the death of his father, but he already cared more about his own greatness and that of his country than Louis had ever done.

While he was still quite young, some of his courtiers, seeing him one day gnawing a green bough and looking much excited, asked him what he was thinking about. He answered, "I am wondering whether God will give me grace to raise France once more to the height she reached in the days of Charlemagne." He did not succeed in conquering such an empire as Charlemagne's, and it was well for him that he did not, for it could not have lasted for more than a few years; but he did what was better, he made France strong enough to defend herself against Germany and all her other enemies, and made the people who lived in the different parts of France feel that they all belonged to the same country, and were subjects of the same king.

The first act of his reign was one which we should now consider a bad one. He drove all the Jews out of the country and took away their money, which he kept for himself. At that time many people thought there was no harm in ill-treating any one who was not a Christian, and there were even found men among the clergy of the kingdom to praise the king for dishonestly taking money which belonged to his subjects.

He also put to death some other people who, though not Jews, did not believe in the Christian religion, and tried to make changes in what was usually taught to the people. All such men were called heretics; and the Pope and many of the clergy taught their hearers that heretics ought not to be allowed to live, that all true Christians should be their enemies, that it was right to make war upon them, and do them any kind of harm, only because they were heretics; and, worst of all, that if you made a promise to a man who was a heretic you were not bound to keep it. Philip had been brought up by priests, and from his treatment of his heretic subjects it seems as if his teachers must have taught him all these cruel and, as we now think, wicked ideas.

Philip, before he became king, found for himself a wife, Isabella, niece of the Count of Flanders. She suited him well in age, being only thirteen, and the two children were married and crowned together when Philip became king. Philip hoped by this marriage to make the Count of Flanders his friend, but they soon quarrelled, and the count, persuading some of the other counts to join him, raised an army against Philip. Henry II. of England and his sons came to the help of Philip, and managed to arrange a peace.

After this there were many quarrels and disputes between Philip and the King and princes of England. These young princes sometimes attacked Philip, and sometimes joined him in attacking their own father. One of them, Richard, who was afterwards King of England, and known as *Cœur-de-Lion*, became so great a friend of Philip that they slept in the same bed, ate at the same table, and even used the same plate. When the English and French kings wanted to make an agreement or discuss any question together, they usually met under a great elm that stood just on the boundary where the lands of the two kings met. It was called the elm of conference or discussion. One day the English arrived there first, and as they sat comfortably in the shade, mocked at the French as they saw them marching through the burning plain in their hot armour. The French were so angry that they fell upon the English, drove them away, and then cut down the elm, Philip "swearing by all the saints of France that there should never more be held a conference in that place."

Philip had to fight with several of his great vassals, who perhaps thought that he would be easy to conquer because of his youth; but he got the better of them all, and managed either to conquer them or to make them his friends.

Philip was able to attend to other matters besides war. He had the chief streets of Paris paved, which was a very great improvement to the town, as the streets had before been piled up with mud and dirt of all kinds, so that carts could hardly pass along them, and there was always a bad and unwholesome smell. He built colleges, hospitals, and waterworks, and walls round part of the city to defend it.

He also began to build the Louvre, the palace of the kings of France for many hundred years.

After Philip had been king for about seven years, bad news came from Jerusalem. The Christians had been growing weaker and weaker, and the Mahommedans, under a brave and wise leader named Saladin, had taken from them many of the chief places which they had won in the Holy Land, and had at last besieged and taken Jerusalem itself, and made prisoner the King of Jerusalem and many other of the chief European princes. When the news reached Europe, all the knights, barons, and men of war in the country were eager to go at once to the help of the Christians in Asia.

Philip and Henry of England, who were at war, made peace and took the cross. The Emperor of Germany and a crowd of German princes and barons did the same.

Before they could set out, however, Henry II. died, and his son Richard became King of England. Richard was a brave warlike prince, and delighted in the idea of fighting against Saladin; he sold many of his lands to obtain money for the expedition, and was soon ready to set out. Philip was less fiery and more prudent. He was sorry to leave his kingdom, and made careful arrangements as to how it was to be governed while he was away. His young wife died just at this time, and he left the chief power to his mother and uncle. Philip and Richard made an agreement by which they solemnly promised that they would always defend one another, and treat one another as brothers in arms. We shall see how Philip kept this promise.

Richard and Philip set off at the same time, by different roads, for the Holy Land. They were both obliged to spend

the winter in the Island of Sicily, where they passed the time in feasts and amusements, and, when they were tired of gaiety, in quarrelling. In the spring they went on to the Holy Land and took a city called Acre, but not till after a long siege. Philip soon grew tired of the Crusade, and as there seemed to be very little chance of winning back Jerusalem, and the quarrels between himself and Richard grew more and more common, he resolved at last to leave the Holy Land and to go back to his own kingdom. Before he did so he took a solemn oath that he would not attack any of Richard's lands or subjects, but that he would defend them against all enemies as he would his own town of Paris. Richard was angry at his going, but could not stop him, though he would not himself leave the Holy Land till he had tried every means of winning back Jerusalem.

When Philip arrived in Europe he went to visit the Pope, and asked him for leave to break the solemn promise which he had given not to attack Richard's lands. It was thought that if the Pope said a promise might be broken, there was no harm in breaking it; but the Pope refused, and even said that he should excommunicate Philip if he raised his hand against Richard's land. Philip, therefore, went on into France, and as he could not take what belonged to Richard, made plans for making himself as strong as possible in other ways before Richard should come back to prevent him.

About a year after this, Richard found that there was no use in his staying longer in the Holy Land, for that he should never be able to take Jerusalem. He made a truce with Saladin, by which it was settled that the Christians should be allowed to go to Jerusalem to worship undis-

turbed, though the town should belong to Saladin. A truce means a peace which is to last only for a fixed time. This truce was to last for three years, three months, three weeks, and three days.

Richard then turned homewards, and reached Europe safely ; but as he was travelling through Germany he was made prisoner by the Archduke of Austria, an old enemy with whom he had quarrelled during the Crusade. The Archduke gave him up to the Emperor, who kept him in prison for some time. Philip was much pleased at Richard's imprisonment, and at once attacked Normandy, which belonged to Richard, as it had done to his father Henry II. John, Richard's brother, who ought to have defended his country for him, was base enough to join Philip and help him as much as possible. At last Richard was set free, and at once came to Normandy and began to defend his lands against Philip.

There was a new Pope, named Innocent III., one of the greatest Popes there has ever been, who commanded Richard and Philip to make peace with one another. A truce for five years was agreed upon ; and Richard soon after went to attack the castle of one of his vassals, where he was told that a great treasure had been found, which the vassal refused to give up to him, as, according to law, he ought to have done. While Richard was one day making arrangements for an attack, an arrow shot from the castle wounded him, and he died ten days afterwards.

The next King of England and Normandy was his base and cowardly brother John, and Philip was glad of the change, thinking that with so weak a man to resist him, he should be able to have his own way in Normandy.

John had become King of England, but some people thought that he was not the right person to be king, because there still lived the son of one of his elder brothers, who had died some time before. This son, however, was quite a child, and as people always wish to have for their king a man who can think and decide for himself sooner than a child, who must be governed by some one else, most of the English wished to have John sooner than his little nephew Arthur.

Arthur had been born and brought up in Brittany, one of the provinces of France close to Normandy, and the people of Brittany and of the provinces round were fond of him, and wished to have him for their king. They asked Philip to help them and Arthur, and protect them against John, which Philip was glad to do, as he thought it would give him a chance of becoming king himself of some part of the country, and it always vexed him very much that part of France should belong to the Kings of England, as Normandy had done ever since the time of William the Conqueror, who, as you remember, was only Duke of Normandy to begin with, but had made himself King of England as well.

The story of Arthur is a sad one; three years after this time, John took him prisoner and shut him up in the Tower of Rouen. There he disappeared; no one ever knew exactly what had happened to him, but every one supposed that John had murdered him, and the common idea was that John had taken him out in a boat on the Seine, a river close to the tower of Rouen, thrown him overboard, and drowned him.

Arthur's barons and vassals called upon Philip to help them.

He at once marched into Normandy. He attacked a great castle which Richard Cœur-de-Lion had built to prevent any enemy from coming to Rouen, the chief city of Normandy, and took it after a siege of five months. When he had taken it, all the chief Norman towns, Rouen among the others, opened their gates to him. It would have been of no use for them to resist, for John did not care to help them. He stayed for some time in Rouen, amusing himself with feasting, gambling, drinking, and lying in bed till dinner-time after his great banquets, and if any one spoke to him of Philip and of the towns which Philip was taking from him, he answered, "Let him do as he likes. I shall be able to take back in a day all that he takes from me." When Philip came near to Rouen, John was frightened, and fled away into England, leaving all Normandy at Philip's mercy.

Thus the province of Normandy was conquered by the French king, and it has belonged to the kings of France ever since, and had no more dukes of its own. Brittany and the other provinces of France which had belonged to John, all gave themselves up to Philip. Philip called upon John to appear before a court of French nobles, that the question whether he had murdered Arthur might be fairly tried. John thought it wiser not to trust himself in France. The question was then considered without him, and Philip and his chief lords decided that John had been guilty of murder, and that all his land in France should be taken away from him.

As Philip had already taken all this land, it did not

make much difference to John what might be the reasons he gave for doing so ; but Philip was glad to find a good excuse for what he had done, though, had John been the best king that ever reigned, Philip would probably have still managed to make himself master of Normandy, if the English king had not been strong enough to prevent it.

There is so much to be said about Philip's reign that the rest must be left for a fresh chapter.

He was king for forty-three years, and of these only twenty-three had passed at the time of Arthur's death.

CHAPTER XVII.

PHILIP II.—(*continued*).

1180-1223.

YOU may perhaps have known already a good deal of what I said in the last chapter, and I may have seemed in it to be writing the history of England, as well as that of France. It is true that it is impossible to give an account of what happened in one country without mentioning often what was happening at the same time in the countries near at hand. The more rich and strong and powerful a country becomes, the more it has to do with its neighbours. While it is weak and poor, its governors have enough to do to manage their own affairs, and their great hope is that their neighbours will not take any notice of them, as they know they could not resist any attack that might be made upon them. But as they grow strong, they begin to wish to be stronger still, to conquer the countries near them, to give their opinion about all that their neighbours do, to prevent anything being done by any other king which they think might be dangerous to them or their subjects; and so, the farther we go on with the history of any country, the more we have to learn about what was happening in other countries at the same time.

THE
MUSEUM LIBRARY
1879 LONDON
MUSEUM FOUNDATIONS

French History.



Vagner & Hobbs' Geog. Estab. Leipzig.

This is especially true about France. England is, as you know, an island, and that has prevented it from being so much concerned with what went on on the Continent as it otherwise would have been. Its history has been less mixed up with that of other nations than the history of any other equally important country.

France being close to Germany, to Spain, to Belgium, not far from Italy, and nearer to England than any other country on the Continent, has had to do with the histories of all these nations; and any one who really knew the history of France well would know a good deal of what had happened in almost all the other countries of Europe.

But there is a particular reason why, in the reigns of Richard and John the history of France and the history of England should have a great deal to do with each other. These two English kings and their father, Henry II., were Frenchmen rather than Englishmen. Henry II. had been Duke of Anjou before he was King of England, and he and his sons spoke French, and followed French laws and customs. Richard I. was King of England for nine years and a half, and he did not pass above six months of that time in England, owing to the Crusaders and to his wars with Philip in Normandy. He had been brought up in France, cared more about his French than his English dominions, and considered Rouen the capital of his kingdom. After Philip had taken Normandy, the kings of England left off considering themselves Norman and French, took London for their chief town, and soon became as much Englishmen as the greater number of their subjects.

Philip was usually a very good friend of the clergy

and of the Pope. He was the sort of king they admired. He was prudent, fond of peace rather than war, respectful to the clergy, and cruel to heretics, which, sad to say, they thought a virtue. But he had one quarrel with the Pope, and as had happened with some of the other kings of France, the quarrel was about his wife. He had married a daughter of the Danish king, named Ingeburga, who seemed to every one gentle, good, and beautiful. The morning after her marriage, while she was being crowned queen, Philip looked at her, turned pale, and shuddered. He afterwards explained that he had taken a dislike to her, and could not have her for his wife. He wished to send her back to Denmark, but she in great distress refused to go, and appealed to the Pope, that is said that she wished the Pope to settle the question of what was to become of her.

Philip meanwhile persuaded some of the French clergy to say that the marriage was broken off, but the Pope took the side of Ingeburga, commanded the king to take her back, and when he refused, laid the kingdom under an interdict, that is forbade that any churches should be open, or any services held throughout the country. No marriages might be performed, no funeral services read, no bells rung, no one could go into the churches.

It was a horrible thing, that because the Pope was angry with the king, thousands of poor people who had done no harm, and knew nothing of the quarrel, should be shut out from what was the only comfort which some of them had in their hard lives. An excommunication would have punished the king himself, and so far would not have been unjust. But this interdict on the whole

kingdom was unjust and cruel, punishing thousands of people for the fault of one. The Pope hoped that the king would find his subjects growing so angry with him that he would be obliged to submit at last, and he was right. Philip gave way, took back his wife, and though it is to be feared that he never treated her very kindly, she lived with him as his wife from that time. The interdict of course was taken off.

At this time there was a great and terrible war in the south of France, in which the king himself did not take much part, but which ended at last in his grandson becoming master of the large province of Toulouse at the south-east corner of the kingdom. The count who ruled over this province was the richest and most powerful ruler in France. He lived like a king, and had never been conquered by the kings of France. His subjects were very different from the people of the other parts of France; they were all rich like their count, the cities seemed prosperous and the citizens industrious; the nobles wrote poetry, had gay feasts, and enjoyed themselves in every possible way. But they were a cruel and violent people, and when angry revenged themselves without pity for any harm done to them.

Many of the people of this land were heretics; which means, as I have already explained, people who either did not believe in the Christian religion at all, or who, though Christians, did not agree with all that was taught by the Pope. No one knows exactly what was believed by the people who lived in Toulouse, or Languedoc, as it was usually called at this time; or rather, so many different things were believed by different people, that it is impos-

sible to find out any set of opinions which was believed by all of them, but very few were obedient servants of the Pope.

Pope Innocent sent some monks to Languedoc to try and make the people believe rightly, but in vain. The monks preached, but no one listened, and at last one of the Pope's messengers was murdered. Upon this Innocent excommunicated Raymond, the Count of Toulouse, and then called upon all faithful Christians to go and make war upon him, saying that a war with Raymond would be as much a crusade as a war with the Saracens in the Holy Land, and promising that the sins of the crusaders should be forgiven. Count Raymond was frightened, forsook his subjects, and was forced by the Pope himself to lead an army against them; but he afterwards went back to them, and did what he could to help them.

Soldiers from all the provinces of France joined in a large army to attack Languedoc. They attacked and took a town called Beziers, which they burned, and murdered every one in it. They then took prisoner the Viscount of Beziers, the chief leader of the Languedocians, a brave young man only twenty-four years old, whom they persuaded to come to their camp by a promise that he should be allowed to go away again in safety. They thought there was no need to keep this promise made to a heretic, and threw him into prison, where he died soon after. Many people believed him to have been poisoned.

The great lords of the south then submitted. The towns that had been conquered were given to one of the French lords, Simon, Count of Montfort, who had been one of the leaders of the crusade, and the crusading army left the

country. Raymond tried to make peace with the Pope, but in vain. The Pope would give him peace only upon such shameful conditions that Raymond found it impossible to accept them.

Two years after the end of the first, there was a second crusade against Languedoc. Several towns were taken by the crusaders, and the inhabitants either put to death by the soldiers, or solemnly burned as heretics. Simon de Montfort was the leader of the crusaders, and showed himself to be a skilful and brave soldier, and a kind and thoughtful general to his army; but to the people of Languedoc a most cruel and treacherous enemy. It is worth while to remember that he was the father of the De Montfort who was the leader of the people against Henry III., as we read in English history.

Count Raymond and his son, also called Raymond, came to the help of the unhappy Languedocians, but as they brought no army, they were not able to do them much good. The King of Arragon, one of the provinces of Spain, came with a large army across the Pyrenees to help the men of the south, but in his first great battle his army was defeated, and he himself was killed.

After this the Languedocians were too much discouraged to go on fighting; they submitted to the counts and princes from the north of France, who divided the country between them and reigned over it. The archbishops and bishops found themselves lands and bishoprics, and Simon de Montfort was made Count of Toulouse. The country was almost deserted; it was covered with empty castles, ruins black with flames, and towns half destroyed. No one was allowed to live in the country who would not say

he was a Catholic, that is a man who believes what is taught by the Pope.

But this kind of peace did not last long. Two years later Raymond and his son came again to the country, and made themselves masters of Toulouse, the chief city of Languedoc, while Simon de Montfort was away in another part of the province. Montfort came quickly back and besieged Toulouse for nine months. At the end of that time, as he was watching an attack on the town, he was hit by a stone thrown from the walls—it is said by a woman—and was killed on the spot.

All the men of the south at once rose up against the crusaders, and Simon's son tried in vain to take Toulouse. From that time the crusaders began gradually to be driven out from their towns and castles by the Languedocians under the young Raymond, who was now Raymond VII., Count of Toulouse, as the old count had died. The Pope tried to stir up another crusade, but in vain. The son of De Montfort was still called Count of Toulouse by the French, but had less and less power every day. The young Raymond was called Count of Toulouse by his friends, and he gained what De Montfort lost. The Languedocians were, however, defeated at last, and made subject like the rest of France to the French king; but this did not happen till twelve years later.

This crusade, called from the name of a town in Languedoc the Albigensian Crusade, lasted ten years, and was one of the most cruel and unjust wars of which we read in history.

Philip II. had himself taken no part in the war, although towards its end he had allowed his eldest son to go to the

help of the De Montforts. He was growing old, and did not care to conquer any fresh lands. But before he died he won a victory which delighted the French more than anything else which had happened in his reign. There was a war going on in Germany between two men, each of whom wished to be emperor. One of them, whose name was Otho, was helped by King John, and against him Philip fought a battle, called the battle of Bouvines, which he won with some difficulty, as there were English soldiers fighting with Otho, whom it was very hard to beat. They were not driven backwards till both their generals had been taken prisoners.

The soldiers sent by the communes of France fought for the first time at this battle, and did good service. This was the first real French victory, and after gaining it, Philip was the most powerful and most famous prince in Christendom.

Towards the end of Philip's reign there had been troubles in England, where the people hated King John so much that they asked Louis, Philip's eldest son, to come and be their king instead of him. Louis went to England, marched to London, and promised solemnly to keep the good laws of the country. Some of the people took his side, others that of John; but soon after Louis had arrived in England, John died of a fever, and his son Henry, a child of ten years old, became king. The lords and barons had no quarrel with Henry, and they were beginning to dislike Louis, who did not keep his promises to them, but gave everything to his French followers. They all turned against Louis; the city of London alone remained faithful to him. A great battle was fought at

Lincoln, and the French army was defeated. Louis then went back to France, and Henry III. became King of England. A few years after Philip fell ill of a fever, and he soon felt that he should not recover. He made his will and died at a place called Mantes, as he was taking a journey for his health. He was fifty-eight years old, and had been king for forty-three years. He is often spoken of as Philip Auguste, a name which was given him because he was born in August.

CHAPTER XVIII.

LOUIS VIII. (1223-1226).

LOUIS VIII., the son of Philip Augustus, was a very different kind of man from his father, but he had so short a reign that he was not able to do much either of harm or good to his country. He was weak in body and in mind, and easily persuaded by the people about him, particularly by the priests, to do whatever they wished. He had an active, ambitious wife named Blanche of Castille, and it was she who had persuaded him to go to England when he was invited by the barons to try to make himself king there, as I told you in the last chapter. He was the first King of France since Hugh Capet who had not been crowned king while his father was still alive. This shows that people had by this time become so much accustomed to the son of a king succeeding him—that is, becoming king after him—that there was no more need for a father to see his son crowned before his death.

The people of France had great rejoicings when Louis became king, which was a sign that they were becoming loyal, or fond and proud of their kings. The citizens of Paris gave him a beautiful cup, musicians played in the streets of Paris, minstrels sang songs, and a certain number of serfs were made free men by their lords. Many prisoners, too, were let out of prison.

The minstrels who sang in the streets were the poets of that time. They could not, as a poet does in these days, make poems into a book, and sell it to any one who likes to buy it; for at that time there were no books, and very few people who could write or read. The poets wandered about from one town to another, or from one baron's castle to another, singing their songs for any one who passed to hear. Their poetry was always sung, and was often an account of the great deeds of the king or the nobles, or stories about the heroes of old days, in particular of Charlemagne, who was the favourite hero of these poems, as King Arthur of the Round Table was of the English minstrels at about the same time. The poets were called *trouvères* in the north, *troubadours* in the south. The *troubadours* sang songs about beautiful ladies, and brave knights who wanted to have them for their wives, while the *trouvères* sang of wars and adventures.

Louis VIII. had two wars, one with the King of England, and another with Count Raymond of Toulouse. In the war with the English king he was successful. He took away some of the few French provinces which still belonged to Henry, and left him only one in the south of France. His war with the Count of Toulouse did not end so well for him. I have said how there were two Counts of Toulouse at the same time, one Raymond, the son of the old Raymond, and one the son of Simon de Montfort. De Montfort's son found that he was not strong enough to conquer the country for himself; so he gave up all that he had already conquered to King Louis, and said he might have all the rest of Raymond's land if he could conquer it. The Pope was also an enemy to Raymond,

and tried to persuade Louis to fight with him. At last Louis marched with an immense army into Languedoc, and besieged a town called Avignon.

This town was very well defended, with high towers, a double wall round it, large ditches full of water ; plenty of food inside, and brave men to defend it. The poor people of the country round about had been made so poor and miserable by all the wars that had gone on in their province for so many years, that they had no heart left to go on fighting. They yielded to the King of France, though they all loved Raymond in their hearts, and were rejoiced at every success that he won. Raymond had laid waste most of the country round Avignon, hoping that if Louis could find no food for his army, he would be obliged to go away ; and the French soldiers fell ill in great numbers from want of food and from the unhealthiness of the country. But the men of Avignon gave way first. After a siege of three months, the town was taken.

Louis then turned towards France, hoping to come back the next year and finish the war by taking Toulouse, the chief town of Languedoc, but he had caught the fever of which so many of his soldiers had died, and a few days after he had left Avignon, he died himself, making his nobles promise that his little son should be king after him, and that his wife Blanche should take care of the country while his son was a child.

CHAPTER XIX.

LOUIS IX. (1226-1270).

THE son of Louis VIII. was Louis IX., afterwards called Saint Louis, in memory of his goodness and of all he did for France. He was twelve years old when he became king, and his mother, Blanche of Castille, managed all the business of the country for him till he was old enough to govern for himself. She gave him good tutors, and brought him up to be both a wise and a good man.

She had many troubles and difficulties while he was still young in resisting the chief nobles of the country, who thought this would be a good opportunity for winning back some of the power that they had lost in the two last reigns. Some of them refused to be present when the king was crowned, and afterwards went so far as to try to take Louis prisoner and have him brought up by one of his uncles who was their friend, instead of by Blanche. But Blanche managed to make the more powerful nobles her friends, and the people stood by her and their young king, so that she was able to resist all her enemies.

She had another great friend called the Legate, a name given to the ambassadors or messengers of the Pope, from a Latin word meaning messenger. The Pope, who liked to

know about all that was going on in all the countries of Europe, often sent a Legate to live at the court of any king with whom he was friendly, to send him accounts of what was going on, to give the king good advice, and in particular to see that he did not ill-treat any clergyman, or take for himself any of the power which it was thought in those times ought to belong to the Pope. Louis was brought up chiefly by Churchmen, and he was taught to be respectful and obedient to the Pope, and to do as much as he could to please him and to make the Church great and powerful. On the whole, it was at that time a good thing that the Pope should have a good deal of power, as he was more likely to use it well than the fierce ignorant barons, or the people of the towns, who were nearly as fierce, and quite as ignorant about many things. But it sometimes happened that the Churchmen wanted something which would have been bad for the other subjects of Louis, and have brought the country into trouble, and then Louis knew the true duty of a king well enough to refuse to give it to them.

But Louis himself sometimes made mistakes, though he was one of the best men who ever were kings of France, and some of his mistakes brought great trouble and difficulty upon his country.

All the time that Louis was a child, the barons continued to make disturbances in the country. They asked Henry III. of England to come and help them, but though he brought an army into France and marched about from one place to another, he did nothing important. When Louis became a man he made peace with all his enemies. He gave lands to some, and bought their lands from others

who were willing to part from them in return for a sum of money.

He made an arrangement with Raymond, the Count of Toulouse, that his daughter should marry one of the brothers of Louis, and that all his lands should go to this brother when Raymond died.

Louis loved peace and justice. He always settled a question fairly, without considering whether he himself should gain or lose by what he decided. Other kings and princes knew this so well, that they sometimes asked him to decide disputes in other countries with which he had nothing to do ; but it was in France, and among his own subjects, that his virtues were best known. He cared for all his subjects, the poor as well as the rich, which may not seem wonderful in these days when many rich people think a great deal about the safety and comfort of the poor, but which was very unusual then, especially for a king. The rich and strong were apt in those times to consider the poor as things rather than people, as animals useful for digging the ground and doing other hard work, rather than as men with feelings and thoughts like themselves.

Louis used to sit under a great oak tree at a place near Paris called Vincennes, and any one, however poor or shabby, who had a complaint to make, might come and make it before the king, who inquired into the matter, and settled it as he thought right and just. He would give advice also to those who wished for it, and help to any honest person in distress.

But though the king loved his people, he did not fully understand what was his duty to them, or at least he did not think about it as we do at this day. It is now cou-

sidered that the great duty of a king is to think of what will be good for his subjects. Louis thought less of their good than of pleasing God by doing something which he thought right, but which it was no part of his duty as king to do, and which he could not do without neglecting his people. *

Europe had been attacked by a fierce band of savages, called Tartars; they came from mountains in the north of Asia, and are described by the people of the Holy Land (the place where they first showed themselves) as something very wild and terrible. The Saracens, who were first attacked, sent messengers to the French court asking for help against the Tartars, and saying that they would certainly attack Europe if they were not stopped in Asia. The messengers described them as men with enormous heads, eating the raw skins of animals, and even of men. A writer of those times says, speaking of the Tartars, "They are skilful in drawing the bow, and good sailors; they carry with them leather boats, in which they pass the rivers; they speak a language that no other people understand; their horses feed on leaves and the bark of trees, and are so swift that they can go as far, in one day, as the horses of Europe can in three." These Tartars took several towns and provinces in Asia, and at last made themselves masters of Judea; took Jerusalem, and murdered all the Christians who could not escape.

Even before Louis heard this news, he had determined that he would at some time or other go upon a Crusade. He had once had an illness so severe that he at one time seemed to be dead. One of the ladies of his court thought that he was dead, another declared that he was still alive.

While they were disputing Louis opened his eyes and asked for the cross; they put it on his bed, and from that time he recovered. The cross on his bed was a sign that he considered himself a Crusader, and would at some time go on a Crusade. Many of his brothers and great lords had taken the cross at the same time.

When they heard of the Tartars having conquered Jerusalem, they determined to set out at once, and when Louis had been king for just twenty years, the Crusade began. The king determined this time to go to Egypt, a country on the north side of Africa, and to fight the Saracens there, instead of in the Holy Land. He felt no fears about the safety of his kingdom, for he left his mother there to govern for him, as she had done for so many years while he was a child. On his way to Egypt he stopped at the Island of Cyprus, where stores of food, wine, money, and such other things as his army would be likely to want, had been made ready for him. We read in a book about King Louis, of which I will speak presently, that the barrels of wine, set up in piles in the fields, looked from a little distance like great houses, and heaps of grain of different kinds had been piled up so high as to look like mountains. The king had with him between two and three thousand knights, and each knight had brought with him a larger or smaller body of men, so that the piles of food must have been a welcome sight. Leaving Cyprus, the French army went on to Egypt, and there they took the first town that came in their way, Damietta; for the Saracen army, which was waiting on the shore, tried in vain to prevent them from landing.

But having settled themselves at Damietta, there was a

great difficulty to know what to do next. As usual in the Crusades, no one knew the way about the country. The Crusaders stayed near Damietta for many weeks; when they tried to go farther, they were attacked by the Saracens. Many of them, among others one of the brothers of the king, were killed. After this there were several days of fighting. The Saracens had a machine which threw out what was called Greek fire; the Christians could never find out how it was made, but it looked like a blazing ball of fire as it flew through the air, and did great hurt to the soldiers when it came to the ground amongst them. The Crusaders fell ill from bad food and the heat of the weather; and at last, when they were once more attacked by the Saracens, they could resist no longer. Louis and great numbers of the chief men were taken prisoners, and the common people were, for the most part, put to death.

The king and his chief nobles had been kept alive in order that the Saracens might receive a ransom from them. A ransom means the sum of money which a prisoner pays in order to be set free. In those days a person who took a prisoner was allowed to have, for his own, whatever ransom the prisoner gave; indeed, he might fix the sum himself, and refuse to let the man go till he had paid it. The King of the Saracens, who was called not king, but Sultan, fixed a very large sum for the ransom of Louis and his nobles. Louis at once agreed to pay it, and a truce for ten years was agreed upon.

Still the king would not go home, though many of his barons advised him to do so; he thought of all his soldiers who had been made prisoners, and of the other

Christians who were prisoners in towns belonging to the Saracens in Asia. He knew that if he went back to Europe, there would be no hope for them of ever being set free, so he went to fight in Asia, where he had no special success ; but though he never succeeded in reaching Jerusalem, he was able, by making friends with some of the Saracens, to persuade them to give up to him several hundred Christians whom they were keeping prisoners, and a number of Christian children who had been taken from their friends when they were very young, and were being brought up as Mahommedans. All this time Queen Blanche was governing France, and governing it wisely and well. So long as she was there, the king felt no fear for the safety of his kingdom, but when at last news reached him that she was dead, he left the Holy Land at once and set sail for France. He arrived safely, but sad at not having seen Jerusalem after all his troubles, and at thinking of all the confusion and unhappiness which the Crusade had brought upon so many of his subjects.

Louis spent sixteen years in his country, ruling on the whole wisely and well. Peace and justice were still the two things which he chiefly valued. When he wanted for any reason to be master of land belonging to another prince, instead of going to war with him and trying to take it by force, or thinking of some excuse for saying it was his already, and trying to get it by a kind of trick, Louis IX. would say honestly that he wanted it, and offer some other piece of land in exchange. He did this with the King of England, Henry III. Henry had always complained that some land had been taken from him

unjustly by the grandfather of Louis IX. Louis offered him some other provinces instead of those which he had lost. Henry took them and was quite satisfied, but the nobles of France were vexed at their king having parted with the provinces, and asked him why he had done it, as there had been no real reason why Henry should have them rather than he. Louis said that he knew the King of England had no right to the land, but that he had given it in order that there might be love and friendship between himself and Henry. This would have been a good answer if Louis had made Henry some present which belonged only to himself, but he did not consider what the people of these provinces would think at being made subjects of King Henry. Henry governed very badly, and his subjects were not happy, so that the people who had lived happily under Louis IX. were very angry at having to live under a king whom they liked so much less well. They were so angry that when, after his death, the Pope said that he was to be considered a saint, to be called St. Louis, and to have one day in the year kept in honour of him, the people of these provinces would never take any notice of his day, nor pay him honour of any kind.

No doubt King Louis did wrong about this, and I think that he acted foolishly in going on the Crusade which did really no good, for though he set free some Christian prisoners, yet many more Christians were killed in the battles he fought ; I think there can be no doubt that he would have done his duty better by staying at home, and attending to his own work of governing France, unless he had found it necessary to march against the Tartars ; who, as it was, might have attacked his country while he was

away, and have done a great deal of harm there, if they had not been stopped by the Emperor of Germany. But on the whole Louis governed better than almost any other king who has reigned in France. He improved the laws ; he made arrangements about money, how it was to be made and how much each piece of money was to be worth ; he encouraged people to make beautiful buildings of all kinds, particularly churches ; he made many plans by which bad people might be found out and punished, and good people be protected. One of his plans was to send some of his servants, whom he knew he could trust, to different parts of the country to see what went on there, and to bring him back word. One of the things he was very anxious to prevent, was a plan people had in those days for finding out whether a man had or had not done any bad thing which some one else thought he might have done.

In these days there would be what is called a trial. The man who was supposed to have done wrong would be brought before a man called a judge, whose duty it is to know what are the laws of the country, and any one who knew anything about what had happened would be obliged to come and say what he knew, and the judge would ask questions of all the people who had seen what really did happen. If some people said one thing, and some another, twelve men who are sitting by on purpose, and who had listened to all that was said, would settle among themselves which story they thought was really true, and would tell the judge, and he would say how the man was to be punished if it were settled that he had done wrong, and would say he was to be set free and go away to his own

home again if it were settled that he had done no harm. This is a very long business, but it is likely that the truth will be found out at last. In the time of King Louis there was a much shorter plan. If one man said another had done wrong, and the second man said it was not true, the two fought together, and whichever won was considered to have been right. This was a quick but a very unjust way of settling the question. It made people who could fight well able to say what they liked about their weaker neighbours, and to get them punished for what they had never done. King Louis did a great deal to prevent this habit, and to make people who had disputes come before a judge and have a trial, something like what I have described. He also prevented the barons from making war upon one another when any two of them had a quarrel; which they still did very often at the beginning of his reign.

But all this time Louis was meaning to go, whenever it was possible, on another Crusade. Nothing could turn him away from this, and at last, when he was fifty-three years old, though he was so ill that he could hardly stand, he called all his barons together, and took the cross in spite of all that the wisest of them could say to prevent him. He sailed three years afterwards, and landed in Africa; but before he had had time for anything further, he was seized with a severe illness, and died at the age of fifty-six, having been king for forty-four years.

Most of what we know about St. Louis is told us by one of his barons, who was his faithful friend and servant all through his life, and who went with him on the first Crusade. His name was the Baron de Joinville, and when

you are old enough to read his book, you will find many stories about the things which that good and great king did and said, which I have not room to tell here, but which will amuse and interest all my readers very much.

CHAPTER XX.

PHILIP III. (1270-1286).

WHEN Louis IX. died in Africa, he had with him his eldest son Philip, to whom he gave much good advice during his last illness. As soon as he was dead Philip went back to Europe, taking with him the bodies of five of his relations, who had all died during the few weeks that they had been in Egypt. These were, his father, his wife, his little baby, his uncle, and his aunt. It was a gloomy end to the Crusade; and not only to that Crusade, but to all those that there had been before, for there never was another. After this time people became too busy with their own affairs to care to go away and fight in a country with which they had really nothing to do.

Philip was not a wise or a great man, though he seems to have had a good disposition, and his reign was a dull, gloomy one—not a particularly happy time for France. The barons, who had been growing less and less powerful for a long time, as I told you, now became less important than ever, because the king began to say that he had a right to make any one whom he pleased a nobleman. He also made a law that men who were not noblemen might hold fiefs—that is, be his vassals and masters of an estate—so the old nobles found that quite common people, whom

they thought much less good than themselves, were beginning to be masters of estates as they were, and also that these common people, whether they had estates or not, were made noblemen like themselves. As the kings grew stronger, they took away more and more of the power which had belonged to their barons. The barons no longer held courts where they behaved as little kings ; they gave up their feasts and entertainments ; and this made the whole country quiet and dull. The people of the towns were gradually getting more power ; but they were not yet very strong, so that everything was in a mournful, dull state, which lasted all through this reign.

Philip has been called "Le Hardi," meaning the Bold ; but all the time he was king he did only one thing which could be called bold, and most people would rather have called it hasty or rash. There was a dispute in Spain between an uncle and his young nephews as to who should inherit the throne. The nephews were too young to care themselves about reigning, but their mother was very anxious that one of her children should be king. She was the sister of Philip of France, and she asked him to help her.

Philip at once called together an army, and himself set off at the head of it to attack his sister's enemy ; but almost before he had reached Spain he found that he had come without making enough preparation. He had no food left, and not enough arms for his soldiers. It was of no use for him to go farther, and he was glad to hear that one of his generals, who had been fighting in Spain in another quarrel, had just made peace with the king whom Philip was going to attack. This gave him an excuse for not going farther, and his subjects did not know how hasty

and foolish he had been ; they only saw how quickly he had marched to the help of his sister, and called him, as I said, "The Bold."

The uncle of Philip who had died in the Holy Land, was the prince who had become master of all the land belonging to Count Raymond of Toulouse, in Languedoc. He left no child, and Languedoc passed on to Philip, and was ever afterwards a regular part of the French kingdom. Another great baron called the Count of Champagne died at about the same time, leaving an only daughter ; and Philip gained leave from the Pope to marry her to one of his sons, so that France became larger by two provinces under the reign of this weak and unimportant king.

Philip had a barber named Peter la Brosse, of whom he was very fond. He used to talk to this man about all his most important affairs, and take his advice as to everything he did. The great barons and advisers of the king were often vexed when they had just settled with the king that some particular thing for which they wished should be done, to find that Philip had talked the matter over with La Brosse and changed his mind about it completely. La Brosse also persuaded the king to give honours to him and to his relations ; his brother-in-law was made a bishop, his children were married to rich lords and ladies. At last the people who had to do with the king found that the best plan was to get La Brosse on their side to begin with, as what he wished was sure to be done ; so every one tried to please him, and he became one of the most powerful men in the country.

XX But at last La Brosse quarrelled with the queen. Philip's first wife had died in the Holy Land, leaving four

sons. Philip had married a second wife, a wise and beautiful princess, named Marie of Brabant. She also had children ; and after she had been married two years one of her stepsons, the eldest son of the king, died suddenly.

Some people thought he had been poisoned ; and La Brosse, who wanted to make the king dislike the queen, tried to persuade him that she had done this wicked deed, and would try to kill all her other stepsons in order that her own son might be king.

No one believed this horrible story, and there was no reason for believing it. Instead of doubting his wife, Philip began to doubt the honesty of La Brosse. But he still went on treating him as a great person and his best friend for two years longer. At the end of that time a messenger who was carrying some private letters to La Brosse fell ill at a monastery by the way, and died there, giving the letters he was carrying to the monks of the abbey, and making them promise him on his deathbed to give them to nobody but the King of France. This the monks promised and performed. Philip read the letters secretly with a few trusted barons, and no one else ever knew what had been in them ; but Pierre la Brosse was suddenly carried away from his home and shut up in a strong tower, where, after a few days, he was brought before four or five barons, condemned to die, and hanged the next morning. No one ever knew what he had done, and the people of France thought that, whatever it was, he ought to have had a fair trial, and were angry at his death.

It is said that the king was very unwilling to agree to it, and that he was only with some difficulty persuaded to it by the barons. A king should never be persuaded by

any one to do what is forbidden by the laws of the country ; and it is forbidden by law, both in England and France, to put a man to death without openly saying why you are doing so, and giving him an opportunity of defending himself, whatever he may have done.

Philip had an uncle who was a very different kind of man from himself. His name was Charles of Anjou. He was fierce and active ; fond of war, power, and adventure ; and always looking about for one or other of these amusements. He was king of an island named Sicily, which is to the south of Italy ; and he treated the people so badly that they hated him and all the French, and made up their minds to get rid of them all out of the island as soon as possible. They had made friends with one of the Spanish kings, who promised to help them, and all was ready for a rising up against the French, when one day a quarrel rose between a French soldier and a Sicilian who were walking in a public garden one Sunday when the vesper or evening bells were just ringing. All the Sicilians gathered round to help their countryman, and the French soldiers to help the Frenchman, till there was a general fight all through the city. Then the Sicilians rose up in other parts of the island and attacked all the French soldiers who lived near them, till there was scarcely one Frenchman left alive in the whole of Sicily. Charles of Anjou, who was not in the island at the time, did all in his power to make himself master of it once more, but he never could do so, and died without having succeeded.

This rising up of the Sicilians against the French is called the Sicilian Vespers, because it happened, as I said,

just at vesper-tide, or evening time, and it was a terrible thing for the French people.

A sad accident happened at about this time in Philip's own family. His youngest brother had been made a knight, and a tournament was to be held in his honour. A tournament was an amusement which was coming very much into fashion at this time. It was a kind of sham-fight, in which knights rode against one another, attacked each other with swords and spears that were blunt, so as not to do any real harm, and tried to knock one another off their horses. The young prince, who had so lately become a knight, joined in the tournament, and was so much hurt by the blows he received, and confused by the heat and dust and the weight of his armour, that he became an idiot, and never recovered his senses. However, he found a young lady to marry him, and his descendants for some hundred years were called Bourbons, and some of them came to be kings at last, as we shall see.

I told you that one of the Spanish kings had helped the Sicilians in their rising up against Charles of Anjou. There were several different provinces in Spain, and each province had a king of its own. One of the most important was called Arragon, and the friend of the Sicilians was Peter, King of Arragon. The Pope at this time was the friend of Charles of Anjou, and was very angry with Peter of Arragon for having helped Charles's subjects to fight against him. He declared that Peter should be king no longer, and told Philip that he might have the kingdom of Arragon for one of his sons if he could conquer it from Peter. Philip at once set off across the Pyrenees to attack Arragon. He besieged a town named Gerona, and there

he had to stay for two months and a half, for the people resisted him most bravely ; but at last, after many of his men had died from heat and illness, the town gave itself up to him. He and his army were too much worn out to go any farther ; they turned towards home, but on their way back through the Pyrenees Philip fell ill, and he died at the first French town they reached. A week after his death Gerona was taken back from the French by Peter of Arragon.

CHAPTER XXI.

PHILIP IV. (1286-1314).

THE son of Philip III. was Philip IV., called *Le Bel* because he was very handsome. He was never liked by the people, for which they had many and good reasons. When he became king, he was only seventeen years old, but he never behaved like a young man. He did not care for pleasures of any sort, for hunting, or tournaments, or the company of his barons and courtiers; but he liked to be shut up all day with lawyers, who were inventing ways to give to the kings of France more power than they had already, and to get Philip plenty of money from his subjects, which they did without at all considering how unpleasant it might be for the subjects to do without their riches.

He had a wife of whom horrible stories are told. One was how she used to sit up in a tower in Paris, looking out upon the people who went by, and when she saw anyone whose looks she liked, she called to them to come in and pay her a visit; and if they came, she made them stay till night, and then took them to the top of her tower, and pushed them into the river which flowed underneath, and drowned them. Of course this story is not true. It is a legend or wild tale told about a particular castle near the river *Seine* in Paris; and it is not always told about the same

person. Sometimes it is about one of the wives of Philip's sons; but it shows how the people hated all this family, and were ready to listen to horrible stories about any of them.

A few years after Philip became king there was a war between him and Edward III. of England. I have told you already of many wars in France, but till now they have nearly all, except the Crusades, been wars of the same kind; that is, wars between a king and one of his great vassals. Even when Philip Augustus fought with Henry, King of England, and his sons, it was a war between a sovereign and his vassals, because Henry and his sons, though they were kings of England and had no one over them there, were vassals of the French king for the land which they had in France. In the reign of Philip IV. the English kings were still vassals for one or two French provinces, but they were now completely Englishmen, and as kings of England had grown so strong, that when they fought, the war was between one king and another, one country and another, between England and France, instead of between a sovereign and his vassal. The sovereign was the name of the king, duke, or count who gave the land on conditions to the vassal, as I have explained before. Sovereign has now come to mean merely the chief ruler of a country.

The sailors of Edward III. and the people who lived on the sea-coast of France often met and quarrelled. Edward had some land of his own in France, the part which St. Louis had given to his father, that there might be peace and friendship between them. His subjects helped the English seamen against Philip's subjects, and at last the quarrel became a regular war, in which, how-

ever, neither of the kings took much part. Philip was busy with his lawyers in Paris, and Edward was fighting the Welsh and Scotch, and had no time to think about his affairs in France. Philip was much more cunning than Edward. He watched his opportunity, and managed in rather a deceitful way to make himself master of Aquitaine, the part of France which had belonged to the English king, and to keep it, which Edward allowed him to do, being too much taken up with other matters to care much about it.

Philip had many disputes with the Pope of those days, Boniface VIII. The story of their quarrels is not a very amusing one, and I will not tell it here. It is enough to know that the beginning of the quarrel was about the question whether or not the clergy of France should pay taxes to the king, as the rest of the people did. Taxes are the money which people pay to their rulers, to be spent in the expenses of governing the country. It had always been a question whether or not the clergy in the country should pay taxes. Many of them were very rich, and the kings said that as the clergy had as much good as other people from the soldiers, the sailors, and the judges of the countries, they ought to be willing to take their share in paying for it. The Pope always said that the clergy in all the different countries of Europe were his subjects, and were to think more of his commands than of the laws of the king in whose country they lived. He was very angry, therefore, at the king wishing to make them pay taxes. The quarrel began about this question, and it lasted all through the lifetime of the Pope. The king was the conqueror at last.

Philip was a very severe king. He made all his sub-

jects do whatever he liked, without allowing them to say whether they wished for anything different. Among other things, he made them pay him great quantities of money. It is said that by doing this, he made himself as odious to his people as Louis IX. had been dear to them. He made laws about everything, and every one who broke his laws was to pay him a fine. Some of these were wise and useful laws, as those in which were arranged who should judge the people, and where they should meet together for any one who had been ill-treated to complain of it, and arrangements about communes and the people who lived in them.

But others of much less importance were much more unpleasant to the people. Philip made laws as to how many suits of clothes each person might have—a prince so many, a count or a duke so many, a knight so many. The greatest number allowed was four; the ladies were to have no more than their husbands. Boys were to have two suits of clothes a year, but King Philip seems to have made no law for girls. He also settled how many dishes people were to have for dinner, and how their food was to be prepared. The people naturally disliked extremely having these rules, and having to pay for breaking them.

But there were some of his subjects to whom Philip behaved with especial cruelty, and among these were the Jews. This unfortunate nation has no country of its own; the Jews wander from one country to another, each particular family settling itself in any place where it sees an opportunity of making money, and setting up a comfortable home. The Jews settled in France were among the richest of Philip's subjects, for they understood more about

how to do business, and how to get together a great deal of money, than any other people of that time. Philip protected them when first he became king, and when they had had time to grow rich, turned upon them, seized all their goods, and then drove them all out of the country. The unhappy Jews had before this been treated in the same way by Edward I. of England.

Philip had many wars with the Count of Flanders. Flanders was the country which is now Belgium, at the north-east corner of France. It was at that time part of France, but like so many other provinces, was ruled by a count of its own, who was always ready to resist the king. When Edward of England wanted to find some one to help him against Philip, he made friends with the Count of Flanders, who gave him much useful help against the King of France. When Philip made peace with Edward, he still went on fighting with Guy of Flanders, and when he found that he could not conquer him in open war, he persuaded Guy by false promises to come to his court with his eldest sons and some of his chief lords, and to give up to him the keys of his chief city, and of all the fortresses that were still his ; for Philip had already taken away many of them. The promise was that if Guy would do this, he should afterwards be sent back to Flanders with all his old powers, and be disturbed no more ; but as soon as Philip had all he wanted, Guy with his sons and great lords was thrown into prison, and Philip took Flanders as his own, and sent one of his officers to rule it for him.

Guy had not ruled his people well, and they had no great love for him. Philip made them many promises of good government, and they made no resistance to him, but

received him splendidly when he went to visit Flanders in the same year in which Guy had been made prisoner. The people came out of the cities dressed in their best clothes, which were made of very fine and beautifully coloured cloth, and made processions and feasts of all kinds to do honour to King Philip. The French lords were vexed to see so many common people wearing such rich clothes, and Philip's wife, Jane of Navarre, said, "Till now I thought I was the only queen, but here I see more than six hundred others." The friendship between Philip and the Flemings did not last long. The French governor set over the people ill-treated them till they rose against him, and turned him out of the city where he lived, and formed themselves into an army with which to march against Philip. One of Guy's sons, who had been fighting in distant countries, came home when he heard of the rising up in Flanders, to put himself at the head of it. The Flemish had made up a large army, and in a battle at a place called Courtrai in Flanders, defeated the French soldiers as they had scarcely ever been defeated before. Great numbers of noblemen were killed, others fled from the field; the Flemings went to their tents and took from them great quantities of arms and rich clothes. It was thought very disgraceful that so many nobles should have been defeated by common citizens, such as most of the soldiers in the Flemish army were.

After this Philip could never make himself master in Flanders again. Two years later, after two more great battles, he found that they would never submit to him peaceably, and at last, tired of fighting, he agreed to set free the sons of Guy, whom he had been keeping prisoners,

and to allow the eldest of them to be count, as his father had been. The old Count Guy had died in France.

This war was important, because it was owing partly to it that Philip spent so much money, and had to find so many ways of getting more, which was very unpleasant to his subjects; though, even allowing for all he had to spend, it is difficult to find out what became of all the immense sums of money he received in one way or another from his people. He certainly seemed to be always contriving new ways of making himself rich, and yet always to be in need of money.

Pope Boniface, who, as I said before, had a quarrel with Philip as to whether or not the clergy were to pay taxes, died just at the time when another quarrel was going on fiercely between them. The question this time was whether the Pope had any power over the king; whether the king was in all things to do as he pleased, or whether he was, in certain cases, to obey the Pope. The Pope wished the king to submit to him in questions about clergymen and churches and monasteries, and all that had to do with Church services, and settling who was to be archbishop, bishop, or abbot, and what the people were to be taught. Many of the kings said the Pope ought to have no power in their kingdoms, and Philip IV. was one of these, so long as the Pope displeased him, but if the Pope did as he wished, Philip told all his subjects to obey him. The Pope who came after Boniface was a friend of Philip's, and did whatever he wished.

Philip, after all he had taken from his subjects, had still left some of them very rich, and there was one body of men from whom he had never yet taken anything.

These were the Templars. The first Templars were a few brave knights who joined together in the Holy Land into a little army to fight for the Temple at Jerusalem. They were very brave and virtuous, so that other men admired them, and wished to become Templars also, and by degrees the "Order," as it was called, grew larger and larger. An Order means a body of men with a particular set of rules as to how they are to behave. The Order of Templars increased, till, in the time of Philip le Bel, there were as many as 15,000 of them in different parts of the world. While the Crusades lasted, they spent most of their time fighting in the Holy Land, and when the Crusades were at an end the Templars came back to Europe, and went to live in the different countries to which they belonged.

They were partly monks as well as soldiers; they made a vow to remain unmarried, and to give up their lives to fighting in the East, and to protecting the Christians there, and to follow certain rules which were made for them by St. Bernard, who, as you have already heard, lived in the reign of Louis VII. They did not obey any king or the Pope. One among them was chosen by the others to be their chief, and was called the Grand Master, and him they all obeyed. When the Order grew large there was a Grand Master in each country.

Philip could not bear that any of his subjects should refuse to obey him in everything, and he wished to be master of the riches of the Templars, which were very great, so he determined to destroy the Order with the help of the Pope, who was afraid to refuse him anything. On a particular day all the Templars in France were thrown into prison. The king sent out a notice, saying they had

been put in prison because they were horribly wicked, and gave an account of some of the bad things which he supposed them to have done and to believe. He said that they were not really Christians, that they wished the Saracens to conquer Europe, that they did all kinds of wicked things in secret, of which nobody knew. It was very hard to tell whether what the king said was true or not. Nobody is sure even now whether the Templars had become wicked, and had done bad things in secret. Many of the knights said that the king's story was entirely untrue; others said that it was partly true, and some of them, who had been kept in prison a long time, and then tortured to make them say what the king wished, said that his story was true. But many of these, when they came out of prison, unsaid all they had said, declaring they would have done anything to escape from the horrible tortures.

Whatever the Templars had done, they could hardly have deserved what happened to them. Many of them were kept in prison for their lives, and several of them were burned alive. The Grand Master of France was burned with one of his chief friends. All the wealth that had belonged to them was taken by Philip.

Of all the bad things done by Philip IV., this is what I think the worst. He died very soon after the death of the Grand Master and his friend. Pope Clement died at about the same time. Philip died at Fontainebleau, the place where he had been born, giving much wise and good advice to his eldest son, who was to be king after him, and who, it might be feared, would be at least as likely to follow the example of his father's life as the good advice which Philip gave only on his deathbed.

CHAPTER XXII.

LOUIS X. (1314-1316).

PHILIP IV. left three sons, of whom the eldest was made king at his death. This young man, whose name was Louis, was twenty-five years old when he became king; but he was as thoughtless and fond of amusement as a child, and he had gained the name of Hutin, which means disorder or noise, and was given him because he seemed to take a pleasure in quarrelling and making disturbances. He thought very little of his duties as King of France, and left all the business of governing the kingdom to his uncle, Charles of Valois.

The people who had hated Philip were rejoiced to see a new king on the throne; the nobles and Charles of Valois, Philip's brother, at once set to work to undo as much as they could of what Philip had done. They took away the chief places in the Government from the men to whom Philip had given them, and two of the chief officers were thrown into prison and tortured; that is, they were hurt very much with horrible machines made on purpose, to force them to say they had done the bad things of which their enemies accused them.

The chief Minister of all had his head cut off, without being allowed to say anything to defend himself. His enemies said that this man had stolen money, and kept it

for himself, when it had been given to him to spend for the good of the country, and that it was his fault that Philip had made the people pay so many taxes. This may have been true, but King Louis did not think he deserved to be put to death for this, and settled to exile him, that is, to send him out of France, and make him live in another country. This he thought would be punishment enough ; but Charles of Valois told his nephew that the Minister was not only a thief, but that he had made a plan to kill the king and his brothers by sorcery.

Many people at that time believed that there were men and women who had the power of making things happen ; causing storms to rise, people to fall ill, die, or get well, bringing happiness to their friends, and misfortune to their enemies ; and other powers of the same sort. Men who were supposed to be able to do such things were called sorcerers, and women witches. It was considered a very wicked thing to be either a sorcerer or a witch, and there was a law which said that they were to be put to death wherever they were found.

Charles of Valois had heard that a sorcerer had made wax figures of himself, of the king, and of some of their relations, and had put them in front of a fire. The idea was that, as the wax images slowly melted away, the persons of whom the images were made would fall ill and waste away too, and soon die. It was supposed that the Minister's wife had employed the sorcerer to make these figures. When Louis heard of it he said that the Minister deserved death. The Minister had his head cut off, his wife was put into prison ; the man supposed to be the sorcerer was hanged, and his wife, who was supposed to be a witch,

and to have helped him, was burned. It is sad to see what foolish things people will believe, and how cruel men often become when they are frightened.

Many of the chief men in the different provinces of France now asked the king to make arrangements for their being better governed than they had been before. The king and his uncle, who wanted to make friends with them, agreed, and made them many promises ; some about their money not being taken away from them as it had been by Philip le Bel, and others about giving the nobles back some of the power which had been taken from them by Saint Louis and his son and grandson.

But Louis was in great want of money himself, and was anxious to find out some way of getting some which would not make his subjects angry. Louis had a wife who had behaved so badly, that she had for some time been shut up in prison. He wished to have another wife, and as he could not marry again while his first wife was alive, he had her smothered between two mattresses, and then asked the sister of the King of Hungary, whose name was Clemence, to marry him. She agreed, and he was very much pleased, as she was rich, and he hoped she would bring him a great quantity of money, of which he was in much want, for he had not enough to be crowned with proper grandeur. But as Clemence was on her way to France, she met with a great storm, in which her ship was wrecked, and she lost all her jewels, her fine dresses, and the money she was bringing to Louis. They had to be married quietly without much show, and afterwards they were crowned together with as little expense as possible.

But in spite of being poor, Louis went on with the war which his father had begun against Flanders. He called upon the towns of France to send him soldiers for the war; but very few came, for the French obeyed only strong kings, and Louis was a weak one. However, by making promises to the towns, he managed to gather together a small army, with which he marched into Flanders. The weather that year was unusually bad. There was such hard rain, that the mud came up to the knees of the men and horses, and it was impossible to bring provisions from the country round to the army. The soldiers fell ill, and Louis saw that there was no use in going farther. After having been in Flanders for a month or two, he turned back, burnt his tents, and led his army into France again. All through the autumn the bad weather lasted; the harvests were spoiled, and the people were in great distress. After the famine there came illnesses of different kinds, caused by bad food and want; and it is said that in the northern part of France a third part of the people died either of disease or hunger.

A year later the reign of Louis came to an end. His death was caused by his thoughtlessness and folly. He had made himself very hot with playing at tennis, and without waiting to grow cool, he went down into a cold vault, or place underground, and drank great quantities of fresh wine. This brought on a fever of which he died.

He left only one child, a little girl; and there was a great question whether some one should govern for her till she grew up, and then she be queen, or whether she should be left out altogether because she was a girl, and one of the brothers of Louis be king. Since the time of

Hugh Capet, it had never happened before that the King of France had died without leaving a son, so some new rule had to be made on purpose. It was settled at last that France should never be without a king, that no queen should ever rule there, and that therefore, if a king left only daughters, his brother, or his nearest male relation, should come after him. The reason for this was that a queen would probably marry some foreign prince, and that he might want to rule over France, as well as over his own kingdom. This rule that no woman may reign in a country is called the Salic Law. I need not tell you that there is no Salic Law in England. Perhaps it is because England is an island, separated from all the countries of the Continent, that we have been able to enjoy the good of having queens, without being conquered by the countries from which their husbands came. Louis X. died in 1316, and was succeeded by his next brother.

CHAPTER XXIII.

PHILIP V. (1316-1322).

THE name of Louis X's next brother was Philip, and he was called Philip le Long, or the Tall, because of his great height. His reign was almost as short as his brother's had been, and brought no comfort to the people of France, who had lost most of their money in the last two reigns, and who were to be still more ill-treated by the new king.

Philip's first act was to call together what were called the States-General. This was a body of men, something like our Parliament, which met together from time to time to give the king advice or help in governing the country. This was the third time of its meeting; the first two had been in the reign of Philip's father, Philip le Bel. These meetings were made up of clergymen, of nobles, and of some of the chief men in the different towns of the country. When the king wished the States-General to meet, he sent out word a short time beforehand, and the nobles met together, and chose out some of their number to go for them to the meeting; for there would not have been space or time for every one to go. The clergy did the same, and the townspeople the same.

Every one could usually guess what the king was going to say, or to ask from his States-General, and the clergy,

the barons, and the townspeople, who were not going to the meeting, told those who were going, who were called deputies, what they had better say to the king, and what they should ask from him; for the States-General never met without the deputies making a complaint to the king of everything that was going wrong in the country, and asking him to set their affairs right for them. They made lists of their complaints, which they gave to the king before the meeting broke up, and which he always promised to consider, though he very often took no further notice of them.

The first thing that happened when the deputies were all met together was that the king asked them whatever he wished to ask. He sometimes told them that he was going to war, and asked them to help him against some of his enemies; or he wished to know what they thought of some new law which he had made; or wanted them to collect money for him. Three men were chosen by the rest, one from each of the three orders, that is, the order of the clergy, the order of the nobles, and the order of the townspeople or burghers, who each made a speech in answer. At this time they usually agreed to whatever the king wished, for unless he expected them to agree with him, he did not call them together, and they could meet only when he called them.

After they had made their speeches and given in their list of complaints, the king sent back the deputies to their own homes. These meetings, though something like our Parliaments, were different from them in many important ways, which I cannot explain here; but the great difference of all was that in England the nobles and the common

people usually took the same side, and so were strong enough to prevent the king from having his own way in everything; while in France they were enemies, and neither was strong enough alone to resist the king, so that he had a great deal of power, and did what he liked.

Philip wished the States-General to say solemnly that he was the right person to be king, and that no woman should ever be Queen of France. They did so, and swore to obey him as king, and his son after him. Philip's brother and the other great men of the State also agreed to his being king, and his reign began happily.

It was a short and not an important reign. After Philip had been king for about two years, there was a great rising up of the peasants in the south of France. There were still at different times some ideas of another Crusade, and these poor people wished to set off to conquer the Holy Land for themselves. At first they went quietly through the country, asking peaceably for bread at the doors of the churches; but as more and more people joined them, chiefly shepherds and labourers out of the fields, their numbers grew too large for them to be satisfied in this way. They grew hungry, and took whatever they could find. Then the people of the towns rose up against them, and brought them before the magistrates, who hanged several of them. After this they broke open the prisons and made disturbances in all the countries through which they passed. In particular, they killed all the Jews whom they could find. At last, one of the king's officers brought an army against them, and shut them up in the town from which they had meant to set sail for the East, refusing to let them come back into the country

they had left. Many of them were killed or taken prisoners ; some died of illness, others escaped, and went quietly to their own homes. These poor people were called *pastoureaux*, or *pasturers*, many of them being *shepherds*.

There was another disturbance in France in this reign, caused by a set of people more miserable and unfortunate than the poor peasants ; these were the lepers. Leprosy was a very bad illness caught in the East by some of the Crusaders, which spread through all Europe. It could not be cured, so the people who were taken ill with it were at once sent to houses made on purpose, where all the lepers lived apart from all healthy people, so that the illness might spread as little as possible. There arose an idea in the reign of Philip V. that the lepers had made a plan to try and poison all the healthy people in France, either to give them the leprosy also, or to make them die some other way. It was said that they put poison into springs of water, so that all the stream flowing from the spring might be poisoned, and that every one who used the water might die.

There is no reason to think that the lepers ever tried to do anything so wicked, or that they could have done it if they had tried. No one ever found a poisoned stream, but people became so much frightened at the idea, that the king ordered all lepers to be at once imprisoned, and a great number of them were burned without any one having shown that they had done anything in the least wrong. Others were imprisoned for life in their hospitals. They had before this been allowed to wander about the country by day looking for food. They were obliged to

keep at a distance from any one who passed by, and to give them warning by their cries that they were lepers, and might give the illness to any one who came near.

Kind people often put down food and other gifts on the ground, which the lepers took up when they were gone away. After this law of Philip's they were treated as prisoners, and never allowed to go out into the country.

At the same time a great number of Jews were burned alive ; they had money which their enemies wished to steal from them, and the Christians were glad of a reason for satisfying the hatred they all felt for the unfortunate Jews.

Very soon after these cruel executions Philip V. was taken ill and died from a fever. His only son had been dead for some years ; like his brother Louis he left only girls ; but there was still a third brother to succeed him.

CHAPTER XXIV.

CHARLES IV. (1322-1328).

PHILIP V. had left a brother named Charles, who was the next king, and is known as Charles le Bel, or the Handsome. He reigned for six years, the same time as his brother Philip. Louis X. had reigned for two years. The reigns of all the sons added together did not take up half so many years as the reign of their father, Philip IV., and he had reigned a much shorter time than Queen Victoria has now done. A boy or girl born in the last year of Philip IV.'s reign would have lived in the reigns of five kings by the time he or she was fifteen. This has not happened at any other time in French history, or at any time in English history, between the reigns of William the Conqueror and of Queen Victoria. Three times over, in the course of French history, three brothers have come to be kings one after another, and each time they have come at the end of their family ; none of them have left descendants. Louis X., Philip V., and Charles IV., were the first set of brothers ; we shall come to the others in due time.

Charles IV. had an unimportant reign, and very little is known about him, or the times in which he lived. It seems that at that time there was only one Frenchman who wrote history, and he wrote only about other countries,

and scarcely at all about France. Many events happened in England, in Germany, and in Italy, but Charles IV. took very little part in them. In England a very weak and bad man, Edward II., was king, and his wife, Isabella, was the sister of Charles IV.

Isabella hated her husband, and was always writing to Charles to say how unkind Edward was to her, and to ask for help against him. In one letter she says that her husband treats her "more like a servant than like his wife." Charles was, no doubt, glad of an excuse for taking away some of the land which still belonged to the English kings in France. This land was in the south part of the country, in the province called Aquitaine. Charles made himself master of several of the towns in Aquitaine, and when Edward complained, he took no notice. At last Edward determined to send his wife Isabella to the French court, hoping that she would be able to persuade Charles to be at peace with him; but Isabella, far from trying to make peace between her husband and her brother, did all she could to persuade Charles to give her an army with which to go back and attack England.

When Edward sent for his wife to come back, she answered that she did not feel safe in England, and would rather stay in France. Charles gave her soldiers and money, and she found in Flanders a brave soldier, one of the sons of the Count, who promised to march at the head of her little army. When everything was ready she went back to England and began a war with her husband. All the people of England took her side. Edward tried to escape out of the country, but was always driven back by bad weather. He was at last taken prisoner by Isabella's

friends, kept in prison for some months, and then most cruelly put to death. Isabella made her young son king under the name of Edward III., who became so well known both in England and France. Edward II. was a weak and bad man; his wife must also have been a very bad woman, and a good deal like her brothers, the three Kings of France.

Charles found both the lepers and the Jews in great distress when he came to the throne, owing to the cruel treatment of his brother Philip. He ordered that food should be given to the lepers who were shut up in their hospitals, or in deserted houses in villages. Though he still said they were never to come out themselves, their neighbours were allowed to collect food for them if they chose, and take it to their houses. Had it not been for this, all the lepers in France would probably have been starved. It was a custom for a new king, when he came to the throne, to grant favours to as many as possible of his subjects, by giving them something for which they wished, or that would please them. The only favour which Charles would grant to the lepers was, as we have seen, that some one should bring them enough food to prevent them from dying of hunger.

Most of the Jews were shut up in prison, and Philip V. had ordered them to pay him large sums of money. Charles gave orders that the Jews should be allowed to come out of their prison by day, in order to collect this money for him; and that when they had collected it all, they should be allowed to leave the country. These were the favours he showed the Jews.

During the reign of Charles IV., there was at one time

an idea of going on another Crusade. Charles received some money for the purpose from the Pope, and got together a little army of men ; he chose for their leader one of his noblemen, who had been put in prison a short time before for hanging one of his vassals and drowning another. There was no opportunity for finding out what kind of a general the prisoner would have made (which perhaps was as well for his soldiers), for the Crusade never came to pass.

There is so little to be read or found out about Charles IV., that we do not even know of what illness he died. It was long and it was painful, and that is all we are told. He died at the age of thirty-four. He had had two sons, both of whom were dead. He left behind him only a baby girl. Charles IV. was the last of the Capets, the line of kings of which Hugh Capet was the first ; there now began a new line of kings with a different name, though they also were descended from Hugh Capet, as cousins may have different names, although the same person is the grandfather of both.

1952
MIDLAND LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

French History.



Vagner & Debes' Geog. Atlas, Leipzig.

CHAPTER XXV.

PHILIP VI. (1328-1350).

As Charles IV. had left neither brother nor son, there was some difficulty in settling who should be king after him, and several of his relations laid claim to be the rightful king, among others Edward III., King of England, Charles's nephew. But the person who was chosen at last was the first cousin of the three last kings, Philip, called Philip of Valois, and known as Philip VI. He was a Frenchman, which made the people of France like him better than Edward or any of the other foreigners who wished to be their king. His reign, however, was not a happy time for his subjects, as we shall see.

Very soon after Philip had become king, he went with the Count of Flanders to help him against the people of Flanders, who had risen up against their Count, and refused to obey him any longer, so that he had come for help to the French king. The Flemings were shut up by the French army in one of their towns, which was built on the top of a hill, where it was very difficult for the French to reach them. They thought themselves quite safe, and wrote mocking rhymes about the King of France, refusing to come down and fight him, as he invited them to do.

Philip then began to burn up everything in the country

round about, and this sight made the Flemings so angry that they came down from the mount one night, when they hoped the French soldiers would not be keeping watch, and attacked Philip's camp. They almost succeeded in taking him prisoner, but he managed to escape, called his soldiers together, and not only drove back the Flemings, but almost destroyed their army, killing many thousands of them, so that they could resist him no longer. He made himself master of all the country, and gave it over to his friend the Count, telling him to keep it quiet and in good order for the future.

The French were much pleased at having won this victory, and Philip went back to Paris, and began to make his court as splendid as possible, and to live a gay life there with all his nobles round him. Several of his relations were kings of different small countries near at hand, and they came to live at the French court, as well as the chief noblemen from different parts of France. There were constant feasts, dances, hunts, tournaments, and amusements of all kinds. While the king and his nobles were enjoying themselves in this way, they did not think what might be happening to the common people who lived in the country, and who had to pay for these amusements; because when the king had spent the little money he had, the only way of getting more was to make his subjects pay more taxes, and spend some of their money upon himself. The common people, therefore, were especially poor and unhappy at this time.

Philip got himself into much trouble by quarrelling with powerful people in France. One of the great barons had had a dispute with his aunt, as to which of them

should rule over the county of Artois, of which the count had just died. It had already been settled twice over that Artois should belong to the aunt, but the young baron, Robert of Artois, hoped that as he was a great friend of Philip VI., this king would perhaps give the county to him. He was mistaken, however; his aunt was allowed to keep Artois, but she soon after died very suddenly, and it was said that Robert had poisoned her. It was also said that Robert had used dishonest ways of making it seem that he was the person who ought to have been count, by writing himself letters which he pretended had come from the old count. He was tried before the king's court, and banished for the rest of his life. Robert was so angry at this, that he tried to revenge himself by means of magic. He made a waxen image of the queen and her eldest son; then he had them baptized by a priest, and it was believed that when this had been done, he had only to stick a pin in the place where the heart should have been, and to put the images to melt away in the sun, or before the fire, to make the queen and the prince themselves waste away and die. The priest who was first asked to baptize one of these figures had refused to do it, and afterwards told the story to the king. Robert was in Flanders, out of Philip's reach, but the king seized his sister and her children, and threw them into prison, burning a poor woman who was supposed to have helped him, and took away Robert's land, which he kept for himself. Robert then crossed over to England, hoping to find some one at the English court who would help him to revenge himself on his enemy.

The English king at this time was Edward III., a brave, wise, and warlike young prince, who had reigned

only for about six years. He had wished to be King of France, and had always been angry that Philip should have been chosen instead of him. However, till now there had been no open disputes between them ; but with Robert of Artois doing all he could to make a quarrel between them, we cannot be surprised that the two kings did not remain friends. Edward was at war with the Scotch, to whom Philip sent help ; this made Edward angry, and he was also vexed that Philip kept some of the towns which belonged to the English in Guyenne, and had been taken from them by the last king. Philip had promised that his lawyers should find out to whom these towns really belonged, and that those which were Edward's should be given back to him ; but this promise was not kept. At last Edward heard that Philip was gathering together ships and men, and seemed to be making ready for an attack on England. He at once sent orders that all his ships should join him at Portsmouth, and that every one should be ready to fight if necessary.

The war which now began between France and England is called the Hundred Years' War ; and the name shows the length of time for which it lasted. There were great differences between England and France at the time when this war began. France was very much larger than England, the French king had many more soldiers, and more strong cities ; but on the other hand, Edward was richer than Philip, and was loved by his people, while Philip's subjects had no feeling of any kind about him. The kings of England had less power over their subjects than the kings of France ; they could not do whatever they chose without asking leave or advice from the Parlia-

ment, and so the King and Parliament were accustomed to settle together what should be done, and the people felt an interest in their king, and were pleased when he succeeded, and sorry when he failed. But in France the king did as he pleased, and told his plans to no one. Philip VI., in particular, kept everything about himself and his plans as secret as possible. Whether he was pleased or whether he was disappointed, he said nothing to his subjects. If he wished to punish any one, he did it suddenly, without saying what the person had done wrong, or showing his reasons for thinking he had done anything. The people naturally did not care much about such a king. They would not have minded changing him for another, and they were not at first very eager in resisting Edward III.

Edward had made himself liked by his people in many ways, of which, as I am not writing the history of England, I cannot speak now; he was, as I have said, richer than Philip, and his soldiers, especially the common people, fought far better than those of the French king.

Though it would seem from all this that Edward had the best chances of success, it was Philip who did most to bring about the war. He interfered with Edward in all kinds of ways, and showed such a strong dislike to him that Edward, who wished for war himself, saw it would be of no use to try to prevent it, and sailed with his army to Flanders. He had made friends with the Flemings, who had been very badly treated both by their own count and by his friend, Philip VI. They did not, however, help him as much as he had hoped. Edward thought that perhaps they would fight for him more readily if he took the name of King of France, and said it was to him the

crown ought to belong, and that he was coming to take it from Philip. This he did, and many of the Flemings joined him at once. In the first battle, which was fought by sea, the French were conquered. This was the battle of Sluys, and is remarkable because it was the first battle gained by the English at sea. After this there were two years of war, then two years of truce, then war again, and there was no more time of settled peace in the reign of Philip. Philip lost several battles and a few towns, but for some time Edward did him no serious harm.

While this war was going on there was a civil war in Brittany, at the north-west corner of France. Two men, Charles de Blois and John de Montfort, each thought they ought to be count there. The French took the side of one, the English of the other. John de Montfort was taken prisoner by the French king at the beginning of the war, and afterwards died ; his wife, Jeanne de Montfort, one of the bravest women of whom we ever read, put herself at the head of his army. She defended his cities for him ; she marched about the country and made speeches to all her husband's friends, calling upon them to fight in his cause, and showing them her little son, then quite a child, who, she promised, should fight for them when he grew up, if they would defend him now. She saw that there were provisions and all that was necessary in the towns that the French were likely to attack, and she herself went for the winter into a strong town by the seaside, so that she might be able to send for help to England if she were in danger.

In this town her enemy, Charles de Blois, besieged her. She and her army resisted him bravely for many weeks.

One day, when most of the enemy's soldiers were busy attacking the walls, the Countess of Montfort noticed that there were very few men left in the enemy's camp. She at once went out of the town at the head of three hundred men, and without being noticed by the enemy, reached the tents, set them on fire, burned several of them, and then turned to go back to the town; but she saw that the French soldiers were hurrying towards the camp, and that she could not make her way through them. She turned and rode away with her little body of men to a castle some miles off, where she stayed for five days. Her soldiers in the city were in great trouble during this time, fearing that she had been killed, and the French soldiers mocked them, saying—"Go, sirs; go look for your countess; she is certainly lost, and you will never see her again whole." However, on the sixth night, trumpets were heard outside the gate, and the brave countess was seen, having found her way secretly through the enemy's camp; and she was soon safe among her friends in the besieged city. She persuaded the nobles, who were growing impatient of the long siege, to hold the place until Edward came to their help.

The war went on for some years, and in one of the battles in Brittany, Robert of Artois, who had done so much to persuade Edward to go to war with Philip, was killed, to the great sorrow of his friends. Edward at last prepared three armies at once to march into France in different parts of the country. He himself led one division, which landed in the north of France. Philip marched against him with an army about twice the size of Edward's. Edward, who had almost reached the gates

of Paris, and had been burning the buildings and ruining the countries on his way, turned back before the French army. Philip followed till the English army came to a river, which there seemed to be no way of crossing. This happened in the afternoon of one day, and Philip resolved that the next morning he would attack the English, and, as he hoped, destroy their army entirely. But in the course of the night a peasant offered to show Edward a ford by which his army could pass the river while the tide was out. Edward is said to have been more pleased than if some one had given him twenty thousand crowns. He set off at once, and though he found a French army on the other side ready to guard the ford, he managed to make his way across with almost all his men by the time Philip came up to the river brink the next morning, and the tide rising prevented the French king from following him that day.

It was not till two days afterwards that Philip came up with the English army near a place called Cressy, where Edward had drawn up his men in order of battle, and where they were refreshing themselves after their march, resting while they waited for the enemy. Some of Philip's knights advised him to let his men also have time to rest a little before he attacked the English, and Philip gave the order for the troops to stop; but the French soldiers were so disobedient that they refused to stop. The great barons who were behind wished to push on in front, and those in front wished to stay nearest the enemy, which was the place of honour; so there was great confusion and disorder. The English rose up when they saw the French coming near, and prepared to

fight. Then Philip gave orders that some foreign archers who were in the army should begin the battle ; and they began to shoot their arrows with hideous cries, which they hoped would frighten the English, but which they soon found to be of no use. A heavy shower had fallen in the day, and their bowstrings were wet, so that their arrows could not fly far, while the English bows, which had been carefully kept dry, were all ready for use. Philip's archers fell in great numbers, and at last turned to flee. Then Philip gave to his men the order to turn against the archers and kill them, and the other French soldiers fell upon the archers and put them to death, which made the confusion in the army so terrible that there was no more chance of resisting the English. Philip's army was completely beaten ; and great numbers of his soldiers, friends, and great nobles, among others his brother, were killed. This was the battle of Cressy. There were three days' truce to bury the dead, after which Philip went back to Paris.

Edward went on to a town called Calais, and besieged it for many months. Philip had so little money and so few soldiers left that it was a long time before he could go to the help of the people of Calais, and when he came there he found he could not do anything for them, as the English king was too strong for him. The place was defended by a brave man, named John of Vienne, who had sworn to hold it to the last moment possible. The usual food was soon all gone, and the townspeople were obliged to eat cats, dogs, at last even rats, boiled leather, and anything they could find.

They sent away all the old people out of the town.

Some people say that Edward let them pass through his army, and gave them food, others, that he drove them into the trench outside the town and left them to die of hunger. At last the town was obliged to surrender. Edward was angry at the long resistance, and refused to promise to spare the town unless six of the chief men of the place came to him with ropes round their necks, and gave themselves up to be treated exactly as he chose. When the people of Calais heard this, a brave townsman, named Eustache de St. Pierre, came forward and said he would be one of the six. Five others were soon found to follow him, and they all went to Edward's camp in their shirts, with their feet bare, and cords round their necks. Edward gave orders that they should be put to death, but his wife, Philippa, threw herself at his feet, and wept and entreated till he promised that their lives should be spared. He turned all the French out of Calais, except such as agreed to be his subjects, and brought over Englishmen to live there. Philip could not prevent this, though he had done everything in his power to save the town, and afterwards did all he could to comfort the people who were driven out of Calais. After having taken Calais, Edward made a truce with Philip, and there was no more fighting for several years.

At this time a terrible plague, a very bad kind of illness, of which people often died quite suddenly, spread over all Europe. It is spoken of in English history as the Black Death, and in French as the Black Plague; and people died of it in great numbers. Sometimes whole villages were left empty, all the people who had lived in them being dead, and whole streets in towns had only one

or two inhabitants left. Many of the king's relations died, especially many princesses.

When the plague was over, the misfortunes of Philip had not come to an end. He had married a young wife, of whom he was very fond, but a few months later he himself fell ill, and soon after died, calling upon his eldest son to defend the country bravely against their enemies, the English. In this reign a province, called Dauphiné, had been added on to France ; its count, who was in great want of money, had sold it to Philip, and it was given to Philip's grandson, who came in time to be King of France. After his reign it always belonged to the eldest son of the king, who was called after the name of the province, the Dauphin ; as the eldest son of an English king or queen is called the Prince of Wales. Philip VI. is the last Philip among the kings of France.

CHAPTER XXVI.

JOHN (1340-1356).

THE next king was John, the son of Philip. He found the country and the people over which he was to reign in a very unhappy state. Many of the people had died of the plague, many others had lost all they had in the war with England ; the king himself had very little money, and no regular army ; and the war with Edward might begin again at any time.

John has been called the Good ; but good in those days did not mean quite what it does now ; "good," when used about John, meant brave, gay, courteous, fond of giving. John's great wish was to be like a knight of the old times, to have adventures, tournaments, and feasts ; and he cared much more about this than about ruling his people well. He was also at times very passionate and cruel.

One of the first things he did, after he became king, was to put to death one of his officers ; a count who had been a prisoner in England, and who had been sent to France, by King Edward, to try and collect money for his ransom. John seems to have had some idea that this man had made friends with the English king, and would perhaps give up to him some of his land, instead of the money he had come to find. The king had him suddenly

carried off to prison from his own house, and cut off his head two days later, without giving any reason to any one. This cruel deed made all his great lords very angry, and a strong castle, which had belonged to the dead count, was given up to Edward by the soldiers who held it, for they thought the English king would be the better master of the two.

I said that the count who was put to death in this way was an officer of the king's. He was what was called a constable—a word which, in English, usually means only a policeman—but in France, in those days, it meant a person who gave the king advice on all matters that had to do with war, and who was usually sent on any specially difficult attack that had to be made against the enemy.

The king could not do without a constable, so he chose a new one, who, as we shall see, was not more fortunate than the first.

There was a man living in France at this time, who was a great enemy of the king's. He was a cousin of John's, and some people thought he ought to have been King of France instead of John's father. His name was Charles, King of Navarre. He had once put to death, very cruelly, some of his subjects, who had made a plot against him, and from that time he was called Charles the Bad. He was not, on the whole, a worse man than John the Good; but he made great trouble in France, for he could speak well, and had a pleasant manner, which made every one like him, and he used to go about through the country, and make speeches to the people, trying to stir them up against the king. Had John been wise, he would have tried to make this young man his friend, and find some useful work for him to do for the country; but instead of

this he treated Charles like a child, and as if he were of no importance, thus making him more and more of an enemy.

Charles had a special dislike to the new constable, and one day, when they had had a quarrel together, told him that he would be revenged upon him, and that the constable should not escape though he were under the mantle of King John himself. A short time after this, when the constable was staying in a small village, a body of men stole in by night to the house where he was sleeping, while the King of Navarre waited outside the village with a company of knights. In the morning the party that had been in the village came out again, their leader crying: "It is done! it is done!" "What is done?" said Charles. "He is dead," was the answer. The constable had been killed in his bed.

King John was extremely angry at this murder; but he had so little power in the country that he was not able to punish the King of Navarre, and so made peace with him, promising to forgive him and be his friend for the future; but he did not keep this promise, and probably never meant to do so. Two years later, when the King of Navarre was one evening dining with the king's eldest son, with whom he had made great friends, John suddenly appeared in the room with a body of soldiers, and carried off Charles of Navarre and several of his friends who were with him to prison, where he cut off the heads of all but three of the party. Charles was one of those whose life was spared, but he was kept in prison for some months, and at first fully expected to be put to death as his friends had been. The king gave orders to his guards to torture him by telling him

constantly that he was to die in a few hours' time. They sometimes woke him at night to say this, and though he probably came at last to disbelieve them, yet it was extremely disagreeable for him never to feel sure that the unpleasant threat might not at last be carried out.

Meantime the truce between Edward and John had come to an end, and the war began again. Edward did not this time come to France himself, but he sent his son Edward, known as the Black Prince, at the head of his armies, to command instead of him. John had, as usual with the French kings, scarcely any money, so he called together the States-General, which I described in another chapter, to ask whether his people would give him some. The deputies said they would, but made him promise that he would not spend it except by the advice of some of their own number whom they chose out for the purpose. The people trusted their king so little that they feared he might spend the money on his own amusements, and that they might be none the better off for having given it to him. The Black Prince, as soon as he landed in France, began to march about the midland provinces, and do great harm there, burning and destroying what came in his way. The French king led an army to stop him, and after following him for some days, they came to a place near Poitiers, where the English army stopped, and made ready to defend themselves. As had happened at Cressy, the French king had many more men than the English leader, but the difference in the second battle was greater than in the first. At Cressy there were twice as many French as English; at Poitiers six times as many.

The English army was on a hill, and the side of the hill was covered with vineyards and hedges. Through the vineyards was a path which led up the hill, and the Black Prince had hidden archers near to the path, so that they might shoot at any one who tried to reach the top. He also made what is called an ambush, that is, he hid some soldiers at the bottom of a hill, in a place where the French king would not expect to find any one, who were to spring out suddenly, and take the enemy by surprise. Had John waited without attacking the English, and simply prevented them from coming down to find food, they would soon have had to yield to him ; but instead of this, he determined to attack them on the hill.

Two messengers were sent by the Pope to try and stop the battle ; but they tried in vain. The morning after their visit King John sent a body of his men to climb the steep path leading to the top of the hill. They were on horseback, and as soon as they were seen on the path, the English archers shot off their long arrows, which killed and wounded great numbers, both of men and horses. The horses, when they felt the arrows, turned and rushed down the hill in great confusion. The French soldiers below were so much frightened at seeing their friends fleeing before the English, that many of them turned and fled also. Among others the three eldest sons of the French king, of whom the eldest was about twenty, were persuaded by their officers to run away with the soldiers. They galloped off with eight hundred unwounded men, who had never been near the enemy, and did not stop till they were in perfect safety.

The army had been in three divisions ; the only one

which remained fighting was that where the king himself was commanding. The Black Prince rushed down the hill, followed by his small army, to attack John in front; the men in ambush came out of their hiding-place to attack him on the side, and a struggle began which lasted for some hours. King John fought bravely, like one of the old knights whom he so much admired. He held a huge battle-axe with which he attacked every enemy who came near him. His fourth son, Philip, quite a boy, stayed by his side and watched over him, calling out, "Father, look to the right: Father, look to the left," whenever he saw any one making a stroke or shot at the king. But John's courage could not prevent him from being beaten at last; his men fell round him in great numbers, and the English had gathered about him, crying out, "Yield, yield, or you are a dead man." John gave himself up to a knight who could speak French, and by him was taken, with his son Philip, to the tent of the Black Prince, where he was received with great kindness and politeness, and treated like a brave visitor rather than a prisoner. The Prince of Wales gave him the chief place at table, and stood behind his chair to fetch him anything that he might want.

The English soldiers went out on the field of battle, and gathered together all the money and valuable metal they could find, of which there was a great quantity. The next day King John was taken prisoner to Bordeaux.

The French were much distressed at the loss of their king, and very angry with all the knights and barons who had fled from the field instead of fighting for him to the last. The English had taken so many prisoners that they had not been able to guard them all, and so had sent them

back to their own homes, making them promise to return at a certain day to pay their ransoms. This was a promise which no one, at that time, ever thought of breaking. The French lords went to their estates, and called upon all their serfs and vassals to collect money for their ransoms. These poor people were obliged to give up all their money, besides having their goods taken from them, their corn, their cattle, or their fruits, which were sold by their lords to make up the sum that was wanted. Many of these poor men were even tortured to make them say where they had hidden their treasures. This made them more angry than ever at the way the nobles had behaved. That they should run away instead of defending the country, as was their duty, seemed bad enough, but that they should expect other people to pay for their cowardice was enough to make even their weak and helpless vassals begin to think of resistance.

It was now settled that, as King John seemed likely to be kept a prisoner for some time, his eldest son, Charles, Duke of Normandy, should be Regent, that is, rule in his place while he was away. This young man was about twenty years old, and not very wise, so it is not surprising that he had some difficulty in managing the country through the three years during which John was a prisoner. John was soon taken to England, where he was very well treated, allowed to live with the King of England as one of his friends, and altogether made as happy as a prisoner can ever be.

The young regent had two special enemies in France; one was the King of Navarre, whom John had thrown into prison, and whom Charles kept there for the first

few months of his reign ; and the other was a man about whom a great deal is to be read in all the histories of this time, called Etienne or Stephen Marcel. Marcel was a deputy of the States-General, who had been what we should call a sheriff, and was well known to all the towns-people of Paris. He had shown himself to be brave and wise, and to care for the people of Paris. When Paris seemed to be in danger from the enemy coming close to the gates of the city, he had made every arrangement for defending the town. He had had a wall built round it, and outside the wall a trench or large ditch ; on the wall were little towers in which soldiers could be placed to attack any one who tried to make his way through. Marcel had also persuaded the people of Paris to buy arms, and learn to use them, and he had prepared chains to stretch across the streets in case any horse-soldiers should come in. After all, Paris was never attacked, but the Parisians were grateful to Marcel for having made them feel safe by making all these arrangements for their defence.

The States-General met at once after the Duke of Normandy had taken the chief power in the State, and several times afterwards. They gave the regent much good advice, which he was not particularly pleased to receive from them. Marcel soon saw that the young prince would not listen to what he wished, and that if he made promises to set straight all that was going wrong in the kingdom, as far as it was in his power to do so, he made them without meaning to keep them.

The common people of France were at this time in a bad state ; they had lost a great deal of what belonged to them, they had been much ill-treated, and were poor,

miserable, and discontented. This was only natural after so much money had been spent by John and his father Philip upon their amusements and their wars with the English, besides all the losses of the French after the battles of Cressy and Poitiers, and during the many years through which their enemies stayed in the land, burning and laying waste the country. Etienne Marcel knew of this state of things, and though he had more power than any other man in the kingdom, he could no more set it right than the young prince; but besides all these troubles, the Duke of Normandy was always doing things that the people disliked, and which were bad for the country; but yet he could not be persuaded to leave them off.

There were many disputes between him and Marcel. Once Marcel marched at the head of a body of men to the palace where the regent lived, to call upon him to do something to defend the country against the English. The regent answered in a very unfriendly way, and Marcel made a sign to some of his friends who had followed him into the room, and who at once fell upon two of the regent's chief officers standing on each side of him, and murdered them before their master's eyes. At this the regent was so much frightened, that he promised to do anything Marcel wished, and put on a cap of red, white, and blue, the colours always worn by Marcel's friends, and which are now the colours of the French Republic.

But Marcel gained no good end by this wicked and cruel act.

The prince kept his promises only for a short time, and then he went out of Paris, and seemed to be calling together his friends, and making ready to attack the town.

Marcel had tried to make friends with the King of Navarre, but he was not much more to be trusted than the regent. He also left Paris, and seemed to be making friends with the prince. Marcel invited the King of Navarre to come back to the town and make himself king there, and was going secretly one night to open the gate of the city by which Charles was to come in, when some of the regent's friends saw him, found out who he was, fell upon him, and killed him. Thus Marcel died, and the young prince came into the city the next day, and found no one left to resist him in any way.

Just before this the poor peasants, who had had to suffer so much in finding money to pay their lords' ransoms, had resolved to resist the ill-treatment, which was too much for them to bear. They rose up in a body, and marched through the country, burning houses, carrying off cattle, emptying barns and storehouses, and torturing their masters the nobles as they had been tortured themselves. These poor people were wicked because they were ignorant, and had been taught nothing good; and unkind and cruel, because no one had ever been kind to them. The peasants from different parts of France joined each other, and they were too strong to be stopped at once. But when the nobles made up an army and marched against them, the peasants could not long resist; many of them were killed in battles, and the nobles and gentlemen went in small parties through the country, behaving in much the same way as the peasants had done—burning houses, killing the people, and destroying all that came in their way.

At this time also bands of robbers went through the country, taking whatever they could find, and finding

plenty of goods, either belonging to no one or belonging to people so weak as not to be able to defend them.

After King John had been for three years a prisoner in England there came news that he and King Edward had made peace together, and that John was soon to be set free and come back to his own country. The French were much pleased at this, as they thought things could not be worse, and might grow better if their own king were over them once more; but when they heard how much of France John had agreed to give up to Edward, they said it was a shameful peace, that they would not agree to it, and that John must stay a prisoner. Edward then came to France and went on with the war, making the people more wretched than ever, till at last every one agreed to a peace, by which it was settled that Edward should give up calling himself King of France, and should set John free; and that in return a large ransom should be paid, and the greater part of the west side of France should be given up to him. John was allowed to return to France, and sent two of his younger sons with some of the other great lords to be prisoners instead of him till his ransom should have been paid.

In this year the plague which had before visited France appeared again, and great numbers of the people died, especially those who had been made weak by having little and unwholesome food to eat. The only important thing that happened after John came back to France again was that the Count of Burgundy died, and John was able to add this large province to his kingdom, though it ought by rights to have belonged to the King of Navarre. Soon after this one of John's sons escaped from the court of

Edward, where John had promised he should stay till the ransom had been paid. When John heard of this he resolved to go back himself to Edward's court and be his prisoner again. The French writers say that John went back because he found his own country much less pleasant than England, and thought it harder work to be expected to rule his people than to be the visitor of King Edward, and have hunts and tournaments and all sorts of gaiety go on in his honour ; and this is very likely true. Soon after he went back to England he was taken ill and died there, and his son, who had been regent, became king in his place.

CHAPTER XXVII.

CHARLES V. (1364-1380).

THE next king was Charles V., the eldest son of John. As this young man had been managing the business of governing the country for eight years already, his subjects thought they knew pretty well what sort of a king he would make, and they were not much pleased at the idea of having him to rule over them. He had run away from the battle of Poitiers when a boy, and since then he had never been seen with armour on, being weak and delicate, unfit for war, and for most of the amusements of the time.

He had not been able to do anything for his country all through the troubles of the time when John was a prisoner, and it was supposed that he was too foolish to govern ; but his subjects soon changed their minds about him when he became king, and Charles V. is now known as Charles le Sage, or the Wise.

His people never loved him, for they never saw him, and knew scarcely anything about him ; he used to live shut up in his own palace, seeing only his ministers and his generals, and making plans with them as to how the country was to be governed. One very important matter when France had such fierce enemies ready to attack her, especially when the king was not able to go

war himself, was to find a good general to lead the armies. The king was happy enough to find such a man, Bertrand Du Guesclin, a knight of Brittany, who fought his battles for him all through his reign, often with great success. Du Guesclin, when a child, had been fierce and wilful, and cared for nothing but fighting; his mother had often been in despair as to what would become of him, but as soon as he was a man, he grew famous for his strength and courage in tournaments, till at last he became a soldier in earnest, and fought all through many of the wars in the reign of King John.

One unusual thing about him was that he was kind to the poor, and defended them whenever it was possible. Wars such as those in which he had to fight could not go on without bringing much ill-treatment and distress to the poor of the country round about, but the difference between Du Guesclin and most other soldiers of his time was that he was sorry to see this distress, and did what he could to relieve it, while most men did not think about it at all, and went on their own way without caring in the least what happened to the peasants.

Charles V. found that one of the great troubles of France when he began to reign was what was called the Free Lance companies. They were more like bands of robbers than soldiers; they had no payment for fighting but what they could get for themselves, so that they were obliged to take food and whatever they wanted from the people of the country. The King of Navarre had called together a great number of these companies, and was pleased to see them lay waste the kingdom that belonged to his enemy. Du Guesclin defeated them in a

great battle, which kept them quiet for a time. This happened just before the king was crowned, so that it was looked upon by his subjects as a sign of a happy and successful reign.

But new troubles soon arose ; the war in Brittany was still going on, and Du Guesclin led an army to help Charles de Blois, the prince on whose side the kings of France had always been. This time the French leader was defeated ; he was taken prisoner, and his men were put to flight. After this, John de Montfort, the friend of the English, was made Duke of Brittany, and there was peace in that country and in other parts of France for a short time.

But though the war stopped, the free companies still roamed about the land, burning and stealing wherever they went, and building themselves strong places to live in, so that they were in no danger of being driven away by the angry peasants. The king's soldiers, far from trying to defend the people, helped the robbers, and took a share of the spoil for themselves. Charles at last made up his mind that the free companies must in some way or other be made to leave France, and it was arranged that Du Guesclin should take them to fight in Spain, where a war was going on.

Unfortunately Du Guesclin and the companies fought too well. They conquered their enemies, and came back to France again, to the despair of the people. It was supposed that the English employed the companies to do harm to France, and this was one of the reasons for the quarrel which soon arose between France and England.

No one can have supposed that the French would ever

be satisfied to live at peace while the English were masters of the greater part of one side of the country. When one country conquers another, and takes from it a large quantity of land, there is almost sure to be another war before long, and so it happened now. The people living in the part of France which had been given up to the English were displeased at the way in which they were governed by the Black Prince, who was their ruler. One difficulty, as usual, was that he wished them to pay more taxes than they liked. It is also said that the French disliked their English rulers chiefly on account of the rough, unfriendly manners of the English, who never seemed to think the French had anything to do with them, or ought to be treated like subjects of the same king, but behaved as if they were conquered enemies, almost servants. The people of one of these provinces sent to King Charles, saying that he had not the power to give away any of his subjects to another king, and asking him to let them come back and be his subjects once again. Charles was pleased at this, for he had long been making up his mind in secret to go to war with England, and now he seemed to have a good excuse.

Charles then sent a letter to the Black Prince, telling him of the complaints made against him by his French subjects, and calling upon him to come to Paris to be judged there by the king's court. This was treating the prince as if he were still a vassal of Charles's, and made him very angry. When the letter was brought to him, he thought for a little while, and then said, shaking his head — "We will certainly go to Paris, as the King of France sends for us, but we will go helmet on head, with sixty

thousand men behind us." A few months later King Charles declared war.

Charles had resolved that this war should be carried on in a different way from those which had gone before. He saw that the nobles of France had become so unruly and rash, and that the common people were so ill-prepared for fighting, that he had no chance in a great battle against the English. He knew that if the French were defeated again, as they had been at Cressy and Poitiers, it would be a terrible misfortune for the country, and make more of the distress and poverty which he was trying to relieve. He therefore gave orders to his generals that no battle should ever be fought between his men and those of the King of England. If the English marched through the country, as they often did, they found no one to resist them; the villagers fled to the strong towns, taking with them all the food they could carry off, and the English marched from one province to another, laying waste the country, but wearing themselves out by degrees, and obliged to come back at last by loss of men and want of food. The peasants usually followed the army at a little distance, and attacked it whenever they had an opportunity, doing as much harm as they could.

Du Guesclin was a great help to the king, both in making these plans and in carrying them out for him. They answered so well that after the war had lasted for four years, the English were driven entirely out of the province of Poitou, and after this more and more of the country was taken from them. The Black Prince died in England while the war was still going on. His nature had seemed to change as he grew older, and he who had

shown so much kindness and politeness to King John of France after the battle of Poitiers, became cruel to his enemies and severe to his subjects before the end of his life. His last victory was at Limoges, a French town, which he had taken after a siege of a month, where he treated the people with horrible cruelty, urging on the soldiers to kill them all. He was very ill at the time, and was carried through the streets in his litter, while men, women, and children threw themselves on their knees before him, crying for mercy, but he listened to none of them, and more than three thousand people are said to have been put to death on this day. The city was burned, plundered, and destroyed.

Charles V., who carried on this great war so well, and freed such a large part of his kingdom from the power of the English, had time to think about peaceful matters as well as about armies and fortresses. He read books of all kinds, and employed some of the wise men about him to write books upon questions which interested him, and to translate old Greek and Latin books, so that they might become well known. He was also fond of building, and during the one year of truce which came in the middle of the long war with England, he had many bridges, churches, and fine houses begun in Paris. He also began the Bastille, which was at first a fortress to defend Paris against enemies, and afterwards was used only as a prison.

Charles was very delicate ; he had many illnesses, and did not live long. His death was quite sudden. The war between the French and English was going on ; a body of English had been surrounded by different French armies in a place between two rivers, from which they could not

make their way out. One morning, when the English came out of their camp, there was no enemy to be seen. The French generals had been called to Paris, where Charles V. was dying. His two younger brothers were with him, and the king made them promise to protect his eldest son, the Dauphin, a boy of twelve years old. Another brother, the Duke of Anjou, had also come to court, though without being invited, as he and Charles were not friends. No sooner was the king dead, than this brother seized all the jewels which had belonged to him, and kept them for his own, though they should by rights have passed on to the new king, the son of Charles V.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

CHARLES VI. (1380-1422).

WHEN Charles V. died, his eldest son Charles, who was to be king after him, was only twelve years old. He was a tall, handsome boy, caring more for amusement than for anything else, which, while he was so young, was right and natural, but which distressed his subjects and ministers when, as years went by, they found that he grew no steadier, and took scarcely any interest in the affairs of the kingdom.

Charles V. had arranged that the three uncles of his young son should govern the country, and take charge of the young prince till he was old enough to rule for himself. These uncles, who were bad violent men, fond of power, and not caring the least about what might happen to their subjects, divided the chief provinces of the country amongst them, and ruled them for the king.

Charles V., besides leaving a great deal of money for his son, had collected some treasure, which he had hidden in the walls of one of his castles, where he hoped that no one would think of looking for it. It was not made into money, but was in bars of gold and silver, and very precious. The secret of this treasure he told only to his Treasurer, who was to give it in due time to his son. One

of the uncles, the Duke of Anjou, who had already stolen the crown jewels, heard of this secret. He sent for the Treasurer, asked where the money was hidden, and when the Treasurer refused to say, threatened to put him to death. At last he even sent for the executioner, and told him to cut off the head of the Treasurer. The poor Treasurer then gave way, and told the Duke of Anjou where the gold and silver was to be found. The duke at once went to the place, dug up the treasure, and carried it off to make use of it in a war of his own which he was carrying on in Italy. Soon after this the young king was crowned, and was then taken to Paris, where he was well received by the people. But it was not long before war began between the people of Paris and Charles VI.

At this time, in all the greater countries of Europe there were signs that the common people were not only discontented and unhappy, but ready to rise up against those who were richer than they, and try in some way or other to take for themselves the good things, the comfort, or the riches, or the power, which they saw other people enjoying. The citizens of Paris had many taxes to pay, and one of the first things they did was to make Charles and his uncles promise that a great many of the taxes should be taken off. In Rouen too the people had risen up against the Duke of Anjou, who was their governor, because he tried to make them pay some new taxes ; they found a draper, who they declared should be their king, and whom they took through the town on a chariot, doing honour to him. They also tried to take the castle of Rouen. The king and his uncles came with a troop of soldiers to quiet the disturbance, and thus the first

time that Charles VI. bore arms, it was against his own subjects.

After this the taxes which had been taken off from the people of Paris were all put on again. For some time no one could be found bold enough to tell the people that the king meant to do this; for you must remember that at this time there was no such thing as a newspaper or printed notice, by which a new tax might be announced, and if the king wished to make known anything to the people of Paris, some one had to cry it out in the streets, so that every one might hear. At last a town-crier was found who was persuaded to cry out the news about the taxes. He rode into the market-place, and cried out that the king had lost some plate; a crowd of people came round him to hear what he was saying, and when he saw that most of them were listening to him, he turned his horse and galloped away as fast as possible, calling out that the taxes would be collected the next day. There was a riot and great disturbance after this, and the end of it was that the people of Paris refused to pay the taxes, but promised to give the king a great sum of money instead.

The people of Flanders, the country which is now Holland and Belgium, also rose up against their ruler, the Count of Flanders, a bad and cruel man. Charles VI. fought his first battle, and won his first victory, helping the count against his subjects.

When Charles VI. was fourteen, he had the power of doing whatever he liked in the kingdom. When any difficult question had to be settled, he was obliged to leave it to his uncles to decide, for he knew nothing about any important matter; but if the question was a plain one, that

he could understand, he decided for himself, without taking advice of any one, and often ordered what the wisest of his ministers had decided, after much thought, that it would be best not to do. Yet he was always obeyed in whatever he ordered, for the King of France had absolute power, that is, there was no one to prevent him from doing exactly what he liked ; no body of men like our Parliament, which can prevent the king from having his own way, when the members of Parliament think what he wishes to be bad for the country. When Charles was in Flanders, he once gave orders that a particular town should be entirely burned down, and the people put to death, or sold as slaves, and it was done at once. The town was set on fire in a hundred different places, and the French army watched it burn till it was a heap of ruins.

Charles was fond of war, and he and his uncles had a great wish to conquer England ; they made ready more than nine hundred ships to carry their soldiers across the British Channel, dividing England from France. The nobles at this time were fond of making themselves as gay and as splendid as possible. Though the poor people of the country were in great distress, the nobles were rich, and spent a great deal of money on their clothes and finery of different sorts. They did the same with their ships ; they painted them all kinds of bright colours, carpeted them with rich stuffs, ornamented the masts with leaves of gold and silver, and hung up silk flags with their coats-of-arms beautifully worked. It was not very wise at the beginning of a war to spend their money upon what could do them no possible good, and would so soon be spoiled or destroyed. They also prepared a great quantity

of food to take with them, in case the English should be too strong to be robbed of their stores ; and what was most curious of all, a wooden town, all in different pieces, which was to be put up when the army landed. It must have been something like the wooden farmyards with which children play, for it had houses to be put up in rows, and a wall to go round it and protect it. It was so large that it took seventy-two ships to carry all the parts of it. After all this, the ships never started ; one of the king's uncles did not really wish to set out, and was so long in joining the rest of the army, that the right time of year had gone by, and the whole thing was given up.

The next year the king tried again to collect an army and fleet, and attack England ; but this time he was prevented from starting by his constable being taken prisoner by an enemy, and shut up for some time in a castle. When at last he was let out, the constable was so busy in asking every one to help him to punish his enemy, that he had no time to think of the attack against England ; and as the king could not go without him, the plan was given up again.

A year after this, Charles was persuaded by some of the great men in the State, who hated his uncles, that he was now quite old enough to rule for himself. He had been king for eight years, and was now twenty years old. The common people and the nobles all hated his uncles, and thought that if Charles ruled alone the government might possibly be better, and could not be worse than it now was. These uncles had spent all the king's money, led out his soldiers, and brought them back again without making the least use of them, and without paying their

wages, and treated the people of their own special provinces with the greatest cruelty. Charles VI. was much pleased at the idea of ruling for himself ; he held a great council, at which he told his uncles, that being now grown up, he no longer wanted their help in ruling the country ; he thanked them for all they had done for him, and sent them away loaded with rich presents.

After this Charles gave himself up to what, next to war, he liked best in the world, feasting and making merry. The young princess, whom he had lately married, was crowned queen, and there were processions, feasts, and shows of different kinds ; fountains of milk and wine ran at the corners of the streets, and all the houses were made gay with rich silk and tapestry hanging from the windows. As the queen passed by the great church of *Nôtre Dame*, a man dressed like an angel slid down a cord from the top of one of the high towers, put a beautiful crown on her head, and was drawn up again. Charles VI. disguised himself as a common person, and stood in the street to see the show. He was so anxious to get a good view, that he was always pressing forwards to the front, and the sergeants who were keeping order in the street, several times gave him blows with their rods to make him keep in his place, of course without having the least idea that it was the king whom they were treating thus. These little adventures amused Charles very much, and this was the kind of way in which he liked to spend his time. This feast, and others which followed it, cost the king immense sums of money ; but his ministers could not persuade him to spend less, or to think of the misery of his poorer subjects, whose taxes had to pay for his amuse-

ment. After the king had enjoyed his power for three years more, a terrible misfortune happened to him, which made the rest of his reign a miserable time for himself and for France.

The constable of France was a great friend of the king's and the chief soldier of France. He had one evening been dining at a feast given by Charles, and was on his way home, when he was attacked in a small street by one of his enemies, knocked off his horse, and supposed to be killed. The king, hearing of what had happened, went out to look for him; and finding the constable alive, promised him that his enemy should be fitly punished. It was not long before he set out with a body of soldiers to march against the enemies of his constable. It was a very hot day, and the king had been for some time ill and feverish. As he rode through the forest a man with his head bare rushed through the trees, seized the bridle of the king's horse, and said to him, "King! go back; you are betrayed." This man seemed to be mad; and either must have been so or must have been sent by the people against whom Charles was marching, in the hope that he would be persuaded to turn back. The king said nothing, but rode on with two pages close behind him, one carrying a spear and the other a shield. One of these boys fell asleep, and the spear falling from his hand, hit against the shield which his companion carried, and made a ringing noise.

The king turned round suddenly, calling out the word which he had just heard—"Betrayed!"—drew his sword, and rode against his own followers, hitting and wounding them. At first they supposed that one of them had displeased him in some way; but when they saw him ride

against his own brother, they understood that he must be mad, and with some difficulty they got behind him, held his arms to his sides, and lifted him off his horse. He had become quite senseless, and knew no one. They carried him home, and at first thought that he was dead ; he lived for thirty years after this, but he never again became sensible enough to be able to govern for himself. He was mad for the rest of his life, sometimes more mad, sometimes less. There were particular times of year when his senses partly came back to him, so that he could understand something of what was going on ; and at such times he often tried to make good and wise laws ; but he was quite in the power of the people who happened to be about him, and always did what they wished, till his madness came back and he could again understand nothing. The rest of the poor king's reign, with which he himself has very little to do, must be told in another chapter.

CHAPTER XXIX.

CHARLES VI.—(*continued*).

1392-1422.

THE first time that the king began to get better it was hoped that he would soon be completely cured. He was, in fact, for some months quite as usual; and there were feasts and rejoicings in honour of his being well again, in all of which he took part. One evening, at a ball, he and five of his young friends dressed themselves up as wild men, and came in to dance before the guests. They had on tunics daubed over with pitch, with tow fastened on to it to make them look hairy. The king's young brother was foolish enough to hold up a torch close to the face of one of these men, in order to find out who he was; the tow and pitch caught fire, and blazed up all over his body, till the poor man looked like a column of flame. Unfortunately all these young men, except the king, were chained together; the fire spread from one to another, and burned so fiercely that it was impossible to put it out. One of the five broke his chain, escaped from the others, threw himself into a tub of water which was standing outside the ball-room, and thus saved his life; but the other four all died, two at once and two within two days after.

Charles himself was safe ; but this dreadful sight seems to have cured him for the time of his great love for shows and feasts ; and he was beginning to attend seriously to important matters of government when his madness came back and put a stop to all his efforts.

For many years the chief thing that happened in France was the great dispute as to who should have the power which the poor king could not hold. The chief persons in the kingdom, next to the king, were his uncles and his brother. One of his uncles had died, and of the other three there was one more ambitious—that is, fond of power—more brave, and more clever than the others, named the Duke of Burgundy. He was called Philip le Hardi, or the Bold, and was the man who, when he was a boy, had ridden by his father, King John, all through the battle of Poitiers, and been taken prisoner with him to England afterwards. This was one of the people who wished for power in the State ; the other was the king's only brother, the Duke of Orleans: This young man is said to have had all the faults of the king, but was, unlike him, clever and fond of power. He and the Duke of Burgundy struggled for power for many years, and sometimes one sometimes the other got the better in the dispute. Scarcely anything else happened in France during this time ; and as the princes never could make up their minds to a regular battle, the people of the country went on planting their fields, and carrying on their usual business, without being much disturbed ; so that the country was not in so bad a state as might have been feared during the first years of the king's madness. The people improved in many ways ; new inventions were made, men wrote poetry and

other works, and thought about many important matters of which they had never before taken any notice. They loved the poor mad king, who, whenever he had any sense, showed a great wish to make good laws, and do something useful for his people, and they called him Charles le Bien-Aimé or the Well-beloved.

The Duke of Burgundy usually had on his side the northern parts of France, and the Duke of Orleans the southern parts. Sometimes one and sometimes the other made friends with the English, and tried to get help from them. When the Duke of Burgundy died, his son, who became duke after him, carried on the quarrel, and at last, by his orders, the Duke of Orleans was murdered in the street. It shows into what disorder the country had by this time fallen, that no one tried to punish the Duke of Burgundy for this wicked deed, except the wife of the murdered man, the Duchess of Orleans, and her three sons, who were still boys. They soon found that no help could be hoped for from the nobles, and that they must wait till they were of an age to avenge their father.

The king tried to persuade the young princes of Orleans to make peace with their father's murderer. A meeting was held two years after the death of the duke, at which the Duke of Burgundy confessed that it was he who had ordered the murder, and though he showed no signs of repenting of what he had done, asked both the king and the children of the Duke of Orleans to forgive him. The young princes wept, and for some time would not answer him; but they were at last persuaded to say that as the king ordered them to do so, they forgave him for their father's death. But their feelings were not at all

changed by what they had thus promised. Some years after this, the Duke of Burgundy was himself murdered by his enemies of the party of Orleans, who had gained over to their side the Dauphin, the eldest son of the king. The Duke of Burgundy was invited to come to a meeting with the Dauphin to talk over the affairs of the country. The meeting was to be at the middle of a bridge, where a little house was built for them with a door on each side, through which the prince and duke were to go in with a few servants each, and then fasten the doors behind them, so that no strangers could hear what they might say to one another. As soon as they were in this house, a dispute began; one of the Dauphin's friends cried out, "It is time!" and struck the Duke of Burgundy with an axe, killing him afterwards with a sword. All his friends except one were also killed.

Towards the end of the reign of Charles VI., a new war broke out with England. Richard II. of England had been driven from the throne by his cousin, Henry IV., and had died in prison, it was supposed by poison. Some of the French princes had taken the side of Henry, others had wished to go to war to save Richard while he was alive, and to revenge him when he was dead. But the war did not begin till after the death of Henry IV., in the reign of his son, Henry V. This prince was brave and warlike, and easily found an excuse for beginning a war with France. He went into the country with a large army, and finding no one to resist him, for the French had no ships, no money, and no one to lead their soldiers, he besieged and took the large town of Honfleur, the first which came in his way. The English afterwards

marched farther through the country, till they met a large French army, which had at last been gathered together, and which came to stop Henry's way. The armies met each other near a village named Agincourt, and passed a night face to face.

The English having rolled up their flags and carefully stored away their armour, that it might not be hurt by the damp, sent to fetch straw from the villages near at hand, and lay down on it to pass the night comfortably. They had also made ready their bows, and prepared the sharp stones that they usually put in front of their army to stop the horses of the enemy ; they confessed their sins to the priests who were with them in the army, and slept with good consciences. Above all, they were perfectly quiet, as the king had ordered. The French spent their time chiefly in being knighted ; they had large fires, by whose light the English could see all that happened in their camp, and they were calling to each other and running backwards and forwards all night. Some of the knights sat on horse-back all night through for fear of spoiling their armour in the mud, and in the morning were almost dead of cold and fatigue.

The French army was placed in a small narrow plain with a wood on each side, where its great size was of but little use ; between it and the English army was ploughed land soft from the rain. The English began the attack by rushing against the enemy, giving loud cries. The French could not move for some time, so deeply had they, on their heavy horses, sunk into the soft earth. At last they came forward, but their horses could not make their way through the mud. Many fell with their riders underneath them.

Others, which came far enough to be hit by the English arrows, were frightened, turned round, and galloped back upon the rest of the French army, throwing them into great confusion.

The battle went on as it had begun, the heavy-armed Frenchmen, shut up in a narrow space, and moving over ground into which their horses sank at every step, had no chance against the light, active, English foot-soldiers, who rushed upon them with whatever weapons they had ; often only hatchets and axes, for the English army was not well armed, but made up of men who had come together hastily. They killed many of the French soldiers who were lying on the ground, quite unable to do anything to save themselves. At one time Henry V. was told that a body of Frenchmen were attacking his camp from behind. He gave orders to his soldiers to kill the prisoners, thinking that if his men were to defend themselves against another attack, the prisoners would be in their way, and hinder them from fighting their best. Thousands of prisoners were then put to death, who had given themselves up on the promise that their lives should be spared.

More Frenchmen were killed at this battle than even at Cressy or Poitiers. It is known as the battle of Agincourt, and caused great joy in England. It is mentioned in Lord Macaulay's poem on the "Defeat of the Spanish Armada," where, speaking of the lion on the English flag, he says—

"So glared he when at Agincourt in wrath he turned to bay ;
And crushed and torn beneath his claws the princely hunters
lay."

Still, though "crushed and torn," the French could not give up their quarrels among themselves, and soon after Henry V. took the town of Rouen, after a siege of seven months, without any one trying to prevent him.

The people of Rouen had suffered terribly before they would agree to yield and give up their town. They soon came to an end of their proper food, and then ate horses, dogs, cats, and at last everything that could be swallowed. King Henry's soldiers rode through the country outside the walls, carrying off all the food they could find, for fear it should, in any way, be sent into Rouen. Some of these soldiers were wild Irishmen, of whom the French were specially afraid, because of their strange looks and their wildness. They went about half naked, having very few clothes, and as they had no horses, they usually rode on the cows of the villagers. One of their plans was to carry off babies in their cradles, which they rested upon the necks of the cows. They made the parents pay them large sums either in money or food, before they brought back the children; and even then there must have been some danger of the babies being taken to the wrong mothers.

The poor people in Rouen were at last obliged to send out of the city all the old men, the women, and the children, keeping in the town only the fighting men. The English would not allow these poor creatures to pass their lines; they had to live in the trench outside the walls of Rouen. They had nothing to eat but what they could find there, chiefly grass. Yet some of them passed the winter in this way. Some of the women had little babies born there. When this happened, the people inside the town let down

a basket, in which they drew the baby up into the town, and had it christened ; they then let it down to its mother again. At last the town was obliged to yield ; Henry became master of Rouen, and soon after of all Normandy.

The French people who had seen wars first among their own princes, and then against the English all through the reign of Charles VI., wished for peace at almost any price, and at last an agreement was made by which it was settled that Henry should marry a daughter of Charles VI., and that when Charles died, Henry should succeed him as king both of England and France, after which the two countries should always be governed by the same king, though each should keep its own laws and customs, and neither should be subject to the other. The son of Charles VI. would not agree to this treaty, and still kept up the war with a small army in the north of France ; but his mother and the nobles kept their word to Henry, and he married the French Princess, and ruled in Paris, as regent for Charles VI. Two years after he died in France, leaving a little son ten months old, to be king both of France and of England. A few weeks afterwards died Charles VI., whose reign had brought such misfortunes upon himself and his country.

CHAPTER XXX.

CHARLES VII. (1422-1461).

WHEN Charles VI. died, he left a son named like himself Charles. Henry V., who died, as I said, at just the same time, had left a son called Henry. By the agreement which had been made a few years before by the English and French it had been settled that when Charles died the son of Henry of England should be king. But the dauphin, the son of Charles, had never agreed to this, and had always gone on making war upon the English. He now began to call himself Charles VII., and the people of the south part of France gathered round him and said they would have him for their king sooner than the son of an Englishman, though Henry V.'s little baby was half French, for his mother had been a French princess. The part of France that had been conquered by the English, in which Henry VI. was to be king, was governed for him by his uncle, the Duke of Bedford, a wise and brave soldier, who ruled well, and brought the country into better order than had been known there for many years.

But the state of France, on the whole, was miserable at this time. In some parts of the country, everything was destroyed, woods were growing where there had been villages, the roads had been all broken up, or become so

rough from want of attention that no one could travel on them ; wolves came into the towns to try and find some child or weak person of whom to make a meal. Still the war went on, though the English would have done better at this time to make a peace with the French, taking some part of the country for their own, and then leaving the rest and going back to England ; for now that Henry was dead they had very little chance of conquering the whole of France, and affairs in England were going very badly, so that the Duke of Bedford had to go backwards and forwards between England and France, and could not attend fully to the affairs of either.

The fighting went on for about five years ; sometimes one side had the better, sometimes the other. The two chief battles fought were won by the English ; but though many men were killed in them, they were not of great importance. At last the English resolved to besiege the most important town in France next to Paris—Orleans, on the river Loire, almost in a straight line to the south of Paris. The English had gathered together ten thousand men, and had begun by taking all the small places near Orleans, so that they might send no help to the town. Then the English army drew close round the town, built forts, and prevented any food from going in. The people of Orleans did all they could to defend themselves, and for some time they managed to prevent the English from doing their city much harm, but they soon began to feel the want of food, and they sent to ask for help from the chief men of France. But no help came to them either from the great lords, who were all busy about business of their own, or from the king, Charles VII., who was a weak, idle man,

and did not seem to care, so long as he himself was safe and comfortable, whether or not the second city of his country fell into the hands of his enemy.

Help did come to Orleans at last, but in a way in which no one could have expected it. In a little village in Lorraine, on the east side of France, there lived a peasant girl named Jeanne D'Arc. She was brought up like other children by her parents, taking the cows out to the meadows when she was quite young, and when she grew older, sitting at home and sewing with her mother, while her brothers and sisters worked in the fields. She could neither read nor write, but her mother taught her all that she herself knew. Jeanne was fond of being alone, and used often to go to an old beech tree near the village, where it was supposed that fairies danced by night. Here Jeanne would sit by herself when she wanted to think quietly. As she grew older, she began to hear a great deal of the war between England and France, which brought so much distress and trouble to the people of France. She knew how many hundreds of Frenchmen had lost their houses, their lands, their friends, all that they cared about, already, and how the war was not yet nearly over, but seemed likely to go on, no one could tell how much longer. The king, Charles, had some good generals who would have fought bravely for him, but he would not listen to them, and spent all his time in amusing himself.

Jeanne thought of all this till she longed to do something to help her countrymen. She began to fancy that she saw visions, that is, that she thought she saw people and heard voices which no one else could see or hear. It

seemed at times, always when she was alone, that three angels appeared to her in a bright light, saying, "Jeanne, go to the help of the King of France, and you will win back his kingdom for him." The voices also told her to go to the captain of the town near, and ask him to send her to the king.

We often read in history of people who have thought, as Jeanne did, that special messages are sent to them from God by signs or voices which no one else can hear or understand. Sometimes such people are out of their minds, sometimes they are ill, but sometimes, like Jeanne D'Arc, they are not only in their right senses, but are particularly wise and sensible people, whose advice is of great value to everybody. They seem to see strange unusual sights because their minds are full of strange unusual thoughts; they think only of the one thing that interests them till they become too much excited to see and hear the common things going on round them, and then imagine they see something which is not seen by any one else, and so cannot be said to be really there.

Jeanne talked about her visions to her relations, and told her parents that she wished to go to court to give the king a message from heaven and to help him fight his enemies. They refused for some time to let her go, but she at last found an uncle who took her to the captain of the town near at hand, and asked him to send her to the king. The captain would not hear of it for some time; but at last some of the chief people of the place saw her, and having talked with her, promised to go with her to the court.

Charles heard of her, and sent to say he would receive

her; the people of the town bought her a horse; the captain gave her a sword; and so she set off with a few soldiers to guard her. When she was presented at the court, the king had hidden himself among his courtiers, and put one of them richly dressed on the throne, to see whether Jeanne would know which was the real king. She went straight up to Charles, and though at first he said, to try her, that he was not the king, she declared that he was, and went on to tell him that she was sent by God to save his country from the English. At last he was persuaded to listen to her, and even to believe what she said.

The first thing she wished to do was to go to the help of Orleans. The king put her at the head of a body of soldiers, and sent them on their way. They marched towards Orleans, all the people as they passed through the country coming out to look at Jeanne in her shining armour on her fine horse. From this time she always dressed herself like a man, which was more convenient for the soldier's life she had to lead.

Jeanne at this time was only seventeen, but she had so much good sense and power of understanding, that the captains were glad to have her help and advice, and were all her friends by the time they came to Orleans, where they made their way into the town, and were welcomed with delight by the people. They all looked upon Jeanne as a saint; and the English, who had heard so much of her, were frightened, and thought she would be able to bewitch them, or do them harm in some strange way.

The first time that they met her in battle they did not dare to resist, but gave way before her. She was afraid of no one; her friends were always made braver themselves

by seeing her courage in battle, for she went straight on as if nothing could hurt her; and both her friends and enemies believed more and more that she was a special messenger sent from God to the help of France.

Orleans was saved by her help. The siege had already lasted for some time, and the English were tired with the efforts they had made. They saw that the people of Orleans were less likely to yield now than before; the English general was killed one day by a shot from the walls of the town, and at last, a week after Jeanne had come into the city, the English army left all the forts and towers that they had built round Orleans, and marched away, leaving the town free.

Jeanne had one more great wish. The king had never yet been solemnly crowned. It was the custom for the kings of France to be crowned at a place called Rheims, and Jeanne wished to take Charles to Rheims and have him crowned king. Charles had been amusing himself while Jeanne was at Orleans, and made no objection to anything that was proposed. Most of his advisers thought that as the English were masters of the country all round Rheims, it would be too dangerous to try and make their way there; but the common people, who thought the crowning of the king, which was done with a sort of religious service and very solemnly, a matter of great importance, agreed with Jeanne, and the great lords were persuaded to yield. They all went together to Rheims; meeting the English on the way, and defeating them in a great battle. In Rheims itself there were no enemies; the French had only to march in, and they were masters. Charles was crowned king with Jeanne standing by his

side, with the standard or flag which she always carried in battle, instead of a sword, in her hand. Many people, seeing that Charles had been crowned in this way, while Henry had not, went over from the side of Henry to that of Charles.

When this was over, Jeanne wished to go back to her old home, and live again with her parents. She had now been away for nearly three months, and she had done the two great things which she had wished to do for her country—saving Orleans, and having the king crowned. But the captains of Charles begged her to stay with the army. They found that the English feared her, and their own soldiers admired her so much that they thought while she was with them, they were certain to succeed. Jeanne agreed to stay, but from this time she was often sad and disturbed, and was sometimes heard to say, "I shall not live for more than a year."

The English had begun to draw back from many of the parts of France which they had conquered, and the people whose country had not been conquered were encouraged to rise up against them. The English still held Paris, and Jeanne led an army to try and make its way into that city. Here she failed for the first time; and she and her men were driven back from the walls. The favourites of the king were growing jealous of Jeanne; they found that Charles listened more to her than he did to them. They began trying to prevent her from winning any more glory by her victories, and sometimes even refused to send soldiers out with her, or to listen to her advice on questions about the war. At last she one day went with a party of French soldiers outside a town in

which many of the French soldiers were gathered together, and where she had been staying. The English, with some of the French who still took their part, were outside the walls, and Jeanne and her men were surrounded by the enemy. Most of them made their way back into the city, but no one stayed to help Jeanne, who had gone on farther than all the rest. She turned at last, but when she came to the town she could not get through the gates. Some writers say that they were shut; others, that the people pressing in filled them up, so that she could not make her way through; but whatever the reason, she was kept out, and after trying to escape without being noticed, was taken prisoner by her enemies.

It was not to an Englishman, but to a subject of the Duke of Burgundy, a friend of the English, that she gave herself up, and she was at first kept in a castle belonging to him, but she was afterwards sold to the English for a large sum of money.

It shows such ingratitude as one could hardly have thought possible in the King of France and his chief lords, that no one did anything to save Jeanne D'Arc. The English, as soon as she was in their power, brought her up for trial, as if she had been a criminal, that is, a person who has done some wrong action, instead of a brave soldier who had fought for her country. A French bishop was her chief judge, and all her judges were Frenchmen. She had no one to defend her; questions of every kind were asked her about herself, about her life, her religion, her visions. The English wished to make her confess that she was a witch; she was thrown into prison, and treated with great cruelty. It was thought very wicked of her to

wear men's clothes instead of women's; and her having one day put some on, because the women's clothes had been taken out of her prison, was one of the excuses for the horrible sentence which her judges passed on her.

She was sentenced to be burned alive, and the execution took place at Rouen. Crowds of people, both friends and enemies, came to see her die, but no one interfered to help her. She died before she was twenty-one, and is perhaps the most wonderful woman of whom we read in all history. It is hard to say how much she might not have done for France, if the king would have made up his mind to trust her sooner than his vain and jealous courtiers. As it was, the English never settled themselves firmly in the country again, and were driven out of it altogether before the end of Charles VII.'s reign, as we shall hear.

The English had hoped that when Jeanne was dead, they would no longer find the French able to resist them; but the French, soon after, made themselves stronger than they had ever been before, by making up the quarrels they had among themselves, and all joining together against the English. The people of France wished for peace, and messengers from France and England met several times to try and arrange it, but always in vain. As usual in time of war, the boldest and most lawless men formed themselves into bands, and went through the country, taking for themselves whatever they could find, and ruining all the poor people who were not already ruined by the war. It seemed as if every one had left off caring not only for law, but for the common rules of right and wrong. Fathers and sons, husbands and wives, brothers and sisters,

quarrelled, and put one another to death by poison, or in more open ways, and this happened in most of the great families of that time in France.

There was one nobleman, living in Brittany, named Gilles de Retz, of whom a horrible story is told. It had been noticed for some time that a great number of children who lived in the neighbourhood had disappeared, no one knew where. They were usually poor children who had been sent out to keep cattle or to beg, and it was supposed that they were tempted away by an old woman to some place from which they never came back. After a time, the children in a town near at hand began to disappear in the same way. The people complained to the Duke of Brittany, and he gave orders that a castle, belonging to one of the great lords, into which the children were supposed to be taken, should be searched. This was done, and there was found in it a pile of bones so large, that it was supposed that forty children must have been put to death. The nobleman, to whom the castle belonged, had killed the children out of wickedness, and amused himself by watching their struggles as they died. This was too much to be borne, even in those days, and the nobleman was put to death. He was to have been burned, but because he was a noble, the king agreed that he should be strangled before the flames touched him.

At about this time there came a change in the character of the king. Till now he had been so weak that he had allowed himself to be ruled by the people about him, without taking any notice of what was going on. He had cared only for amusing himself, and not being troubled to settle the affairs of the kingdom; but now at last he began to

see the miserable state into which the country had fallen, and the importance of doing something to help his people. He called together the States-General, and made several wise laws. One of the first things to be done was to get rid of the disorderly soldiers who obeyed no one, but spent their time in robbing peaceful people, and to send them out of the country.

He first tried sending them to fight in wars that were going on in different countries of Europe. In these wars many of them were killed, and France was free from them for a time; but Charles wished to make some plan by which they should be prevented from coming back again to trouble the country each time that there was a fresh war. He settled to have what we have now in England, and what France and most other countries also have, a standing army—that is, an army which should always be kept together and ready to fight—so that when a war began there should be no need to call out a number of men with no one special to command them, and no one to answer for their behaviour. All the soldiers in the country were to be always under fixed officers, who should lead them to battle when they were wanted, and should be punished if their men disturbed the people of the country, or did harm to any peaceable person.

The king chose from all his men fifteen of the best and bravest, and called them his captains. Each captain had a certain number of men under him, called a company, and was sent with them to a particular town or part of the country, which he was to defend and keep in order. All the men who were not chosen by the king or the captains to make part of the companies, were commanded to go back

to their homes and live quietly, which they did, because they were afraid to refuse, and so at last the country was freed from them.

The war between England and France had gone on all this time without anything important being done on either side. Both parties had got tired of fighting at last, and there had been a truce for two years, but no peace. The French had, however, won back Paris, and suddenly they seemed to wake up as if out of a long sleep, and drove the English almost entirely out of the country. They took the whole province of Normandy in less than a year, and Guienne, which is all the southern part of France, in another year. The English had only about three towns in France still belonging to them; one was Calais, which was theirs for another hundred years; the others were small places of no importance. The English were now taken up with troubles in their own kingdom. The Wars of the Roses had begun, and from this time they had no thought or time to spare for what went on in France.

The war between England and France had lasted for nearly one hundred years, for which reason it is often called *The Hundred Years' War*. It had brought much trouble upon both nations, and though most Englishmen must be proud of the memory of the great battles, in which the French were defeated by the good conduct of the English, in spite of their small numbers and all the difficulties in their way; yet no one can help being sorry that this war should ever have been begun.

In the first place, the English king had no right in France, and therefore the war was an unjust one; and in the second place, it would have been a very bad thing for

England if her kings had succeeded in doing what they wished, and made both countries one. England, the smaller country, would soon have been the subject of France. The French had suffered far more than the English, as all the fighting had been in their country; they had also had the misfortune of being badly governed all the time the war was going on. It is a gloomy part of history, and the part of it that is most pleasant to remember is the story of Jeanne D'Arc, which shows us what the courage and good sense and virtue of one brave, wise, good person may do, even when things seem at their very worst, and though the person may be, what we should think, one of the humblest and least important of his or her countrymen.

Charles VII. had some trouble with his eldest son, who joined the great lords in an attack they made against his father, and was only kept quiet by having a province of the kingdom given him to rule over. He left even that at last, being afraid that his father meant to do him some harm, and went to the court of the Duke of Burgundy, his father's cousin, who treated him very kindly, kept him there for some years, and tried to make peace between him and the king. But Louis, the young prince, would not trust his father, and Charles, though wishing Louis himself to come back, said he must not bring with him any of his friends, several of whom had followed him to the court of the Duke of Burgundy.

At last King Charles fell ill; he became very anxious to see his son again, but Louis still refused to trust himself at the French court. Then some of his enemies persuaded the king that the Dauphin's friends wished to poison him. Charles believed this, and refused to take any

food, even though his younger son tasted it before him. In this way he starved himself to death ; after a few days he became very ill, and at the end of a week he died, at the age of fifty-eight. He had been king for thirty-nine years. Charles VII. has been called the Well-served, and it is a good name, for very few of the good things that happened to France in his time were brought about by him ; but he had had many good soldiers and advisers, of whom you will read in other histories when you are older, as I have not space here to mention any of them but Jeanne D'Arc.

CHAPTER XXXI.

LOUIS XI. (1461-1483).

WHEN Charles VII. died, his son Louis left the court of the Duke of Burgundy, went at once into France to be crowned king, and was gladly welcomed by the people. He held a grand funeral service for his father, and in the afternoon of the same day went out hunting, for he really felt nothing but joy that his father should be dead. This king is known as Louis XI., and he was one of the strangest kings of whom we ever hear.

He seems to have had scarcely any idea of the meaning of the words right and wrong. If he made a promise, he did not mean to keep it; if he wished for a thing, he never tried to get it openly, but always in some sly way; thinking of a trick to persuade people to do what he wished. He never believed what any one else said to him, and sometimes in this way he deceived himself, and when an honest man told him the truth, fancied that he was only trying to deceive, and so did not attend to him. He usually chose for his friends clever bad men, thinking that they would be more dangerous than good ones to have for enemies.

But all these bad things about the king were not found out at first. In those days they were thought less

bad than they are now, because most of the princes and great men of the time behaved in much the same way, breaking their promises and mistrusting their servants, though no one did it so much as Louis XI. Therefore his subjects did not notice the first signs of slyness and faithlessness, but they were much displeased at some of the first acts of his reign, especially at his making them pay a new set of taxes. He made the nobles angry by sending away from his court many of them who had been employed by his father as governors of provinces, or as ministers or advisers. Louis had advisers of his own, but he made little use of their advice.

He knew a great deal about the affairs of the country, and could make up his own mind as to what to do in every case which happened. He listened to what his advisers said, but always made them agree with him in the end; and he was very clever in seeing what would be best for himself and his kingdom. It was said that no one else could ever get out of a difficulty so well as he.

One of the people with whom he quarrelled was the son of the Duke of Burgundy, at whose court he had lived when he had fled from his father, Charles VII. This young man, who became Duke of Burgundy when his father died, was bold, active, warlike, and fond of power. His great wish was to be more than a duke, to make himself a king, and to rule over his own country without doing homage to any one, or being subject to any other sovereign. He had for his duchy most of the country which is now Belgium, and a good deal of what is Holland, besides some provinces farther south, which now belong some to France, and some to Germany; for some

of these lands he was vassal to the French king, and for some to the Emperor of Germany. One idea that the Duke of Burgundy had was that he might some day be Emperor himself, for the German Emperor was not, like the French kings, always the son of the last Emperor, but he was chosen by the princes of Germany each time an old one died, so that any one who could please the electors or choosers had a chance of becoming Emperor. Charles of Burgundy hoped for this, but never succeeded.

He was always glad to go to war with Louis, thinking that he might find some chance of making his kingdom larger by taking in war some of the lands belonging to the French king. He joined with some of the other great lords who were displeased with the king, and they all at once marched towards Paris, one army from the north, one from the south, one from the east, one from the west. Louis had very few friends or servants whom he could trust; two or three of the great lords still said they were on his side, but he did not feel sure that they might not leave him as soon as fighting began. However, he was obliged to put them over his soldiers, for he had no one else to help him. He himself, with a body of men, marched against one of the princes who was coming against him, and he sent off armies under other leaders against the other three. He fought the battle of Montlehéri, in which neither side was successful, and then Charles of Burgundy and his friends, one of whom was the brother of King Louis, all met together, joined their armies, and besieged Paris.

The princes were really fighting against Louis in order to get what they wanted for themselves; some wanted to be ministers in the Government, some to have provinces

given them to rule over ; but they all pretended that they were fighting, not for themselves or their own good, but for the good of the people of France, that Louis was ill-treating his subjects, and that they were going to war with him to make him promise to govern better. They called the war "The War of the Public Good."

After Louis had been shut up in Paris for some time, he went out alone in a boat to the tent of Charles of Burgundy, and called to him to ask if he might land safely. Charles promised that no harm should come to him, and he and the king took a walk together on the banks of the Seine, and arranged a peace by which it was settled that the king's brother should have the duchy of Normandy given him for his own, and that the other dukes and great lords should have other lands or places given to them ; but very little was done for the people for whose sake the princes had pretended to have gone to war. The king chose out thirty-six men who were to inquire into all the troubles and disorders in the kingdom of which the nobles had at first complained, and to try to find out the best way of putting an end to them. But as he was to choose these men himself, it was not very likely that they would find fault with anything without his leave, and so the people would not be much the better for what they did.

On the whole, however, Louis XI. treated his poorer subjects well ; he hated the princes more than ever, after having been obliged to give up so much of his country to them, and he made friends with the people of the town sooner than with them, so as to have some one on his side.

It was a great thing for all the people of France that the long wars with the English had come to an end. The States-General were again held in France in the reign of Louis XI. The people were always glad to see the States meet, and hoped that it would bring them some good, either good laws, or the setting right of something wrong, or some wise plan made by the king and his counsellors as to what should be done for the country. But often nothing of this kind happened; the king only promised good things, and no one was the better for his promises. This was how it was under Louis XI.

Louis had a great dislike to war, which was one of the many ways in which he was specially unlike his cousin, Charles of Burgundy. He was very clever at persuading people, and making them think it would be for their own good to do what he wished; and so, when he had a quarrel with any one, he always wished to go and see him and have a talk with him, and try if he could not, usually in some rather sly way, make his enemy agree to what he wished. In this way he once told Charles, who had now become Duke of Burgundy, that he should soon come to pay him a visit. Charles did not much wish to see Louis, but promised that if it were his pleasure to come to the town of Peronne, where Charles then was, and hold a meeting there, he might come and go back again safely. Louis went to Peronne, and was lodged in a strong tower, with his Scotch archers to protect him. He always had a band of these Scotchmen about him, because they were especially brave men, and being foreigners, were not likely to join in any plots that his enemies might make against him, but always stayed faithful to the king. Even with

his archers, however, Louis did not like the looks of Peronne, a strong place, filled with soldiers of the Duke of Burgundy, in the castle of which another French king, Charles the Simple, had been put to death about five hundred years before.

While Louis was thus in the power of Charles, there came news that some of Charles's subjects had risen up against him and killed some of his officers, and there was reason to think that they had been persuaded to do this by letters from Louis. Charles was furious. He was a violent, passionate man, and his first idea was to kill the King of France. Louis was kept a close prisoner in his room, without an idea of what might happen to him at last. He was completely in the power of Charles, who might have cut off his head if he had chosen, without any of the king's friends being able to come to his help. This was what Charles had meant to do, but he was persuaded at last by his chief counsellor, who was the friend of Louis, not to do what would have been so base as to harm in any way a guest who had come to visit him, trusting to his honour, and to whom he had specially promised that no harm should happen.

He was at last persuaded to see Louis, and to sign an agreement with him, by which Louis promised to give up trying to win for himself some of the lands which belonged to the duke; and also agreed to march with Charles against the rebel subjects whom he had himself persuaded to rise up against the duke. This he did with a body of his own soldiers, helping the Burgundians to destroy a city of the name of Liège, in which the people, who fought to the cry of "France," were sadly disappointed to find

that the French king, instead of coming to their help, as he had promised to do, was marching against them with their enemies. After this Louis made peace with his brother, who had again begun to make disturbances in the kingdom, and everything seemed quiet.

Louis was much disappointed and provoked at the way in which he had failed to do as he wished with the Duke of Burgundy; he was afraid that his subjects would laugh at him, and he forbade that any songs, pictures, or ballads, should be made about his journey to Peronne. He even ordered that all magpies, owls, and speaking birds should be brought before him and made to talk, so that he might find out whether any of his subjects had taught their birds to cry "Peronne" in mockery of him.

This king, who was always suspecting harm in his servants, was often betrayed by them. He had one great friend, a cardinal, whom he had raised from being a common priest, for no special reason but that he took a fancy to him, and who is said to have had every fault in the world except hypocrisy. This man was faithful to Louis for some years, and then began to write secret letters to the Duke of Burgundy, trying to make friends with him. Louis found this out, put the cardinal into prison, and kept him for ten years in an iron cage, which the cardinal himself had invented to keep safe prisoners who were likely to escape.

Louis saw enemies all round him, but he did not give up hope. His great wish was to make all the people who were against him quarrel with one another, and in this he often succeeded. This king had a great respect for the saints; he used often to pray to the Virgin Mary and other

saints, asking them for help in whatever he was going to do, or forgiveness for his sins, and promising to make them presents of offerings in their churches, such as pictures, tapers, or something of the kind, if they did what he wished. He ordered that at noon every day a large bell should ring in all the towns of France, and that every one, when they heard it, should kneel down, and pray for peace for the country of France.

At about this time the brother of Louis died, which relieved the king from a great deal of trouble, for his brother had always been among his enemies, and a year or two afterwards, Charles, Duke of Burgundy, went into Germany to fight against some enemies he had there. He stayed there for the rest of his life, which did not last much longer; he only once came back to France to make war upon Louis, and then did not bring enough soldiers to do him any harm. He was one day attacking a place called Nancy; his soldiers were driven back and many of them killed. The duke was not seen by any of his men. The next day they found him, after some search, dead in a frozen ditch, covered with wounds.

He left only one child, his daughter Mary, who now became Duchess of Burgundy. All the young princes in Europe wished to marry her, so as to become masters of her duchy. Louis was very anxious that she should marry his little son, who was only seven years old, or, if she thought him too young, some great French lord; but Louis treated Mary so badly in other ways that she would not listen to his wishes, but married a German prince instead.

Louis now began to fall into bad health. He had a

war with Mary of Burgundy and her husband, but it was his last; he made peace with them and with every one else. He added several important provinces to France by the different peaces he made with his enemies. He then shut himself up in an old castle he had, put guards all round it, and saw no one but his servants. All round his castle was a moat, and the walls were defended with iron turrets or towers. No stranger might come in without the king's leave. Louis lived in this strange way because he could trust no one; he had three children, but he did not care to have them with him. His chief companion was his doctor, who, afraid that the king might some day put him to death, as had happened to so many others of Louis's favourites, had persuaded him that their lives would last just the same time, and that if any harm happened to the doctor the king would die directly afterwards. Louis therefore took the greatest care of him, and did all that he could to make his life comfortable. Louis had two other great friends,—a barber, who was one of his chief advisers, and a provost, as he was then called, which in this case really meant an executioner. This man, as may be supposed, was hated by the people. The king would make him a sign that a particular person was to be killed, and as soon as a good opportunity came the provost would seize him, carry him off prisoner, and hang or drown him without any kind of trial, or telling any one of what he was accused. There is a story that the king once pointed in this way to a captain who came into the room. A monk was standing near him, and the provost, mistaking the king's sign, seized upon the monk as he was leaving the room, put him into a sack, and threw him into the

river. When Louis heard of the mistake, he showed no sorrow for what had happened, but merely said, "Why, that was the best monk in my kingdom."

After all this, there is no need to say that Louis was a bad man. But it must be remembered that he lived in a bad time, when people thought very differently from what we do now of the way in which every one, and kings in particular, ought to behave. Some of his subjects were sorry when he died. These were the people of the towns to whom he usually showed kindness, and the men who wrote books or poetry, for which he cared very much. He died in his strong castle, at the age of sixty-one, having been king for twenty-two years. Edward IV. of England died the same year. Louis had always been the friend of the Red Rose, or party of Henry VI. Charles of Burgundy was the friend of Edward IV.

CHAPTER XXXII.

CHARLES VIII. (1483-1498).

THE only son of Louis XI. was fourteen years old at the time of his father's death. He became king under the name of Charles VIII. His father had left him to the care of his sister, the eldest daughter of Louis XI. This princess was twenty-two years old; her name was Anne, and she was married to one of the great lords of the country. She is often spoken of as Madam Anne, and she was a very important person in France till Charles grew up; for he was afraid of her, and could be persuaded by her and her husband to do anything they liked. In the first year of the young king's reign the States-General met together. The nobles and the common people were both delighted that Louis was dead, and hoped now for more freedom than they had had before, the nobles especially thinking that now they should be able to have their own way while there was no king whom they need fear.

The first question considered by the States was, who should be regent till the king was old enough to govern. The princes of the royal family said they had a right to choose a regent among themselves, and that if the king was too young to reign, the person who would naturally have been king after him, if he had no son, should be

regent. But the deputies of the people said that the government was trusted to the king by the people for their good, and that, if he could not for any reason carry it on himself, it was for the people to trust it to some one else. However, after much disputing, it was settled that the king was old enough to manage the affairs of the country with the help of a council, which he might choose for himself from among the deputies. What really happened was that Madam Anne governed the country for eight years; for she told her brother what to do, and he never refused what she wished. She ruled wisely on the whole; she kept the kingdom quiet, defended it against all enemies, and was able to lessen the taxes, so as to prevent the poor people from being ruined by what they had to pay. When Charles was twenty-two, and took the government upon himself, she gave up all the power to him, and went to live quietly in her own home with her husband and children, like any private person. Her father Louis, when he was alive, used to say of her that "she was the least foolish woman in the world, for there is no such thing as a wise woman."

Her brother Charles, unfortunately, was a foolish boy, and grew up a foolish man.

The States-General, after they had settled the question about the regent, made complaints to the king of many things that were going wrong in the kingdom. The nobles wanted to have time allowed them to pay their debts, and to have particular laws made about hunting; the clergy wanted different arrangements made as to who should choose the bishops. The common people said that they were in a state of great distress, and explained to the

king some of the reasons, of which the chief one was the way in which they were treated by the king's soldiers. They said—"During thirty-four years the king's troops have been continually passing through every part of France, all living on the poor people. The poor labourer must pay the wages of the man who beats him, who turns him out of his house, who carries off his food, who makes him lie on the bare earth. When the poor man has with great difficulty, and by selling the coat off his back, managed to pay his taxes, and is comforting himself with the hope that the little he has left may last for the rest of the year, then comes a new troop of soldiers to eat and destroy that little. Not satisfied with what they find in the poor man's cottage, they force him with heavy blows to seek in the town for white bread, for fish, for groceries, and other dainty fare; so that if God did not comfort the poor man, and give him patience, he would fall into despair. In Normandy, great and countless numbers have died of hunger; others, in despair, have killed their wives, their children, and themselves. For the want of beasts, men, women, and children have been obliged to yoke themselves to the cart."

The deputies asked the king to take off some of the taxes, in order that the people might be a little less poor and miserable. The king promised most of the things that were asked of him by his different subjects, and broke most of the promises. When I say the king, I mean his sister, Madam Anne, for she was the person who really decided what should be done.

Several of the great lords were jealous of Madam Anne, and wished to take some of her power from her for them-

selves. One in particular, the Duke of Orleans, the king's nearest relation next to his sisters, put himself at the head of the league; and they collected a great army, and made friends with the King of England and the Emperor of Germany, and expected easily to get the better of Charles and Anne. But Anne was too strong for them; she marched with an army, first into the south of France, then into the west; at last her soldiers fought a great battle against her enemies the princes, and won it. The Duke of Orleans, and some of the great lords, were taken prisoners.

The Duke of Brittany had been one of Anne's great enemies: he died, leaving only a daughter to be duchess after him. Most of the young princes and lords in all the countries round wished to marry the Duchess of Brittany, and be master of her lands, but Madam Anne managed to persuade her to marry King Charles; and though they had no children, it happened three times running that the King of France married the lady to whom Brittany at the time belonged; so that at last Brittany came to be completely part of France, and had no more dukes of its own, as had happened to Normandy and Toulouse and Burgundy, and the other great provinces which are now joined together to make up what we know as France. When Charles married he was about twenty-one years old, and he now said that he was old enough to govern for himself, so his sister and her husband went to live in their own province as private people, and left him to manage his government as best he could.

At this time happened a war, which was an important one for all Europe. All the wars of France had till now

been either wars between the king and his great barons, or wars with England; the French had not fought with any other nation on the Continent. Each country there had been too much taken up with its own affairs to mind those of others. But now, for the first time, one great nation on the Continent began a war with another, and the consequences lasted for hundreds of years. One of the great lords in Italy wrote to Charles VIII., and invited him to come and make himself master of several of the Italian cities, which, it was said, wished to have some new ruler over them, and would receive Charles gladly. There was no one King of Italy, but there were a great number of princes, dukes, marquises, and counts, all ruling over a larger or smaller part of the country. Some had only a few towns belonging to them, some a great many, some a province, some several provinces. They often quarrelled among themselves, and any one of them who made himself stronger than the others was apt to wish to make himself master and king of the whole country. Some of the princes wished that there should be one king of the whole country, and others wished that there should not be one, not liking the idea of any one more important than themselves. Many of them were inclined to make friends with France. Charles had invitations from two or three Italian towns to come and rule over them. Against the advice of his sister Anne, and some of his best councillors, he gathered together a large army, and set off for Italy.

A great many of the cities received him gladly; the people usually asked him to make them certain promises, to all of which he agreed, without even taking the trouble to understand what they were, so that his promises were

often broken. The people found this out by degrees ; and when they saw the sort of man he was, were much less eager than they had been to have him for their king. Several of the cities joined against him. He had succeeded better than any one would have thought possible ; he had taken Rome and Naples, and most of the other chief cities of Italy, and had made a treaty with the Pope, who had at first disliked his coming into Italy. But seeing the Italians turn against him, he thought it best to retreat. He divided his army into two parts, left one to defend what he had taken in Italy, and led the other back into France. He had to fight one great battle, when the enemy caught him up, and attacked him as he was leaving the country ; but he was the conqueror, and came safely back to France. The Italians then attacked the general Charles had left behind him ; they succeeded in taking from the French all they had won, and at last, in driving them out of the country. The whole war was over in two years from the time when it began. The French had not gained anything by it, but it had made them think of Italy, and wish to be masters there ; and other wars were made there by other French kings, as we shall see.

After Charles VIII. came back to France he spent a good deal of time in amusing himself and living idly, going from one place to another to hold tournaments, and to feast and make merry, and thinking of nothing else. But suddenly he grew more serious ; he began to mind the government of the country, to attend to public business, to listen to preachers, and to try not to spend more money than had been allowed him by the States-General. But he did not live to carry out his good plans. One day he

went with his queen to see a game of tennis played in the moat of the castle. He had to pass through a low, dark gallery, and he hit his head against a doorway. He did not seem hurt at the time, but went on, watched the tennis, and talked cheerfully to everybody, till suddenly he fell down fainting. He was too ill to be taken back to his own rooms; they put him on a mattress in a room close by, which was the dirtiest in all the castle, and there, after nine hours of illness, Charles VIII. died. He was not a great king, nor a great man, and he brought no good to France. His reign was short; he died before he was twenty-eight years old.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

LOUIS XII. (1498-1515).

CHARLES left no son. He had three, but they all died as children, and his cousin, the Duke of Orleans, became king after him, and was called Louis XII. The wife Charles had left behind him, Anne, who had been Duchess of Brittany before he married her, was very unhappy at his death. She crouched down in a corner of her room, and did nothing but sob when her friends came to try and comfort her. People said it was not so much her husband she cared for as the pleasure and glory of being queen; and it certainly seemed as if this were true, for in less than two months she had persuaded Louis to marry her, and was Queen of France once more. Louis had another wife, but she was ugly and deformed, and he had never cared for her. The Pope gave him leave to divorce her—that is, to send her away from being his wife. She, poor thing, knew that it was of no use to resist, and went away into a convent, where she spent the rest of her days in doing good deeds, and was considered a saint by the people. She had been a sister of Charles VIII. and of Madam Anne, who had governed his kingdom so well for him.

Louis XII., by marrying Anne, became master of Brittany, as Charles had been; but it was settled that if Anne

had children Brittany would not belong to the eldest son, who would be King of France, but to one of the other children, so that it might be kept a distinct province by itself. Louis, though he had behaved so unkindly to his first wife, was on the whole a kind, good-hearted man. He punished none of the people who had been his enemies in the last reign. When some of his friends advised him to do so, he refused, saying, "It would not become the King of France to revenge the quarrels of the Duke of Orleans." You remember that he had been Duke of Orleans before he was King of France. By this kindness he soon made friends with all the chief people of the country, and all through his reign he had no disturbances of any kind in France.

Very soon after he became king Louis called together an assembly of some of the wisest among his subjects, and with their help he made a set of laws called an *ordonnance*, changing and improving many of the arrangements for doing justice, about which he was always very anxious. After this he unfortunately did as Charles VIII. had done before him, and began another Italian war.

There was one town in the north part of Italy named Milan, which had belonged to the great-grandfather of Louis, and Louis always called himself Duke of Milan, and hoped, with the help of some of his friends among the Italian princes, to make himself master of the town. He collected a great army, and marched across the Alps into Switzerland. Many of the States that had fought against Charles VIII. were quite willing to help Louis, and he became master of Milan without having had to fight any great battle.

Louis went back to France well pleased at his success, but as soon as he was gone the Duke of Milan came back with an army, and tried to win back his town. At first it seemed as if he would succeed. All the towns through which he passed turned out the French, and gave themselves up to their duke. It was said that he won back his country even more quickly than he had lost it. But Louis heard of what was happening, gathered a large army, which could now be done easily in France, because of the regiments and captains always ready for use, as I told you, and marched with them into Italy again. The duke Louis Sforza of Milan shut himself up in a town with his soldiers.

Among the duke's soldiers was a body of Swiss. It was the custom at that time for any king or prince who wanted soldiers to hire some from Switzerland. The Swiss were fierce, brave, fond of fighting, and their country being very poor they were always glad to earn money by fighting for any one who would pay for soldiers. It sometimes happened in a battle that there were Swiss on both sides, and so it was now.

These men soon met and made a bargain together; the Swiss who were paid to fight for the duke, and some of the other soldiers on the same side, agreed to give up the town to the French, in return for which it was promised that they and all that belonged to them should be safe. They made no agreement that the duke, their employer, should be safe. When they yielded up the town next morning, and were marching out with the French soldiers watching them, the duke disguised himself as a Swiss soldier and marched with the others, hoping that no one

would notice him; but the French, suspecting that he might do this, made them go out by twos and threes, so that each man might be examined as he passed. Still, perhaps, the duke might have passed safely, but that some of his soldiers were persuaded by a present of money to point him out to the French. He was taken prisoner, carried to France, and very badly treated by Louis, who was usually kind and merciful to every one. He was kept in one of the horrible iron cages which had been invented in the reign of Louis XI.

One great man had distinguished himself in this Italian war. He was a knight named Bayard, one of the bravest and at the same time the best of the French soldiers, who is sometimes spoken of as the knight without fear and without blame. He was born at an old castle, called like himself Bayard, and there he had lived with his parents till he was fourteen, when his uncle, a bishop, had come to stay at the castle, and offered to take his nephew away with him and find him some place at court or in the army, from which he might rise to higher things.

The boy was delighted to go. His uncle gave him a horse; the tailor of the place sat up all night to make him handsome clothes "of velvet, satin, and other things needful to clothe a good knight." The next morning, when he was ready to set off, his mother came down to say good-bye to him. She gave him a purse with six crowns of gold in it, and also some good advice, which very likely helped to make him the great and good man he afterwards became; for she told him to bear himself wisely and well, to love and serve God, to be courteous to his equals and merciful to the poor, to tell the truth, and be loving and

faithful. After this Bayard became a page in the court of the Duke of Savoy, and in time a soldier.

A year or two later there was another Italian war, but in this Louis was less fortunate than before. At first everything seemed to go well with him, and he and the King of Spain, who was helping him, took Naples and some other Italian towns from the King of Naples; but when they had done this they began to quarrel about dividing the land which had become theirs. After long disputes the French and Spaniards began to fight with each other, and at last the French were driven entirely out of the country, and the Spaniards kept everything for themselves, so Louis XII. had not gained much for his country by this war, which had cost much money and the lives of so many brave soldiers.

Louis had only one child, a daughter, and the queen was very anxious that she should marry the young man who was going to be King of Spain. But the French lords did not wish that Spain and France should belong to the same person, and said that it would be better for the princess to marry the greatest of the French lords, the man who, if Louis should have no son, would be the next King of France. Louis did not like to disappoint his wife, and at first agreed that the marriage should be as she wished it, but when he thought himself dying he considered how much trouble he should bring upon his people if he did anything which was likely to make a war between France and Spain, and he changed his mind and made a will saying that his daughter should marry the French prince as soon as she was old enough. When he grew better he called together the deputies of the Three Estates, and

asked them for advice. They all wished that his daughter should be betrothed to Francis, the young French prince, which was done. It was at this time that the deputies first called Louis the Father of his People, the name by which he has since been known, and on hearing which, he was so much delighted that he wept for joy.

There was one more Italian war; this time France joined with several others of the Italian states against one state named Venice, and, as usual, he succeeded very well at first, and took a great deal of the country, but afterwards the Italians all joined together against him, and Henry VIII. of England came to help the enemies of Louis. Henry was quite young, and had only just become king. He was a bold, warlike young prince, and beat the French in a battle called the battle of the Spurs, because the French used their spurs to run away with more than their swords to fight with. The French were also driven quite out of Italy, so that they had no land at all belonging to them there. If it had not been for the Italian wars, Louis XII. would have been a good king; much that he did was good, and when he died, which happened soon after the end of the war, his people grieved for him, and the ringers went through the streets sounding their bells and crying in a sad voice, "The good King Louis, the father of his people, is dead."

He left no son.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

FRANCIS I. (1515-1547).

THE next king was the cousin of Louis XII., who had married his daughter. Francis I. was at this time a young man—handsome, brave, gay, fond of war, glory, and amusement. Louis XII. had always been afraid that when Francis came to be king he would disturb the arrangements which Louis had made for governing the kingdom, and would think only of his own amusement, not of the good of the country. He used to say, "That bouncing boy will spoil everything." The father of Francis was dead; his mother, a very clever, but not a wise or good woman, spoilt him completely. She thought him the greatest man in the world, and helped him to take his own way in everything. She used to call him "my peaceful Cæsar" before he had fought any battle, and as soon as he had won one victory, "my glorious, triumphant Cæsar." Francis had also a sister named Margaret, who loved him as well as his mother did, but who was an excellent woman, and whose advice was always for his good and the country's. She wrote poetry, and was fond of all learned men; she often persuaded Francis I. to protect people who were hated for having a different religious belief from their neighbours. She could often persuade Francis to

do as she wished, when he would not listen to any one else.

The reign of Francis I. is a very important time, not only in the history of France, but in the history of the whole world. Two men lived at that time, both of whom gave much trouble to the French king, and, though they were not Frenchmen, made so much change in the affairs of all Europe, that I must say a little about each of them. The first I shall mention was the young prince who, soon after Francis began his reign, became King of Spain. He was the grandson of the Emperor of Germany, and when his grandfather died two years later, wished to be emperor in his place. The Emperor was chosen by seven of the chief princes in Germany, and the King of Spain hoped to be able to persuade them to choose him, though he was only eighteen, and had not then showed any signs of being likely to become a specially wise or brave king. Francis also wished to be Emperor, and made friends with several of the electors, as the princes were called who had the right of choosing or electing the Emperor.

Others, however, took the side of the Spanish king, whose name was Charles, and after he and Francis had both said all they could, and made handsome presents to the electors, each trying to persuade them to be on his side, it was settled that Charles would be most likely to make a good emperor, and he was solemnly invited to come and govern Germany, to his great joy and Francis's deep disappointment. Charles, known as Charles V., had now far more land belonging to him than any other prince in Europe. Spain was his, and Germany and Austria, and the country which is now Holland and Belgium, and a

good deal of land in the west, where first Columbus, and then other sailors and soldiers from Spain, had discovered and conquered islands in the seas near America, and at last part of America itself, for the Spanish kings.

Charles gave Austria to his brother, but all the rest of the empire he kept for himself. As he grew older, his neighbours began to grow more and more afraid of him. Seeing him so much stronger than they, they feared he might wish to grow stronger still, and take their lands from them. However, he had too much to do in his own country to attack other people of his own accord. His empire was too large to be ruled easily, disturbances were always rising up in one or another part of it, and if Charles had not been active, industrious, and very clever, he could never have kept it all under his rule through his lifetime as he did. He was a thoughtful, grave, and prudent young man, very different in every way from the gay, cheerful Francis, who cared more for war and amusement than for anything else. Francis, all through his reign, had to be on his watch against Charles V.; they had three wars together, and on the whole, Charles had the best of the struggle.

The other man who made himself important in Europe at this time was a very different person from the great emperor and the gay French king. He was a German monk, and his name was Martin Luther. This was the man who first taught the faith which is now believed by all Protestants; and pointed out the mistakes and evils that had grown up among the believers of the faith which, till then, had been held by almost all Christians. Half the countries of Europe gave up their old beliefs to follow what he taught, and in some countries his followers are

still called Lutherans, after his name. There were several important differences between the old and the new ideas. The one which has most to do with history was the different way of thinking about the Pope.

The Pope, to begin with, had been only Bishop of Rome, and one of four bishops who were over all the others, and were all four very important people. But in time the other three bishops were forgotten, and became no greater than all the others, while the Bishop of Rome was more and more looked up to, and treated with respect, first by all Italy, then by all Europe. He was called Pope, which means father, and was a common name at that time for many bishops; but the Bishop of Rome was the only one who has kept it till the present time. In early days the Pope chose all the other chief bishops in all the countries of Europe, settled all religious disputes, and had the power of excommunicating kings and laying countries under an interdict.

As his power grew greater, the people in distant countries began to respect him more and more, and by degrees the idea grew up that the Pope was the wisest and best man in the world. Then people began to think that he was so wise and good that he could never make a mistake or do anything wrong. This was partly because Rome, where the Pope lived, was the home of the strongest and wisest people that had ever been known, and the people in the other countries of Europe were wild and ignorant, and understood little about religious matters. When they grew wiser and became as strong and important as the Italians, they left off believing so much in the wisdom and goodness of the Pope.

But still the popes had held their power for so many years, that it would have been a difficult thing to turn the people against them, if they had used their great power well. But in the time of Martin Luther they had come to use it in many ways very ill. The Pope, at that time, was in great want of money, as he often was, and he had many plans for getting some. He had often asked for it from the clergy in the different countries of Europe. The kings of such countries did not like the clergy to pay away great sums to the popes, because less money was left for the bishops to give them when they wanted it for wars or any other purpose. The kings and popes had often had great disputes as to whether all the clergy were the subjects of the Pope, or whether each was the subject of the king in whose country he lived, as happens with other people.

But just at this time the Pope had a plan for making the common people give him money. It had always been thought that the Pope had the power of settling who was good and who was bad. If any one wrote a book which was thought wicked, it was sent to the Pope for him to say whether people were to be allowed to read it or not. If any one had displeased the Pope, he was punished by excommunication, as has been already described ; besides all the unpleasant things which happened to the excommunicated person in this life, it was thought that if the Pope did not at last forgive him, he would be punished in another world after his death. Any one who had been forgiven for a sin by the Pope believed that he should be forgiven by God. It was next said that after people were dead the prayers of the Pope were still useful for them,

and people paid him sums of money to persuade him to say these prayers for their relations. A man was sent through Germany, in the reign of Francis, with pardons ready printed on paper. Any one who paid him a certain sum of money could have one of these pardons from the Pope, either for something wrong they had done themselves, or for some sin of some of their friends, or they could buy the Pope's prayers for the soul of any one who was dead. It made many people extremely angry to see this being done. The Pope was now thinking only of making money for himself, and not at all of whether what he was teaching people was right and true, for forgiveness is not a thing that can be bought; and after a man is dead, the Pope knows no more than any one else what God may do with the soul He alone has created.

Many people spoke and wrote against selling the pardons, but the man who spoke most and was listened to most was Martin Luther. He had been a monk, and had been taught everything that was then believed to be true about the best way to please God and live a good life, as well as about the power of the Pope; but he was not satisfied with what he was taught, and saw reasons for thinking that his teachers made mistakes. He explained his own ideas first in giving his reasons for disliking the sale of pardons, and he went on to teach and to write books about what people ought to believe, and about the wickedness of the Pope and his court. Every one listened to him, many people were pleased, many were furious, and there were wars and disturbances for many years, and all through the greater part of Europe, while one nation after another was deciding the question whether they should

think as they had always been taught to do before, and submit to the Pope as they had done, or whether they should resist the Pope and accept the new ideas which Luther taught, and which, by degrees, more and more people came to think were the true ones.

I cannot explain here the difference between what Luther thought and what the Pope and his clergy thought. It was almost the same difference there is now between the people called Roman Catholics and those called Protestants. Some Protestants now think just what Luther thought, and others nearly the same. Some people agreed with Luther in disliking the great power of the Pope, and thinking that it ought to be stopped, without agreeing to his other opinions, and becoming Protestants.

Francis of France was one of these. The Popes had never had the same power in France that they had in some other countries. The king often resisted them, and the French clergy often took the side of their king.

Many of Luther's friends came into France to teach there, and in some parts they found friends, in others enemies. Their enemies, some of whom were bishops and people in power, were so angry with them that they would have put many of the Protestant teachers to death, if Margaret, Francis's sister, had not helped them, and persuaded the king to treat them well. Some of the people listened to them and became reformers, which was the name first given to those who agreed with Luther's ideas, because they wished to reform, that is make better, the people about them and themselves.

The king, however, and the greater number of his subjects went on believing the old teaching, as they had done

before. Francis had not much time to think about such things, for he was very often at war; and when not, was amusing himself, buying pictures or building fine palaces, and he did not care to spend time in thinking quietly about serious subjects. It was less trouble to him, of course, to go on with his old ideas than to think about changing them; and this he did, and had his children brought up in them as well.

When some of the people in a town became reformers, there were sure to be disputes and often fights between them and their fellow-townsmen. For one thing, Luther's followers were made angry by the little statues and images before which people in those days were accustomed to say their prayers; and they often broke or spoilt them by way of showing that they were only statues and images.

The Roman Catholics, for their part, were made extremely angry when the Protestants did any harm to the images about which they cared so much, and there were fights in the streets in which people often lost their lives. Francis always took the side of those who defended the images, and when a special favourite of the people's had been pulled down, the king went in great state to set up another in its place, and punished very cruelly the people who had hurt it. On the other hand, he did what he could to prevent the people who believed in the new ideas from being ill-treated by their neighbours so long as they lived quietly.

But the worst act of his reign was the way in which he ill-treated a set of people who had found out for themselves a form of belief, much like that which Martin Luther taught.

In some of the valleys of the Alps lived a tribe of people known as the Vaudois. They had been driven into the mountains by the Albigensian wars in the reign of Philip Augustus.

There they and their children had lived for nearly four hundred years without being disturbed by any one; but with a different belief from that of their neighbours, the people who lived in one of the southern provinces of France. They were quiet and industrious, so that the great lords in the country near protected and employed them, and at last some of them came down to live in the land at the foot of the Alps, where they built two towns and thirty villages, planted trees, sowed grain and fruit, and brought up cattle, till they made their little corner one of the most fertile parts of the province. These people had made friends with the reformers, whose opinions were so nearly the same as their own.

Francis at one time had sent messengers to find out what they did believe and what sort of life they led, and the account of them was so good that for some time they were not disturbed.

At last, however, the bishops, who were his friends, and the Emperor, with whom he had just made a peace, began reminding him of these heretics, and telling him that they would do some harm to the country if they were allowed to go on living as they had done. The king allowed himself to be persuaded; he wrote to the governor of the province and told him to clear it entirely of the heretics. Several bands of fierce soldiers were sent against the poor Vaudois, who had no means of helping themselves, and who did not even know that the king was angry with

them. When the soldiers came to the nearest villages they set them on fire, and put to death every one they found in them, men, women, and children alike.

The Vaudois in other villages seeing this, fled into the woods ; the soldiers, when they came up, burned the villages, cut down the fruit-trees, spoiled the crops, and killed any of the people whom they could find. This happened all through the country ; the people were killed in horrible ways ; village after village, and the two towns were burned. In one of the towns was found a young man who was an idiot, and had stayed behind, when every one in their senses had fled for safety. He was shot. In the other town several inhabitants were found ; they gave up the town, and a promise was made that their lives should be spared ; but as they were heretics the promise was broken, and they were all put to death. The women of the town were shut up in a barn and burned. More than three thousand people were killed, and others had wandered off into the woods.

A law was made that no food or shelter was to be given to a Vaudois, so that numbers of them died of hunger, others made their way into other countries, and some were caught by their enemies and put to death, or carried off to serve in the French armies. This treatment of the Vaudois is worse than anything else which happened in Francis's reign. It is an example of the way in which stronger men often behaved to weaker, who thought differently from them about religious questions. Unhappily, there are many such examples in French history. This chapter has been more about the Reformation than about the special events in the reign of Francis, who must therefore have another chapter to himself.

CHAPTER XXXV.

FRANCIS I.—(continued).

1515-1547.

SOON after Francis became king, he settled to go on with the war in Italy, which had answered so badly for Charles VIII. and Louis XII. He was not more successful than they in the end, but he began by winning the victory of Marignan against some Swiss who had come to help his enemies in Italy. The chief Italian cities had joined together against him, and a Spanish army had come to their help; but after this battle, Francis, without any more fighting, gained two of the towns for which he most cared; the Swiss went away home, and Francis went back to France, where his people admired him more than ever, and where he began to turn his mind to the business of governing the country. Unhappily, he chose a bad man to be his chief minister, and so brought great troubles upon his people. His mother, too, who was a friend of the minister's, often made things go ill by her meddling and dishonesty.

After Francis had been king about three years, his first quarrels with Charles V. began. Both Francis and Charles were anxious to have the King of England, Henry VIII., on their own side. Francis had begun by making friends with Wolsey, one of Henry's chief ministers, and with him he had agreed that there should be a meeting between Henry

and Francis of a very splendid kind, where they would talk over their disputes and try to settle them in a friendly way. A place in France was chosen for this meeting. Henry was to come over with his chief barons, and a great train of followers. They were to bring their tents with them, and Francis wrote to propose to Wolsey that the English king should give orders that his tents should not be too expensive, and said he would give the same orders to his French nobles. But the English ministers would not hear of this, and said everything should be as grand as possible. After this the only question was which nation would show the greatest riches and splendour. Tents were set up with the walls and ceiling of precious stuffs, such as satin and cloth of gold; golden trees were arranged round them with leaves of green silk; the English palace was made entirely of crystals, which flashed in the sunlight. The great lords, but especially the English, wore handsome dresses of silk and velvet, covered with gold chains and jewels of different kinds.

Francis's sister Margaret and other French ladies came to see the tournament with which the meeting was to open. The kings both joined in it, Henry so roughly that he killed the man who was fighting against him, and hurt his own horse so that it died in the night. The next morning Francis went to Henry's tent very early, while Henry was still in bed. It had been arranged that the two kings should never meet except in a solemn way, arranged beforehand, great care being taken to prevent either of them from doing harm to the other by taking him prisoner or putting him to death; for people remembered how the Duke of Burgundy had been murdered on a bridge

while making a treaty with his enemy before one of the Dauphins of France, and they were afraid of the same thing happening again.

But Francis, who was brave and generous to people of his own rank, and never would have done harm to an enemy of his own class who could not defend himself, trusted to Henry's honour, and took with him only two gentlemen and a page. Outside the English tent he met two hundred archers on guard, and asked for the king. "He is asleep," they said. Francis knocked at the door and went in. Henry was surprised, but said, "You do right to trust me," and gave Francis a rich collar. "I will be your valet," said Francis, giving Henry a bracelet of precious stones, and helping him to put on his clothes. After this meeting the kings soon became friends, and treated each other quite familiarly. One day when they were watching a wrestling match going on before the ladies, Henry seized Francis's collar and said, "Let us wrestle." Henry was the stronger of the two, but Francis was the more active; he threw down Henry, at which the English king was much vexed. After all, the two kings did not settle much at this meeting, which is known as the Field of the Cloth of Gold, in honour of all the splendid stuffs that had been shown there. Francis had not even done what he most wished, made Wolsey and Henry inclined to take his side against Charles.

Charles came to meet them on their way back to England, and treated them in a humble respectful manner which pleased them, and made Wolsey his firm friend. As Wolsey had much power over Henry, this was a great success for Charles.

Soon after this the old Emperor died, and it was then that Francis and Charles both wished to be chosen as the new Emperor. Charles was successful, and two years afterwards the first war between Francis and Charles began. Charles tried to take Milan and the part of Italy which Francis had won by his first victory, away from the French king. Francis's general was able to do nothing, because the queen, his mother, took away for herself the money which the king had meant to be used in the war. She also quarrelled with one of the king's most powerful relations and subjects, the Duke of Bourbon. Francis had treated him ill, and the queen treated him worse, till at last he forgot his duty to his king and his country, and made friends with Charles V. He left France and joined one of the Emperor's armies.

Francis, finding his general driven out of Italy, marched there himself, at the head of a large and fine army, against the advice of his ministers at home. He went to besiege a town named Pavia, in which was the Spanish general with a body of his men; while Francis with his troops waited outside the town, an army of Germans came up outside him to help the Spaniards in Pavia. The king between the two armies was obliged to fight under great difficulties. The battle was so fierce at one time that it is said, "You could see nothing but heads and arms flying in the air." Some of the Spanish troops ran backwards to find shelter from the guns of the French; Francis, thinking that they were yielding, rushed out from the camp, and went on farther and farther, not noticing that his army was not following him, and that the Spaniards were getting in between him and the camp. He had only a small body

of followers, his enemies gathered round him, his horse was killed, and at last he gave up his sword to one of the Spanish officers. He was treated with great respect; his enemies admired his bravery so much, that they kept bits of his clothes and of his armour as relics.

The French army, after the king was taken, had been utterly defeated, all the commanders who had not been killed were prisoners, and many of the chief nobles of France were either dead or dying. The soldiers who were left alive wandered back into France, many of them dying on the way from hunger and misery. The king was carried from one prison to another, and at last to Madrid in Spain. As soon as he was made prisoner, Francis wrote to his mother a letter, in which he told her that he had lost everything except his life and his honour, begged her to govern the country prudently for him, and said he still hoped that God would at last help him out of his troubles.

He stayed in prison for nearly a year, after which he could bear it no longer, and agreed to a peace with Charles, by which he promised to give back to the Emperor some of the lands which were then his, and to give up trying to conquer others, which he had always till now said ought to belong to him. Francis was to go back to his country, and send his two eldest sons, the Dauphin and the Duke of Orleans, to stay as prisoners till he should have done all that he promised.

But when he made these promises the king had no idea of keeping them. He rode off into France, sent his little boys to take his place, and calling together some of his nobles, told them of the promises he had made, and asked their advice as to whether or not he should keep them,

saying that he could not give away a part of the country without the people of the country agreeing to it. This was only his plan to find an excuse for refusing to keep his word. The nobles told him as he wished, that he had not the power of giving away any part of France without their leave, and that they would not allow him to do so. They said that Charles had obliged him to make the promise against his will, and that therefore he was not bound to keep it. Francis was not a man who would have paid any attention to the wishes of his subjects unless they had been the same as his own; but he made them an excuse to give Charles for breaking his word, and the war went on as before.

We hear little of how the young French princes, who were quite children, were treated in Madrid. It may be thought that it was very unkind of the king to go away safely himself and leave his little boys to stay in prison for his sake; but we must remember how important it was for the whole kingdom that the king should be at liberty, and also that it was much more unpleasant for him to be a prisoner than for the children. They had each other, and a body of French servants to wait on them, and we may hope that they were not uncomfortable, on the whole. They went back to their home three years afterwards, when a peace was made between Francis and Charles, called the ladies' peace, because it was arranged by two ladies, the king's mother on one side, and the emperor's sister on the other. Francis, in making this peace, thought only of his own affairs, and did not try to get anything they wished for his allies, the people who had helped him in the war.

The people of France, meanwhile, were by no means well off. The mother of the king kept for her own use the money that should have been spent on the affairs of the kingdom, and as so much had been used for the war, the taxes were heavier than ever. There were five bad seasons one after another, in which no frost came all the winter. The insects not being killed by the cold increased in number till they became a plague, eating all the fruits and grain. The peasants had to satisfy themselves with what they could find in the fields, with thistles, mallows, and weeds; they made bread of fern-roots, beech-masts, and acorns. While the poor people were in this distress, the king's court and the nobles were rich enough to spend money upon all sorts of amusements and strange fancies.

There is a list of the way in which Francis spent his private money the year before peace was made with Charles. He bought pictures, musical instruments, jewels, diamonds, and pearls, a splendid bronze horse and rider, rare trees, some creatures for a menagerie, "eight horses, four camels, six ostriches, a lion, eleven pair of birds, eight hares," and a horse for the king's cook, that he might be always near the king to make his soup. A great deal was spent on fine buildings, but nothing for the good of his country, or to help his poor subjects in their distress.

A few years later another war began with Charles. Francis, seeing that Charles had many more friends than he had, made a treaty with the Turks, who at that time had become very strong, both by land and sea, and who often attacked Charles's empire on the east side opposite to France. The Turks had a great man for their sultan, which means the same as our king; they were useful

friends to have, but it was thought at that time very horrible that Christians should make friends with Turks, and many people who would have been friends of Francis were turned against him by his doing so. Francis was to attack Charles in Italy, and the Turks on the eastern side of Germany. Charles would have been able to defend himself against Francis alone, but with the Turks on the other side he was soon glad to make peace, and Francis gained a little more land.

After this there was a third war, during which Francis won his last victory in Italy. It did not bring him much good, and soon afterwards peace was again made. Francis was worn out with his active life, though he was little more than fifty years old. He died two years after his last peace with Charles, and Henry VIII., King of England, died in the same year. Francis was admired and loved by many of his subjects, as he had many of the good qualities which they cared for the most, because they were like their own. He was active, brave, generous, cheerful, good-natured; but he was not altogether a good king, though better than many of those who came both before and after him. He was selfish, never thinking of any one but himself, and he was untruthful, so that his word could not be trusted. He treated his good sister Margaret, towards the end of his life, with great unkindness.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

HENRY II. (1547-1559).

THE two eldest sons of Francis I. had been prisoners in Spain for three years, as I said in the last chapter. Though they had been well treated there, on the whole, the life had not agreed with them; and the elder and better of the two became delicate before he went back to France, and died young before his father. The second brother, Henry, was the next king. He was a handsome, brave, active young man, but not fit to be king, because he never would take the trouble of thinking for himself. He always had some favourite to think for him and tell him his ideas, with which the king was sure to agree. Henry had for a long time a set of friends of his own, who very much disliked all that Francis did in the country. They all watched anxiously for his death, and as soon as it came, Henry changed all his father's ministers and put his friends into power.

The chief of these friends was a lady called Diana of Poitiers, who could make both the king and his wife do whatever she liked, and as Diana thought only about what pleased herself, and not at all about the good of the country and the king's subjects, her power was a misfortune for France. The king also had for friends two brothers—one

a soldier, one a cardinal, brave, active, and ambitious, and distant relations of the king, so that they had some hopes, while the king had no children, that the elder, the Duke of Guise, might some day come to be king himself. These men were friends of Diana, and she persuaded Henry to give them places and power, and make them as important as possible. All the king's ministers were so eager for some chance of making themselves rich or grand, that they were said to seize upon every office or abbey or place that was left unfilled, as a swallow does upon flies. The king never had the spirit to resist either the Guises or his constable Montmorency, who was another of his great friends; and no one who did not belong to one of these two great parties could be attended to at the court.

The English king had died at the same time as Francis I., and the new king, who was quite a boy, had wished to be betrothed to the little Queen of Scotland, who was a child of six years old, in order to bring about peace between the two countries, which were very often at war together. But the little girl, Mary Stuart, was a niece of the Guises, and they settled to carry her off into France, that she might be betrothed to the eldest son of the French king, so that whenever France went to war with England, Scotland might be inclined to take the side of the French. Mary and her mother were taken to France, and the child was betrothed to the little Dauphin, and was married to him when they both grew up. This was the Mary Stuart who afterwards went back to her own country, quarrelled with Elizabeth of England, and at last had her head cut off in an English prison. It was very unfortunate for her that she was taken away from her home in this way as a

child, and never learned to know her subjects till it was too late. She was brought up with the French princes by their mother, Catherine of Medicis, who was one of the worst women of whom we ever hear ; but she had no power while her husband lived, and so people did not yet know of her badness.

In the reign of Henry II. the question had to be settled whether he and his subjects would belong to the reformed religion which Luther had taught, or would stay as they had been, subjects of the Pope. The Emperor Charles was at war with the princes of Germany, who had most of them followed the new ideas, and the princes asked Henry for help. There were three towns on the borders of France and Germany, named Metz, Toul, and Verdun, and called the Three Bishoprics, because they were governed by bishops instead of counts or princes. Henry and other French kings had much wished to have them for their own, because they were so near to other French towns, especially to Paris, that the French kings always felt afraid of the Germans coming through them as enemies into France. Henry saw a good opportunity for making himself master of these towns by becoming the friend of the German princes. He made a treaty with them, and collected a great army with which he marched into Germany.

When the army came to Metz, the nearest of the Three Bishoprics, the magistrates sent out food to the soldiers and invited the king and princes to come into the town. The constable asked leave to take in a few soldiers with him, and when the magistrates had said that he might bring a few, he went in with so great a number, that he was able to make himself master of the town. The people

of Metz, when they saw what he was doing, tried to shut the gates of the town upon him, but it was too late. The soldiers were inside and could not be driven out, so that the town had to submit to the king. Toul and Verdun—the two other bishoprics—did the same, as Henry promised not to interfere with their rights and customs, and it made little difference to them whether they belonged to the emperor or to him. Soon after this the emperor and the princes made peace, and the king was able to go back to his own country without having done any great good to his friends, but having won for himself the three towns, which were what he really cared about.

Henry, though he had been fighting to help the Reformers, was himself a Roman Catholic. The Guises, the Constable, and Diana, were all friends of the Pope, and Henry thought as they thought. About this time many of his subjects began to turn from the old beliefs to the new. A Frenchman named Calvin wrote a book about what he believed, which many people thought good and true, and those people called themselves Calvinists after his name, and used to meet together and have a service of their own. Their belief was in some ways different from that of the Lutherans, but much more like them than like the old religion, and both Lutherans and Calvinists called themselves Protestants. Henry set up a council of men in the Parliament, whose special business it was to attend to all questions about heretics, which was the name given by Roman Catholics to all Protestants. This council was called the Burning Council, because it generally ordered all the Protestants brought before it to be burned. But still the number of Protestants, or, as they were called

in France, Huguenots, grew larger and larger. Printing had lately been invented, and the Bible and little books of psalms were printed out of France, and then brought into the country by people who disguised themselves and hid the books they carried. The psalms were sometimes set to music, and the poor Huguenots sang them through all their troubles, in their hiding-places, in prison, and often even at the stake. Many of them were burned with the little books in their hands.

The king at one time used to go and look on at these dreadful sights. He once went to see the burning of several heretics together, and among them he found one that he knew. The man was a tailor who had been employed in the palace, and the ladies of the court had, to amuse themselves, asked him what he believed. He had then told them plainly that he was a Huguenot, and for this he was to be burned. When he saw the king come to look on at his death, he fixed his eyes upon him, so that Henry was startled and moved away. But the man still kept on looking at him, even after the fire was lighted and the flames rose up, till Henry at last left the place, and for some time after imagined himself seeing the same sight every night, so that he resolved never to look on at an execution again.

While Henry was king, his father's old enemy, Charles V., ended his reign. By the time he was fifty-six, Charles was so worn out with his long reign and all the troubles and difficulties he had gone through, as well as disappointed and vexed at finding that he could not make the heretics submit to him, as he had hoped to be able to do, that he made up his mind to govern no longer. He gave up the different countries of his empire one by one to his son and

to his brother. The brother became Emperor, and the son Philip II., King of Spain and of the Netherlands. Directly after this a war began between Philip and Henry of France, and as Philip had married Mary, who was now Queen of England, the English sent an army to help the Spaniards. Philip won the great battle of St. Quentin, and took the town of the same name in the north of France, but was so long in marching on any farther, or putting his victory to any use, that the French had time to get their men together, and when he did go farther on towards Paris they were ready to resist him.

In this war the man who was afterwards the chief leader of the Huguenots, and one of the best and bravest men of the time, defended the town that Philip besieged, and with scarcely any men fought as long as it was possible, so as to keep the Spanish army from going farther till his friends were ready to resist it. This man was called Coligny. It is said of him that whenever there was a piece of work to be done, specially hard and dull, and that would bring no glory or fame as a reward, Coligny was the man to do it. Often, when some one else had planned some attack or surprise for the enemy, and found some difficulty come in the way and seem likely to spoil everything, Coligny would set to work to get rid of the difficulty, and then let the other carry out his plan and have all the glory of it. He was said to be harsh and stern, but every one trusted and honoured him, and his first thought was always for the good of his friends. He was taken prisoner by Philip, with the constable Montmorency, who had gone to his help, and had not been able to help him in the town where he was besieged.

Henry then put the Duke of Guise at the head of the army, and trusted to him to drive the Spaniards out of the country. The duke settled to do what he knew would please the French better than anything else. He marched against Calais. This town had belonged to the English ever since it had been taken by Edward I., two hundred years before, and it had always been a great vexation to the French to see a town so near Paris belonging to their enemies. There was always a body of soldiers there and a governor to protect the place; but it was the custom in winter for the number of soldiers to be made a good deal smaller than usual, because at this time the marshes round Calais were so deep and wet that it was supposed no one could pass through them. The English had also become careless about guarding the ramparts or walls round the town, and Queen Mary was so much taken up in trying to make all her people Roman Catholics that she had not much time to attend to anything else.

The Duke of Guise had observed the place carefully, and knew where to pass the marsh, and how to attack it. The English were taken by surprise, and after an attack which lasted three days, the French took the castle, and soon afterwards the town. It was the last bit of land that had belonged to the English in France, and the French were so much delighted at seeing their country free again from all strangers that they were comforted for having been so lately defeated by Philip. The Duke of Guise was almost worshipped by the people. The English, on the other hand, were very angry at their loss. Queen Mary was made so unhappy by it that she said that when she died the word "Calais" would be found written on her heart.

There was one other battle between the French and Spaniards at a place called Gravelines. It was fought by the sea-side, on the sands at low tide. Just when the battle was at its height ten English ships came sailing up with a good breeze, and coming close to the shore, fired at the French. They could not resist the two enemies at once, and were beaten. Soon after this Philip and Henry made peace, and also France and England. The French lost a great deal of land by this peace, and it was gained by Philip, which much displeased some of Henry's soldiers; among other things he gave up all that had been his in Italy. He and the Spanish king were both anxious for peace with each other, in order that they might give all their time to stopping heresy among their subjects.

In France many even of Henry's ministers and of the chief people in the country were becoming Huguenots. The king found that these people were ready to resist his plan of having people put to death for heresy, as if it were the worst of crimes. Henry wished to set up in France the Inquisition—a terrible secret council which the Pope and the King of Spain had invented. Its work was to find out heretics, to ask them questions and see what they really believed, and if they were found to be heretics, to punish them for it by death, or in other ways. People were often tortured by the Inquisition in order to make them speak, if they refused at first to say all that the Inquisitors wished. It was enough that any one person should say of another that he was a heretic, for him to be carried off to the Inquisition. The people were all expected and commanded to give up any of their friends who might be heretics; and they did this so much that no one could

trust even their near relations. Children were afraid of their parents; brothers of their sisters; wives of their husbands. All Roman Catholics were taught by their priests that it would be a sin to help a heretic because he happened to be their friend or relation, and also that it was better for the person himself that he should be punished in this life, than that he should die a heretic, which, it was thought, would bring him worse punishment in another life. The king found that most of the chief people in the country refused to have this terrible Inquisition brought into France. He did what he could to persuade them; and had some of the men who had resisted him most boldly thrown into prison.

A few days later he was joining in a tournament which was being held in honour of the marriages of his two daughters. It was held close to the walls of the Bastille, one of the prisons of Paris where these prisoners were shut up. It is even supposed that they might have seen what went on through their windows. The king was very fond of exercises of all sorts; and just as the sports were coming to an end, he asked a Scotch knight to tilt with him. By an accident the end of the knight's spear flew upwards into the king's face, lifted up the vizor which protected it, and went into his eye. The king fell forward on the neck of his horse, and was carried away by his squires. The best doctors in Europe came to attend him, but it was of no use; he died ten days afterwards. The Protestants, both in and out of prison, were glad of his death, though they soon found that they were no better off under his son's rule than they had been under his.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

FRANCIS II. (1559-1560).

HENRY left four sons, of whom the eldest was between fifteen and sixteen, and he was crowned king, and is known as Francis II. Besides being so young, he was in very bad health, and weak and foolish by nature, so that he was quite unable to govern for himself. But there were plenty of people ready to advise and help him, the only question was which of them would be able to make him listen to them. His mother, Catherine of Medicis, and his wife Mary Stuart, who had been betrothed to him when he was five years old, and married to him a short time before he became king, were the advisers to whom he listened most. Mary, as I have before said, was the niece of the Duke of Guise and his brother, and did whatever they wished. Catherine was also their friend, because she thought that they were stronger than any one else in the kingdom, and that it would be dangerous to have them for enemies. They persuaded her and the king to make them the chief ministers in the country; and it was settled that the Duke of Guise should have the management of everything belonging to war; that his brother the cardinal should be in charge of all the money and treasure of the kingdom; and that the other offices of government should

be taken away from the enemies of the Guises and given to men who were their friends.

Francis II. reigned only for one year. During that time France had no war with any other country, but there was a great deal of what was almost civil war in France itself. The great question to be settled was how the Huguenots were to be treated. The king had been brought up as a Roman Catholic, the Guises and some other great people in the country were Roman Catholics also, and most anxious to put a stop to heresy. But the number of Huguenots or heretics was growing greater every month. Many of the chief men in France had taken their side. At this time there were so many important people about the king, some his friends and some his enemies, that it is best to mention them all at once to prevent confusion.

There were three sets of brothers, of whom the most important were the Guises. The Duke of Guise was the eldest of this set, the Cardinal of Lorraine the second, and there were four others; they were all Roman Catholics, friends of the Pope and of Spain. The king's wife Mary was one of the same family. The constable Montmorency was also a Roman Catholic, and was secretly a friend of the King of Spain, though at first he was inclined to help the Protestants from a dislike to the great power of the Guises. On the Protestant side there were three brothers, of whom Coligny was one; his younger brother was a soldier, the eldest a cardinal; they were all three brave honest men, and the nephews of the constable. There were two other Huguenot brothers, the elder of whom was looked on as the head of all the Huguenots. These were the King of

Navarre and Louis, Prince of Condé. The King of Navarre was a weak, changeable man, and did his friends as much harm as good, for they could not depend upon him, as there was always a chance of his being won over by their enemies and suddenly leaving them when they wanted him most. His brother Condé was brave, ambitious, and warlike, but poor, without any place in the Government to make him a person of importance. These two were rivals of the Guises, who were always afraid lest Catherine of Medicis should make friends with them, and govern by their help instead of by that of the Guises.

Catherine was indeed very doubtful which side to take, and whose advice to listen to. At first the Guises had everything their own way, and a very bad way it was for the Huguenots. Laws were made to stop all meetings by day or night, and saying that every one who went to any should be put to death. This was to prevent the Huguenots from holding any services, which, as they had no churches, were of course only meetings either out of doors, or in the house of one of their own party. Every day some of them were thrown into prison or driven out of the country. Stories were invented about wicked things of all kinds which the Huguenots were supposed to do when they met together, and the common people were set against them as much as possible.

At the corners of the streets in Paris, little images of saints were set up, and whenever any one passed one of these without taking off his hat, or stopping to make a prayer to it, the people cried out that he was a heretic, and often attacked him or beat him, or carried him off to prison on the spot. I have said before that one of the

differences between Protestants or Huguenots and Roman Catholics was that the Roman Catholics thought it right to pray to saints and to the Virgin Mary, and the Protestants thought it wrong and foolish.

The Huguenot minister whom Henry II. had put into prison at the end of his reign, was tried and put to death.

The Guises had one great difficulty in governing the country, there was very little money in the treasury. They looked for ways of making more, and found some that were unjust; they persuaded the king to refuse to pay back money which had been lent to the kings who had gone before him, and which he was bound by law to pay. Francis gave orders that every one who had come to the court to ask for payment of debts, or for rewards of any kind, or for favours, should go away within twenty-four hours, and that if they did not go they should be hanged. Most of the people who had lent money to the kings were noblemen; they were very angry at being treated in this way, and knowing it was the Guises who had given the young king bad advice, they all joined together against them, and resolved to take away their power from them. In order to be strong enough to do this, they joined with the Huguenots, who had been still worse treated than they. The Huguenots had been taught that it was never right to resist a ruler, however bad or unjust he might be; but the nobles told them that the young king was their real ruler, and that what they wished to do was to set Francis free from the Guises, who were making him do whatever they liked, and treated him as a slave.

A leader was wanted; and the King of Navarre,

who was the most important man of the Huguenot party, might have seemed the right chief for them to have; but he had been so much frightened by a letter from the King of Spain, promising to help the young king and the Guises, that he did not dare to do anything against them. His brother Condé was bolder, and agreed to be their leader, but not openly. He was to have nothing to do with the rising up which they were planning, but when all had been done, the Guises made prisoners and the young king in the power of the Huguenots, Condé was to take the place which the Guises now held, to guard the young king, and advise him as to ruling the country. Condé, as he was not expected to take any share beforehand in what went on, was called the dumb captain, and a gentleman of the south of France was found to be captain in the meanwhile, and make necessary preparations. The plan was to take the town, in which were the king and the Guises, without fighting, if possible, if not, by force. All would be easy if the plot could be kept a secret, but among the many people to whom the secret had been told, was one who was at heart a Roman Catholic, and who went to the Guises and told them all he knew.

They at once took the king to a stronger town, which had a castle to defend it, and they arranged that soldiers should be brought into the country, and should be kept near to the town, ready to gather together at once as soon as they were sent for.

When the Huguenots at last made their attack, they found every one ready to meet them. Many of them were seized separately and carried off as prisoners, others were attacked by the king's soldiers; their leader fell in the

fight. Those who were left alive joined in one body and attacked the town openly, but they were driven back and could do nothing more than fly from their lines, followed by their cruel enemies. The Prince of Condé, when he saw they had not succeeded, saved his life by declaring that he had had nothing to do with them, and offering to fight any one who did not believe him. The Guises certainly did not believe him, but as they were afraid to do him any harm, they did not say so, and he went away unhurt, while every one who had had a share in the plot was hunted down by the soldiers, thrown into prison, and put to death without any trial.

It was a new thing in France to see men put to death without anything being declared in public as to their crime, their punishment, or even their names. Some were hanged, some drowned, some beheaded; and it explains the hatred many people had for the Guises, that they and the great people of the court, both men and women, used to look on at the executions as if they were a show. They always happened outside the palace windows, and the young king and his little brothers were brought to look on as well, and at last grew so well accustomed to the sight, that they laughed at it and thought it an amusement. The people had been told that the Huguenots had wished to take the king prisoner and to do harm to the Roman Catholics, while the Huguenots themselves declared they had only wished to get rid of the Guises. This rising up, which ended so badly, is called the Conspiracy of Amboise.

After this the Guises had as much power as ever, but Catherine, the king's mother, was now afraid of their

becoming so strong that she would be obliged to do all they wished, and she began to turn towards the Huguenots. She had for chancellor a wise and prudent man named l'Hôpital, who wished to make some plan by which the Huguenots and Catholics might both live peaceably in France without hurting one another; and he persuaded the queen-mother, as she was called, not to take the side of either, but to stay between the two, and try to prevent cruelty on either side. The Huguenots had long been asking that the States-General might meet to settle the question of religion. The Guises had at first disliked this idea, but at last they agreed to it, hoping that the States-General would decide as they wished, and the deputies were commanded to meet at Orleans in a few months' time.

The Guises had a plan to make use of this meeting to take prisoners their two enemies, the King of Navarre and his brother Louis of Condé. They were invited to come to the States-General, and as they had always specially asked that the council should be held, they did not like to refuse, though many people warned them that the Guises were not to be trusted, and that if they went to court some harm would probably happen to them. However, they went on boldly, and refused to take with them a body of horsemen who had come together on purpose to defend them. As soon as they arrived at Orleans, and while they were talking to the king in his private room, some captains of the guards came in and carried away Condé to prison. The King of Navarre was also treated as a prisoner, for he was forbidden to go out of his own house, and was not allowed to see any one without leave.

The Guises wished to do worse than this. They had arranged that the young Francis should have a meeting with the King of Navarre, and while they were talking give a signal to some murderers who would be waiting close at hand, and would put him to death at once; but when the moment came Francis could not make up his mind to give the signal, and the King of Navarre escaped for the time. Both brothers would most likely have been put to death, but that Francis II. was suddenly taken ill. He died after a few days' illness, and the great power of the Guises came to an end at his death, as their niece Mary would now no longer be Queen of France.

No one but the Guises had wished for the death of Condé and his brother, and they were at once both set free. Francis's death was a happy thing for the country, for the Guises had meant to make use of the States-General for getting rid of all their enemies. They had meant to ask every deputy to take an oath that they believed the Catholic faith, and those who would not do so were to lose all their titles and wealth, and to be burned as heretics. They would then have done the same all over France, taking the oath to every town and putting to death all who would not agree to take it. The consequence would probably have been a civil war, and indeed this was what came at last, but the death of Francis II. put it off for a while.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

CHARLES IX. (1560-1574).

FRANCIS II. was succeeded by his next brother, Charles IX. He was a boy of ten years old at Francis's death, and there was some question as to who should be regent for him till he was old enough to govern for himself. It had been settled by the French laws that the king was of age, that is, old enough to govern, when he was fourteen. Other people were not considered of age till they were much older—a gentleman's son not till he was twenty-one, and a poor man at twenty-five. There were four years still to come before Charles would be of age, and his mother, Catherine of Medicis, was declared regent. She was still inclined to be the friend of the Guises. She was in the same difficulties as before as to which side to take between the Roman Catholics and the Huguenots. She was afraid of either party becoming so strong that it would be able to take away the power from her, and so, for the time, she changed about, always turning against any one who seemed growing specially powerful in the country.

The King of Navarre and his brother Condé were set free after Francis's death, and the States-General of Orleans were opened directly afterwards. Many complaints were made of different matters that were going wrong in the

country, and when the council was over, an edict or order of the Government was sent out, explaining what was to be done in order to set right all that was wrong or in confusion. But some powerful people disliked the edict, and after all, it was never carried out. Many meetings were held at this time to consider the difficult question of the Huguenots; many laws were made about them; one that they might never have public services or preach, and another afterwards that they might preach in the open country, but not in towns. Once a few of the most distinguished Huguenot teachers met together with some of the chief Roman Catholic clergy and discussed their different beliefs. The little king came to hear this, though some people said he ought not to be allowed to listen to Huguenots. There were long speeches and explanations made on both sides, but of course neither party succeeded in persuading the other. There were many disturbances and quarrels in Paris, usually begun by the Roman Catholics, but carried on very cruelly on both sides. At last came one quarrel worse than usual, which brought on the beginning of the first of the civil wars about religion, which lasted so long in France.

The Duke of Guise, who had been into Germany, was on his way home, and was passing through a little town named Vassy, when he heard bells ringing, and, asking what it meant, was told that the Huguenots were holding a service. He had before this been angry with the people of Vassy, and he came this way with an army on purpose to be revenged on them.

Their service was being carried on in a barn, to which Guise, biting his beard as he always did when angry, led

his soldiers, who were all delighted at the idea of an attack on the Huguenots, and made them fire in at the windows. The Huguenots tried to shut the door, but could not; Guise's soldiers rushed in, their swords drawn, crying out, "Kill, kill." The Huguenots tried to defend themselves with stones, but their enemies were too strong for them. Some of them climbed on to the roof, and, if they were not seen and shot down by the soldiers, escaped; others were driven out of the church, and forced to pass between two lines of soldiers, who drove them on with cuts from their swords. Sixty people altogether were killed, and two hundred severely wounded. The Duchess of Guise, who was outside the town, and heard the cries of the Huguenots, sent a message asking her husband to spare at least the women, after which none of them were killed, but the attack lasted for an hour.

The Duke of Guise made himself hated all through France by this horrible cruelty. He always said, indeed, that he had tried to stop his soldiers, and that he had never intended that any Huguenots should be put to death. This he repeated on his death-bed, and it is possible that it may be true. But at any rate we do not hear of his punishing any of his soldiers, or doing anything afterwards to help the people of Vassy; and it seems most likely that he planned this attack beforehand, and was glad of the opportunity of showing his friends that he was still the worst enemy of the Protestants, and strong enough to do them serious harm.

That year the war began: both parties found friends abroad to help them. The Spanish king sent men to the Roman Catholics, Queen Elizabeth of England to the

Protestants. The Huguenots were successful to begin with, and took more than two hundred towns in Normandy and the other provinces in the north of France. The first of these towns, and one of the most important, was Orleans, the same from which Jeanne D'Arc drove the English in the reign of Charles VII. The brother of the Prince of Condé had taken one of the gates, and sent to Condé to come quickly and make himself master of the town. The prince, who was about eighteen miles away, at once set off, galloping at full speed with two thousand horsemen behind him: they went so fast that knapsacks, horses, and riders rolled on the ground, but the others only shouted with laughter, and rode on without staying to pick them up. The people who saw this body of soldiers sweeping by like a whirlwind, and behaving in this strange way, were much surprised, and asked if they were going to a battle of fools.

But in spite of this cheerful beginning the Huguenots did not find the war answer as well for them as they had hoped. The people of the country did not really agree with them, and when the Roman Catholics came to take back the towns that had been won by the Huguenots, they found no difficulty. The war was carried on most cruelly by the Roman Catholics. The Huguenots, whenever they made themselves masters of a town, ruined the churches, broke down the images, burned the pictures, destroyed bridges, statues, and other ornaments of the town; but the Roman Catholics did worse, for they turned all their anger against men and women. The townspeople were put to death in the street, the peasants were chased fiercely through the country; some were

tried before a court of justice and hanged, or broken on the wheel, one of the most cruel of punishments.

The leaders of the Huguenots were the Prince of Condé and Coligny, who was now made Admiral of France; those of the Roman Catholics, the Constable Montmorency, the Duke of Guise, and the man whom Guise had once wished to put to death, Antony, King of Navarre, the brother of Condé, who had now left the Huguenots, and become a Roman Catholic and a friend of Guise.

The Huguenot Coligny had been very unwilling to begin the war, but was persuaded to it by his wife, a Huguenot herself, who could not bear to see how the Roman Catholics ill-treated her friends, not even keeping the promises that had been made about Protestant services and sermons. Towards the end of the year in which the war began, the King of Navarre, while fighting outside a town named Rouen, was so severely wounded that he died a few days afterwards. His wife, Jeanne, was a Huguenot, and had brought up her only son, who now became King of Navarre, in the same faith. He was at this time a boy of nine years old, and was afterwards to become one of the greatest kings of France. Shortly after this there was a great battle, the first in this war. The Roman Catholics were the stronger in foot-soldiers, the Huguenots in horse soldiers, and the battle was long and for some time equal; but it was won at last by the Roman Catholics. The general on each side was taken prisoner—the Prince of Condé by the Roman Catholics, the Constable Montmorency by the Huguenots. This was the battle of Dreux.

Before the end of the year the Duke of Guise was murdered by a Huguenot enemy, as he was making ready

to attack Orleans. It was towards evening when the murderer followed him and two gentlemen who were riding with him, and standing close to him fired three pistol shots at the Duke of Guise and rode away. Guise fell forward on his horse's neck, and his companions carried him to a castle near at hand; they tried every means to cure him, but in vain, and he died, leaving a son to succeed him, who afterwards became almost as famous as his father. Francis of Guise had a splendid burial in Paris, while the murderer, who was caught and tried, was put to death in the most cruel manner.

The chief men on both sides were now either killed or in prison. The Huguenot prisoners were won over by Catherine, and agreed to make a treaty with her. Peace was signed, and it was settled that the Protestants might hold services in the house of any baron or nobleman, but public services only in certain towns in France; and as these towns were a good way apart, some of the peasants would have had to travel for fifty or sixty miles from their homes to reach one of them, and travelling in those times, when the war had only just stopped, was neither safe nor easy. Coligny told Condé that in agreeing to this peace he had ruined more Protestant churches than the war would have destroyed in ten years.

The young Charles was by this time fourteen, and was then declared to be grown up, and able to govern for himself.

X Catherine was no longer regent, but she was always her son's chief adviser, and was usually able to persuade him to do as she wished. Charles and his mother took a journey round France, in the course of which they paid a visit to

one of Charles's sisters, the young Queen of Spain, and made friends with the Duke of Alva, a terrible Spanish general, who was going into the Netherlands to punish the people for being Protestants, and for trying to set themselves free from the Spanish king.

He probably gave Charles advice which was very cruel towards the Huguenots.

A second war began three years afterwards, and lasted for six months. Another peace was made, and a third war broke out. It was impossible that there should be peace between two sets of people so nearly equally strong, and hating each other so much. Two great battles were fought in this third war; in one of them the Prince of Condé was killed. He had been hurt the day before by a fall from his horse, and in the course of the battle had his leg broken by a horse's kick, but he would not leave the field. He cried out to his friends, "This is the moment we have wished for. Remember how Louis of Condé entered into battle for Christ and his country," and then charged down upon his enemies with three hundred horsemen behind him. At first the enemy gave way before him, but his body of followers was so small that the Roman Catholics soon closed round them, and Condé's horse was killed and fell with the prince underneath it. Condé at last gave himself up to a Roman Catholic gentleman, but no sooner had he done so than another French captain came up, saw who he was, and shot him dead.

This was the battle of Jarnac. The Roman Catholics hoped that the Huguenots would lose all their spirit now Condé was dead, but they were disappointed. The Queen of Navarre, widow of Antony, arrived at the headquarters

of the Huguenots, bringing two boys, both named Henry, one the son of Condé, the other her own son, the young King of Navarre. She made a speech to the soldiers, and called on them to take her son for their chief. They agreed with loud shouts of joy, and the young Henry, who was then about fifteen years old, took an oath never to desert the cause of the Huguenots.

One more battle was fought, in which the Protestants were again defeated and lost a great number of men. It was at a place called Moncontour. Coligny was wounded, but, carried in a litter, was able to lead the retreat and to make plans for the future. One of his chief enemies, looking on at the slow march which none of the Roman Catholics dared to disturb, said, in despair at the courage of the Huguenots, "We must make peace." Catherine thought the same.

It was the Protestants who were not willing to make peace, but the arrangements that at last were made were better for the Huguenots than those of either of the two other peaces there had already been in this war. The Protestants were allowed to hold services, they were to have employment and offices like the Roman Catholics, and they had four strong towns given up to them as an assurance that the king would keep his word. This was the end of the first division of the war.

The king, Charles IX., was now about twenty years old. He was a weak, delicate young man, and though he had strong, violent feelings, and was always ready to insist upon having his own way, his mother, Catherine of Medicis, was usually able to persuade him to do what she wished, and make him think that what she proposed was

really his own idea. She loved his next brother Henry, a boy of sixteen, much better than Charles, and had put him at the head of the army against the Roman Catholics, while she never would allow the king to join in the war at all, so that Henry gained all the glory of the two last victories which the Roman Catholics had won. Charles was angry with his mother and brother, and began for the first time to think of making friends with his chief Huguenot subjects.

The admiral, Coligny, was invited to court, and talked to the young king of the great deeds that might be done in the Netherlands by helping the people there who were rising up against Philip II., King of Spain. Philip was the enemy of all Protestants, and he was also the enemy of France; and Coligny wished that Charles should send him with an army to fight on the side of the Netherlanders. The king and his Huguenot lords would then be friends, and all the Huguenots of France, pleased at seeing their king help men who believed much the same as they did, would become Charles's loyal subjects. Charles himself was pleased at the idea, for he had always wished to have some opportunity of making himself famous as a soldier.

Catherine was much vexed when she found that Coligny was becoming so great a friend of the king's. She was afraid that he would try to set her son against her, and she determined that she must in some way get rid of the admiral. She consulted with the young Duke of Guise and his relations, and with her own favourite son, Henry, Duke of Anjou. A man was hired, who shot at the admiral from a window as he was walking from the Louvre

to his own house, reading a paper. The ball shot off one of the fingers of his right hand, and went into his left arm. Coligny had presence of mind enough to point with his wounded hand to the window from which the shot had come, and while some of his friends helped him to his house, and others went to tell the king what had happened, the rest rushed to the house where the murderer had been hidden, beat open the door, and searched for him everywhere, but in vain. They found the gun still smoking, but no other sign of him. He had had a horse waiting at the door, upon which he had made his escape, and he could never be caught.

The king was much distressed when he heard of this. He went to see the admiral as he lay in bed, swore to punish the enemies who had plotted against him, and was very angry with the Guises, whom he rightly suspected of having had something to do with the matter. But Catherine had in her mind a still more wicked plan than that of putting the admiral to death; and the Guises and her son Henry agreed to it. It was nothing less than what had been proposed but not carried out once before—on a particular night to put to death all the Huguenots in Paris and in the other chief towns of France.

She thought that in this way she should get rid at least of some of her enemies, and that if the Protestants resisted, and some of the Roman Catholic lords, even the Guises, were killed in the struggle, she should get rid of still more. The king was told that the Huguenots had made a plot to rise up against the Government, and that it was necessary to put the admiral at least to death to prevent them from doing so. His mother told him this again

and again, till the weak young man, who might have known how deceitful and treacherous she was, believed her, fell into a state of terror, and was anxious to have the deed done at once.

That afternoon he had been with the admiral, talking to him as a son might to a father, while Catherine stood in the room watching and longing to stop their conversation. At last Coligny made the king stoop down to him, and said some words in a low tone that Catherine could not hear. Then she had been able to bear it no longer, and had called away her son, saying the admiral was too ill to be allowed to talk any more. After so much friendliness between them, Charles was naturally much shocked at the idea of this good man being murdered in his bed, and for some time refused his mother and brother leave to touch him. But one evening, when they had been talking to him for some time in the same way, he suddenly changed his mind, crying out in a sort of wild passion that since they thought it good, the admiral should die; but that every Huguenot in France should die too, lest one should be left to reproach him afterwards. Sunday the 24th of August, St. Bartholomew's Day, was the one fixed upon; a bell was to ring at midnight, and then the massacre or killing was to begin.

The king spent the day working at a blacksmith's forge, which he had set up to amuse himself. Catherine, Henry of Anjou, and the Guises, made everything ready for their horrible plan. The night came; the king drew back at the thought of what was to happen, and wished to stop everything, but the queen urged him on.

She was so much afraid of his changing his mind again,

that she made Guise set out from the palace two hours earlier than had been arranged. When the clock struck ten the horrible work began all over Paris. The Roman Catholics rushed in upon the helpless Protestants, many of whom were asleep in their beds, and killed them by stabbing, shooting, or beating out their brains. Men, women, and children were dragged through the streets and thrown into the river. Houses were burned, bells rang to call together more and more enemies against the unfortunate Protestants. Even children were so much excited by the dreadful sights to be seen in the streets, that they went to hunt for Protestant babies, and did their best to put them to death.

The murderers went to Coligny's house, where Guise stayed in the courtyard and sent in one of his servants, who found the admiral asleep. Coligny woke, asked what was wanted, and got out of his bed as calmly as usual. For a moment the murderer was afraid and hung back; but a friend came up, and together they attacked the admiral, killed him, and threw his body out of the window to the Duke of Guise, who was waiting below.

Some Huguenots had escaped by getting on horseback before the murderers reached their part of the town, and fleeing from the city; none of those who stayed were left alive. It is said that when day came the king himself stood at the window of his palace, firing a long gun at the fleeing Huguenots, and shouting, "Kill, kill." This unfortunate young man seems to have been in a state almost like madness at this time, and is not so much to blame for what had happened as his mother, his brother, and the Guises, though it is sad to think that they never could have done as they

did if he had gone on refusing his leave, or had given warning to the admiral. About two thousand people were killed in one day and night. Orders had been sent to the governors of the other chief towns of France to put to death all the Huguenots, as had been done in Paris. A few governors bravely refused, saying they were soldiers, not murderers ; many others obeyed.

But after all Catherine was disappointed ; the Huguenots, though so many had died, were not crushed yet ; there was still another war, and by the peace at the end of it, the Huguenots gained more freedom than they had ever had before in France. Charles IX. died two years after the massacre of St. Bartholomew, in deep distress at the thoughts of that dreadful night and day, which were always in his mind. His last words were that he was glad he left no male child to be king after him.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

HENRY III. (1574-1589).

WHEN Charles was dead, his next brother Henry, who had been Duke of Anjou, became king. He was Catherine's favourite son, and she had managed only a few months before to have him chosen King of Poland. Messengers were now sent to tell him of his brother's death, and call him back to France. Catherine hoped it might be arranged that her fourth and youngest son, who was now just growing up, should be King of Poland in Henry's place. It had been foretold to her when she was young, that all her sons should be kings, and as this had now come true with three of them, she was anxious to see it fulfilled for the last.

However, far from wishing for any other king, the Poles refused to let Henry go. They were in danger from their enemies the Turks, and wanted their king to stay and protect them. But Henry liked France better than Poland, and soon managed to leave the Polish capital by night, taking with him some precious jewels belonging to the crown, and to make his way into Austria. The Poles, when they found that he was gone, sent messengers to try and stop him, but in vain; they had to give it up at last, and choose another king. He was probably a better man than Henry; he could hardly have been a worse.

Henry went on into Italy, and there spent his time in amusing himself, showing that it was no wish to begin his duties as king that had made him hurry away from the Poles. He did not arrive in France for three months, and meanwhile his mother governed in his name.

The question about religion in France was as far as ever from being settled. War followed war, and each time that peace was made the Huguenots had rather more promised to them than before; but the promises were usually not kept, or kept only in the parts of France where the Huguenots were the stronger. The natural leaders on the Huguenots' side were the two young princes whom Jane of Navarre had presented to the people after her husband died—her own son, Henry of Navarre, and his cousin, Henry of Condé.

They were now young men; Henry of Navarre, the elder of the two, was twenty-one, almost as old as the new King of France. He had at first agreed to live at the court with his wife, who was the king's sister, amusing himself, and seeming to be good friends with Charles while he lived, and afterwards with Henry. But he felt more and more clearly that this was not the right place for him. He remembered his mother's teaching and the death of the Admiral Coligny, his friend, and at last he resolved to leave the court for ever. He made ready secretly, so that the king might not find out what he had planned, and stop him in any way. He succeeded in escaping one night, and riding to a place many miles away, he gathered his friends round him, and put himself at the head of the Huguenots.

There were some people in France who did not care

much about the difference between Protestants and Roman Catholics, who, though they were Roman Catholics themselves, were chiefly anxious that France should be at peace, and that the Pope should lose all his unlawful power in the country. This body of people joined themselves with the Huguenots, who thus became much stronger than they had been before. At the head of the Roman Catholic party was the king, who hated the Huguenots, and who was always, after he had arrived in France, doing different strange things to show his subjects how good a Roman Catholic he was. One of his strange habits was to walk through the streets with a scourge, singing hymns and beating himself till his shoulders bled. This was done by many Roman Catholics of the time as a penance or punishment which they gave themselves for their sins; and it was thought to be a very good deed and pleasing to God. The people were therefore pleased to see the king doing it.

At other times he amused himself with balls and entertainments, or childish games; he spent a great deal of time in playing with some little dogs of a particular kind of which he was very fond. The other leader of the Roman Catholics was Henry of Guise, the son of the Duke of Guise, who had been so powerful in the reigns of Charles IX. and Francis II. Henry of Guise was now just grown up, and was as clever and fond of power as his father had been. He despised the king, and had great hopes of being able to make himself the most powerful man in the country, and perhaps, if Henry died without sons, succeeding him on the throne. He and his Roman Catholic friends arranged what they called a League, and

tried to persuade all the Roman Catholics in the country to belong to it. They were all to join themselves together in a league or body of friends, and all to make certain promises; one chief promise was to defend the Roman Catholic faith; another, to obey the person who would be chosen by the League to be their head; another, to help each other against any one who might attack or resist them, whoever it might be. The king was the person secretly meant by this, though his name was not mentioned, but every one who belonged to the League knew that if ever there was a war between the king and the Guises, they would be expected to help the Guises. Many people took an oath to join the League and be faithful to it for ever. As soon as it was made, Guise, at the head of it, went to war with the Protestants.

Both sides had asked King Henry to call together the States-General, and see if they could make any arrangement for settling the religious dispute. He agreed, being in want of money, and hoping to persuade the deputies to give him some, and the States met together at Blois. The Huguenots would not be present, nor send any deputies, and the Roman Catholics who came were not very friendly to the king. He had hoped that they would propose to him some severe means of keeping the Huguenots quiet; but there was among the deputies one wise and good man, who, though a Roman Catholic himself, persuaded many of the others that it was better there should be two ways of thinking about religion in the country than that the civil wars which had lasted so long should go on. All the deputies agreed in refusing money to the king, who put an end to the sitting of the States in

great disappointment, and everything went on as it had done before. The leaders of the League were also disappointed at finding that they had not more friends, for they had hoped that all the deputies would join with them in wishing to persecute the Huguenots.

One of the troubles of Henry III. was that his brother, who was now called Duke of Anjou, as he had been himself, was his enemy, and might at any time join the Huguenots against him. The duke had always been a friend to the Huguenot leaders, and he had had hopes at one time of marrying Elizabeth, Queen of England; at another time he had thought of being King of the Netherlands.

He marched into the Netherlands, pretending he was going to help the people there in their struggle against Philip II., but he really only tried to make himself master of a few towns and keep them for his own, leaving the rest of the country to help itself as best it might. He did not manage to take the towns, and went back again into France, where he soon after died, to the relief of his brother.

Henry had now no near relation left to be king after him, no brother and no son. The two people for whom he cared most in the world were two favourites, to whom he gave all kinds of posts and honours, and for whom he collected together money by taxing his people almost more than they could bear. They had both been made dukes, and the king arranged that they should marry two of the sisters of the queen, in order that they might be grander than any of the other lords. But the person who would now be king after Henry III. was his enemy, the Hugue-

not, Henry of Navarre, who was showing himself to be a wiser and a greater man than he had at first seemed likely to be.

He had learned much from his troubles, and had become thoughtful and prudent, as well as brave and active. After the massacre of St. Bartholomew, when he was living at the French court, and had married the king's sister, he had been persuaded to become a Roman Catholic, and had been so till he had gone to put himself at the head of the Huguenot army. He had then declared himself a Huguenot, but he had always treated the Roman Catholics with great kindness, and many people thought that he did not really much prefer either religion to the other. The king wrote to him to ask whether, now that he seemed likely soon to become king of France, he would not become a Roman Catholic. He entirely refused. The Roman Catholics were much distressed at the idea of having a Huguenot king when Henry should die. Though he was only twenty-three, he was so weak and delicate that his subjects always thought and spoke of him as likely to die at any time. No such thing had ever been known as a Protestant King of France, and people said that such a thing could not lawfully be. They all became eager again to join the League, which had been put an end to by one of the treaties between Henry and his subjects. The oath was again sent all over the country, and those who swore it again became bound to help the Duke of Guise and his friends against any one in France who should resist them. †

The King of Spain, Philip II., made a treaty with the Duke of Guise, and promised to send him help ; but he was

really more anxious that there should be war in France than that either party should succeed in conquering the other. He wanted the French to be busy fighting, so as not to attend to him, while he went to attack the English with his Invincible Armada, which he did just at this time. There is no need for me to say how he succeeded.

Henry III. was frightened when he saw Guise so strong, and made a treaty with him, promising to join him against the Huguenots. When Henry of Navarre heard of this, he sat up all one night, thinking of the danger in which the Huguenots were, and trying to invent some means of safety or help for them. In the morning he found that half his moustache had turned white from trouble and thought.

After this began a war called the War of the Three Henries. These were King Henry III., Henry of Navarre, and Henry, Duke of Guise. The King of Navarre and the Duke of Guise were real enemies, King Henry was on the side of neither. He was afraid of Guise, and he hated the Huguenots. He called himself the friend of the League, but always drew back from giving it any real help. He had, however, made an edict, that is an order or command, that the Huguenots should be forbidden to hold services in France, that all their ministers and all Huguenots who refused to become Roman Catholics, should leave the country within six months. Hundreds of poor people left their homes and fled out of France, men, women, and children, taking with them what goods they could carry. Many of the king's ministers warned him in vain of the folly and wickedness of thus driving away his subjects.

Henry of Navarre had asked for help from the Pro-

testants of Germany, and a body of soldiers were on their way to him at this time, but Guise and his army were between the Huguenots and their friends, and they found it impossible to join. Henry of Navarre met the royal army, commanded by one of the king's two favourites, a brave rash young man. A battle was fought, in which Henry's grave old Huguenots, who began the fight by kneeling down and saying a prayer, and sang a hymn as they marched against their enemies, soon had the better of the young duke's brave but thoughtless soldiers, who had most of them never been in battle before. The Duke was killed, and this was the first victory of the King of Navarre. It made the Protestants hopeful for the time, but no good came to them from it.

Soon after, the Duke of Guise marched against the army of German Protestants, and fought a great battle against them, in which they were completely beaten and so much discouraged that those of them who were left alive went away home at once. The people of the country rose up against them as they passed, and put to death any who strayed away from the main body. The French Protestants were thus left with no hope except in the courage of their leader, and in the dislike which they knew the king had for the Duke of Guise. Guise's friends admired him more than ever after his victory over the Germans, and it was always in his mind that perhaps some day he might manage to make himself king instead of Henry III., whom everybody despised. Even if he were not really king, he had hopes of being able to take for himself all the real power in the country, and while he was called constable or admiral, or was supposed merely to hold some

other great office, to be able to make King Henry do whatever he wished. He had made a treaty with the King of Spain, who promised help, but did not give him much, being very busy about his own affairs.

Guise resolved to go to Paris and see how the people would receive him. He told his friends of his plan, but it was not known by the king or the queen's mother Catherine, who was still alive, or by the common people in Paris. He arrived with very few followers, and at first rode through the street with his face hidden in his cloak, so that no one knew him, but at last one of his friends pulled off his hat as if in joke, and told him it was time to show himself. He was then known at once, and all the people came rushing into the streets to look at him. They treated him as a hero, a conqueror, almost as a saint; they pressed round to touch him, they tried to kiss his cloak; ladies threw down flowers upon him from high windows, and cries of "Long live Guise!" rolled from street to street. The duke went to the house of old Queen Catherine, and she took him to see the king. Henry was not at all delighted at the way in which Guise had been received, and had serious thoughts of having him murdered when he came to the palace; but was persuaded by his ministers not to do what would have been both so wrong and so foolish.

The next day the king brought some troops into Paris, at which all the citizens rose up in defence of Guise, and built what they called barricades across the streets. These were made by stretching chains across a street and piling up behind them barrels, sand, paving-stones, and whatever would make a firm wall. Behind each barricade stood

men ready with muskets, others at the windows of the houses were also armed, ready to fire into the streets. Women were also at the windows armed like the men. This day was called the Day of the Barricades. After all, the town was not attacked, the king went away from Paris, and left the Duke of Guise there in triumph. It is said that when the king left Paris, he swore never to come back there but by a breach, that is, through a hole in the wall of a town made in battle.

The king was so weak and uncertain that there did not seem much chance of his ever coming back to his capital. Though he now looked upon the Duke of Guise as his worst enemy, he would not join with the King of Navarre against him; in fact, he did all that Guise wished, being afraid to refuse him anything. The States-General were called together at Blois, the town where the king was staying. No deputies dared to go there who were not members of the League and friends of Guise, and they hoped to have everything their own way, and make the king agree to whatever they liked. They made him agree to so much, that at last he could bear it no longer, and not having courage or strength to resist the Duke of Guise openly, he resolved to murder him, and so free himself from the man he now hated and feared more than any one else.

Some of his friends, whose help he first asked, refused to commit the murder for him, saying they were not executioners, but others were found at last, who were willing to undertake the business.

The duke had many warnings sent him by his friends, but he took no notice of them. The day before Christmas

Day he went as usual to the king's castle, where a council was to be held. A message came asking the duke to go into a private room to speak to the king. As soon as he was in the room, the murderers fell upon him, stabbed him, and in spite of his struggles succeeded in killing him before his brother and some other friends, who from their council chamber heard sounds of what was going on, could come to his help. The brother was also thrown into prison and afterwards put to death.

King Henry came to look at the body of his dead enemy, and was full of pride and pleasure at his success. He went to tell the news to his mother Catherine, who was ill in bed, and was much surprised to hear of the death of the man who had been almost the most important person in France. She warned Henry to take care that now he had killed the King of Paris, as Guise was called, he did not himself become the king of nothing. Catherine died soon after this, cared for by no one, not even her son, for whom she had done so much, though she had turned even against him at the end of her life.

When Guise was dead, Henry III. did the only thing that could now be of use to him, and made peace with the King of Navarre. Together they were too strong for the party of the League, who now had for their leader a brother of the Duke of Guise. The two kings marched towards Paris, where they believed most of the townspeople would be ready to take their side. Some of the towns of France gave themselves up to the king, others to the Duke of Guise.

But the enemies of the king used the same means against him that he had used against others. Many of the

French monks, especially a particular order, called the Jesuits, who had lately become of great importance in France, taught that it might at times be right to do wrong things, that good might come of it; in particular, that it might be a duty to kill bad people. A friar, who had heard this teaching, and who was known to his friends as half mad, had made up his mind to kill the king. He asked advice from a priest, who said the idea was a good one, and encouraged him in it. He walked to the camp of the king, which was outside Paris, at a village named St. Cloud, and was allowed to go into his presence with a letter which he pretended he wished to deliver. While the king was reading it the friar went close up to him, saying that he wished to speak to him alone, and suddenly stabbed him with a long knife which he had brought in hidden in his coat sleeve. The king cried out, "Ah! bad monk, he has killed me;" drew the knife from his own body, and struck the murderer in the face. The courtiers rushed upon him and killed him. It was thought at first that the king's wound was not dangerous; but soon it became worse and worse. Henry III. died that evening, eight months after the murder of the Duke of Guise. Of all the bad kings of France he may be said to have been the worst; he was both wicked and weak, and his reign came at a time when his wickedness and weakness were able to do more mischief in the country than might have come from them at a less disturbed time.

CHAPTER XL

HENRY IV. (1589-1610).

WHEN Henry III. was dying, he sent for the King of Navarre, and in his last hour called upon all his subjects who were with him to take an oath to Henry, declaring that he should be their next king. They all took the oath, but as soon as the king was dead, it became clear that many of them had no thoughts of keeping their promise. When Henry went into the room where the dead body of the king was lying, he found the courtiers and servants of Henry III. all standing together in groups, with their fists clenched, and talking to each other in low voices, their sentences often ending with, "Sooner die a thousand deaths." This was not encouraging for him, and what happened afterwards had all the same meaning.

In Paris, the people were filled with joy on hearing of the death of the king; nothing was heard in the streets but songs and laughter, fireworks were let off, and the citizens made feasts for each other in the streets. Clement, the murderer, was spoken of as a saint; pictures and busts of him were put up in the houses of many of the Parisians, and even in the churches and on altars. The people who showed so much delight were all friends of the Guises, who felt that now the death of the great duke was

750
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



Wagner & Debes' Geog. Instab. Leipzig.

London, Macmillan & Co.

revenged. Henry III. being no longer king, the next thing that the Guises were anxious about was to prevent Henry of Navarre from succeeding him. The head of the family was now a brother of Henry of Guise, called the Duke of Mayenne; Guise had left a son who was still a child, so young as to be of no importance to his party.

Mayenne had some hopes that one of his family might be chosen as king by the Roman Catholics, instead of the heretic Henry, and there were many other people who hoped the same thing for themselves or their friends. The King of Spain, for one, said he had a right to the crown because he had married the sister of the three last kings; and a duke, who had married another sister of the same kings, also claimed the crown, but was said to have less right to it than Philip, because his wife was the younger sister of Philip's wife. The Guises chose out one of their relations who was old and weak, and would do nothing but what pleased them, and called him King Charles X. The King of Spain thought it best for the present to join with the Guises and help them as much as possible, so as to defeat completely the King of Navarre, after which he hoped to be able to arrange everything with the Roman Catholics in his own way. Therefore he sent men and money to the Duke of Mayenne.

From this time, the people who were friends both of the Leaguers and of Philip of Spain were said to belong to the Union, because the two parties were joined or united together. Many Frenchmen, who cared for their country more than for either the old or the new religion, took the side of Henry, because his enemies were the friends of the

Spaniards, and they did not like to think of Philip even proposing to be King of France. Some of the Roman Catholic nobles, really wishing to make friends with Henry, sent to ask him again to become a Roman Catholic, or, if he would not do so at once, to allow himself to be taught by some of the Roman Catholic nobles, and see whether he would not come to agree with them as to which was the right religion. Henry replied that they could not expect him to change so suddenly, but that he would at some future time hold a council on the subject, and consider what it was best to do; and that he would always treat the Roman Catholics well.

Some years later Henry made up his mind to change his religion and become a Roman Catholic, as so many of his subjects wished. He was too proud to do it as soon as his subjects chose to ask it of him, but he saw by degrees, as the civil war went on for year after year, that he should never come to be king, and there would never be peace in France, by any other means. There were plenty of reasons to be given for his change. The war was the worst thing there could be for France; no one could live happily or prosperously in the country while it lasted; the poor people were suffering a great deal, and Henry, while he was taken up with fighting, was not able to do anything for the help of any of his subjects, and, while he had no power over the Roman Catholics, was not able to help the Protestants.

But what is wrong can never be made right, however much good may come from it; and it is wrong for a man to say he believes what he does not believe, and to pretend to think good what he really thinks bad. Nothing

can ever make such conduct right, and many of the greatest and best men who have lived have died and suffered pain and trouble of every sort sooner than make a change such as Henry made. But it is by no means certain what Henry did really believe, and whether it were much more untrue for him to call himself a Roman Catholic than to call himself a Protestant. He would have been a greater and no doubt a better man than he was, if he had thought more about serious matters, made up his mind what he believed, and told the truth about it honestly and openly; but as it was, I do not think that what he did was really so bad as it at first seems to be.

It should be said that several of his Protestant friends and ministers advised him to turn Roman Catholic for his good and the good of the country.

In Henry IV. good and bad qualities were joined together as they are in every other man, but there was far more good in him than there had been for many reigns in the French kings. He had been brought up in a way most unlike that in which young princes are usually treated. He ran about with the village boys bareheaded and barefooted, always out of doors, both in summer and winter; when he grew strong enough he used sometimes to work in the fields as if he had been one of them, and to feed on the coarse bread which they ate. He learned to be bold, active, and vigorous, and grew up strong and healthy. All this was of great use to him when his wars began, and he and his army had to go through many hardships and difficulties. Henry was lively, gay, and very kind and friendly to his soldiers and servants, talking to

them, finding out what they wanted, and whether there were anything he could do for them. Every one who met him was delighted by his manners, rich and poor alike.

His first idea, when he found he must resist the Union by war, was to make himself master of Paris; but this he found he was not strong enough to do. The Duke of Mayenne had called together an army of his friends, who were meeting in the capital, and Henry, who had been encamped with his soldiers outside the walls, was obliged to give up all hopes for the present of winning Paris, and led his men into the north of France, hoping that Mayenne would follow him there. He was disappointed, however, when Mayenne arrived with a much larger army than Henry had expected. A great battle was fought between them at a place named Arques, where Henry and his chief general had themselves worked as engineers, blocking up roads by which they could be attacked, and putting up defences on all sides. Their men, seeing them at work themselves, had helped them eagerly.

At the beginning of the battle both armies were partly successful, but at last Henry's soldiers began to give way. Henry in despair cried out—"Are there not fifty gentlemen to be found in France ready to die with their king?" He then turned to the Protestant minister of the camp, and bade him sing the psalm. The psalm was one which was always sung by the Huguenots in battle, and which had been heard when they won some of their most famous victories. When the Huguenots heard this, and all the soldiers saw Henry at their head, all their usual courage came back, and as Mayenne sent no help to his troops,

Henry soon saw his enemies driven backwards, and at last quite out of the camp. Mayenne was not strong enough to attack him again.

The fighting went on at times all through the end of that year and the beginning of the next. The next year was fought the battle which, of all those gained by Henry, is the one of which people thought and talked most, and where he won the most glory for himself. It was at Ivry, which is, like Arques, in the north part of France. The king, as usual, had many fewer men than his enemies; still he was on this day as cheerful and gay as was usual with him in times of danger, and he went about among the men talking to them, and saying all he could to raise their spirits and give them hope for the battle. There is a story told of him this day, which shows some of the good qualities for which he was so much beloved by his subjects.

He had with him a German officer, named Schomberg, commanding a body of cavalry. A few days before, this officer had asked the king for money for the troops, and Henry, who had but little money to spare, and was vexed at being asked for more, hastily answered that no man of honour ever asked for money on the eve of a battle. On the day of the battle Henry remembered this speech, which he knew to have been unjust, as well as unkind, and going to Schomberg's tent, he said to him, "M. de Schomberg, I offended you the other day; this may be the last day of my life, and I do not wish to carry away with me the honour of a gentleman. I know your courage and your merit. Forgive me, and embrace me." The colonel answered, "Sire, it is true that your majesty wounded me

the other day, and now you kill me, for the honour you do me obliges me to die in your service."

A king who knew when he had been wrong, still more, who would own it, was something to which the French in those days had long been unused.

Just before the fight began the king made a short speech to his men. He told them, if their flags should be lost in the battle, to follow the white plume of peacock's feathers in his helmet. His horse was adorned in the same way, that they might be easily seen and known by both friends and enemies. The battle was fierce and short. It ended in the victory of King Henry, who escaped unhurt, though he had plunged so far into the thickest of the fight that, for about a quarter of an hour, no one knew if he were alive or dead. Henry received kindly all the French who submitted to him. "Give quarter to the French," he said to his men; "save the French nobles, and down with the foreigners."

Soon after this battle Henry marched to Paris. His great wish was to make himself master of the capital, but he soon found that he was still much too weak to have any chance against so strong a city. The people of Paris, who had always been friendly to the Guises, were now such bitter enemies to Henry IV., that some of them would sooner have given themselves up to Spain than submit to him, and would rather have had Philip II., one of the most cruel and hard-hearted men that ever lived, to reign over them, than the heretic king. Philip seriously hoped at one time to make himself King of France, for now the king whom the Guises had made for themselves, and called Charles X., was dead.

Henry besieged the city closely, and soon the people began to suffer terribly from hunger. When they had finished all the food they had stored up in the town, they began to eat cats, dogs, asses, rats, and at last almost anything that could be swallowed, even little balls of clay and slate mixed up with water. It is said that the only thing to be had cheap in Paris was sermons, for the clergy of the League preached constantly, probably about the virtues of the Guises and all the Roman Catholics, and the sins of Henry. The Spanish Ambassador, who was in Paris, gave away food and money, and did all he could to prevent the people from yielding themselves up to Henry. Once when a crowd of people gathered together outside his palace, and he threw them out some coins, they all cried with one voice, "No more money; give us bread!" After this he had great cauldrons set up at the corners of the streets, and gave away horse and donkey flesh, and broth made of oats and bran.

But even such food as this was used up at last. Six thousand of the old and weak people of Paris were driven out of the town, and Henry allowed them to pass through his army and escape in safety. The Duke of Mayenne, to whom letter after letter was sent from Paris, made many promises of help, and at last the King of Spain sent orders to his general in the Netherlands to go with a large army to the help of the Leaguers. This he did just as the Parisians were coming to the end of the very last food they could by any means provide. He marched up with a large army outside the army of Henry, who, knowing that he could not hope to resist successfully, broke up his camp; and one morning the people of Paris found their enemies

gone, their city saved, and countless strings of waggons bringing in provisions by every road. It is said that a hundred thousand people died of hunger in this siege.

For another year Henry lived in the same kind of way, marching about in the north part of France, taking here and there a town, or losing one ; and making himself more and more beloved by the people of the country, and by all his friends, for his courage, kindness, and generosity. Meanwhile his enemies quarrelled among themselves ; they did not know whom to set up for their king, now that the man they had called Charles X. was dead.

Their quarrelling made people more and more inclined to wish for Henry to be their king, and it seemed as if, were he only a Roman Catholic, the greater number of the French people would be on his side. He asked advice of many of his chief friends, in particular of one who was a Protestant, the Duke of Sully, of whom I shall speak in the next chapter. They advised him to make the change, thinking that he would never be king at all until he did so. He made up his mind at last ; had the Roman Catholic religion fully explained to him by one of his archbishops, wrote a declaration that he believed in the Roman Catholic faith, and the next Sunday heard mass, and was solemnly received into the church by one of his archbishops. The next year he was crowned at Chartres, and from that time was treated by both friends and enemies as the rightful King of France.

CHAPTER XLI.

HENRY IV.—(*continued*).

1598-1610.

As soon as Henry was on the throne as a Roman Catholic king, one town after another gave itself up to him. Towards the end of the year even Paris came over to his side; and he went to hear mass, which is the Roman Catholic service, in Nôtre Dame, or Our Lady, one of the most beautiful churches in Paris. This was a great event, and the people in the streets looked on with much interest and cries of "Long live the king!" The Spanish troops went away out of the capital the same day. Henry saw them pass out by one of the gates with such pleasure that he could hardly control himself. "I am beside myself," he said to some one who came to talk to him of business at his palace; "I do not know what you are saying or what I am answering."

From this time Henry's reign may be said to have begun; his life of constant fighting was now over, and though he still had other wars before him, yet they did not after this take up all his time so that he could think of nothing else. The towns all over France went on giving themselves up to him; and he made peace separately with each of his chief enemies, making them all presents of money or land, or giving them anything else they specially wanted,

so that they might be his friends for the future. But with the Spanish king Henry knew he could never be friends. There had been no declared war between them, but Philip had helped Henry's subjects against him privately ever since the death of Henry III., and now would never treat Henry as king, but was trying to make some plan by which his own daughter might be Queen of France.

Henry saw that his reign would never be peaceful till Philip's interference was stopped, and nothing would put an end to it but war. He therefore declared war against Spain, and it began at once; it lasted for three years, and then peace was made, with an agreement that the Spaniards should give back to the French all that they had won in the war, so that, on the whole, Henry had been successful.

He had had much to do and to think of besides the war. There were continual troubles still in France between the Protestants and Roman Catholics, though, now that the king was a sincere friend of both, there was no more fear of such troubles and horrors as there had been under Catherine of Medicis and her sons.

King Henry was always trying to make the Roman Catholics his friends, by giving them places and favours of all kinds; and to the Huguenots, who he knew were his friends already, he gave less. This made the Huguenots very angry, and they said that he was ungrateful to his old friends and servants who had stood by him in his troubles, and helped him to win his crown. They did not see how great his difficulties were, and perhaps did not enough consider how important it was for them that he should please the Roman Catholics, so as to be able to keep himself on the throne and help the Huguenots as he was doing.

They could never have expected such a friend in another Roman Catholic king ; still, what they said seems to have had a great deal of truth in it. Kind and charming in his manners to every one, both friends and enemies, the king cared little for any one who was not close at hand, and if his friends were away from him or died, soon left off thinking about them. He treated all his old enemies very generously, as soon as they seemed to wish to be his friends. The Duke of Mayenne, who had been the head of them all, came over to Henry's side soon after the Pope had sent his absolution or solemn forgiveness to the king for having been a heretic. He had refused to grant this for some time, and when he did grant it, many of the Catholics came over at once to Henry, the Duke of Mayenne among them.

The first time that the king met with the duke, he was walking in a park with his chief minister, the Duke of Sully. Mayenne came up, and falling on one knee, promised fidelity to Henry. Henry received him very kindly, and asked him to come and see some new improvements which he had made in the park. He then set off walking so fast that Mayenne, who was fat and lame, could hardly keep up with him. He puffed and panted, till at last the king stopped and asked whether he were going too fast. Mayenne answered that he was almost dead, at which Henry clapped him on the shoulder and said, cheerfully, "That, my friend, is all the vengeance I shall ever take upon you ;" and so sent him away.

Of all the king's friends, old or new, the most important for himself and France was the minister with whom he had been walking when this meeting with May-

enne happened, the Duke of Sully. This great man was a Protestant; he had been a servant of Henry in the old times of trouble and war, and he stayed with him after he had become king, and after the change of religion which made many of his Protestant friends leave him.

Sully's family name was Bethune; he was made Duke of Sully by the king, and it is the name by which he is usually known. He was a proud man, harsh and vain, but a faithful friend of Henry, working always for his good and the welfare of France; industrious and honest. In particular, he understood more about money than any other Frenchman of that time.

Henry was so poor before he was crowned king, that he sometimes had to invite himself to dinner with one of his officers, because he had no food in his larder. After he was master of Paris and of the royal treasure, it was not very much better. The people of the country had been made poor by the wars, and were not able to pay so many as usual of the taxes upon which the king depended for money, but still they paid quite enough for Henry to have been tolerably well off, if the money had ever reached him. But a great deal of it never did. The people who were employed to collect it, and who ought to have paid it to the royal treasury, often kept it for themselves, or sometimes it was collected so carelessly that there was not near so much as there ought to be. Sully put a stop both to the carelessness and the dishonesty. He took great pains himself to find out how much money ought to come from each tax in a certain time, and then made the men who collected it show him accounts of how much had come, and of what they had done with it. Some had no accounts to show,

and some had very incomplete ones. Sully turned out of their places all the men who seemed to have been acting dishonestly, and some of them who had grown very rich by stealing the king's money were tried in a court of law and fined, that is, made to pay a large sum of money, so that the king got back part of what, by rights, belonged to him. Sully next made fresh rules about the payment of the taxes, and saw that they were carried out; and as he was perfectly honest himself, Henry soon began to find his treasury filling again, and each year, as the people grew richer and richer in the long peace, Henry had more and more money to spend.

The king and the minister were not always quite agreed as to the best way of spending this money. Sully thought nothing so important as a good army of soldiers; he knew that Henry still had many enemies, and was always expecting that some day another war would break out and the king would want to gather together a large army. Sully kept a large store of treasure set aside for this particular purpose. Henry also looked upon his soldiers as very important, but he cared for many other matters as well, which Sully looked upon as waste or even worse. He was vexed when Henry spent in building, hunting, or gambling the money which he had gathered together with so much difficulty. He was not pleased either if the king spent it in encouraging manufactures, that is, the making of all kinds of goods, or on agriculture, which means improving the land for growing seed of all kinds; though every one now agrees with Henry that these ways of using money were much for the good of the country. Sully, besides being so useful as a minister, was a real friend to Henry.



The king would consult with him over what he was going to do, and Sully gave him much good advice, and was sometimes able to prevent him from doing things which would have brought great trouble upon him if not upon his people.

When Henry became a Roman Catholic he promised his old Huguenot friends that he would always protect the Huguenots and their religion. When he found that they were growing angry at his not seeming to care about them, and that they felt he was breaking his word to them, he resolved to do something which should show his friendship for them. He made an edict or royal order, which is known as the Edict of Nantes, and which was meant to settle the question that had never been settled yet, of how the Protestants were to be treated in France, how far they might worship in their own way without being disturbed by their neighbours, and whether they might be employed like Roman Catholics in the business of the country.

Treaties had often been made to settle all these matters, but they had never been observed for more than a short time, and often, in parts of the country where the Roman Catholics were strong, they had not been observed at all. The king's edict was to last as a law for ever, and it really did last for nearly ninety years, so that the Protestants had time to feel its good results.

The decree gave the Huguenots a right to have services undisturbed in most of the towns of France, and also in the private houses of many of the chief nobles, where the people who lived in the country far from a town might hear the Huguenot service. They were allowed—like the Catholics—to send their children to any schools or colleges

they wished, or might, if they liked, set up schools and colleges for themselves, and they might hold offices in the State. The Huguenots, from this time, were able to live comfortably in the country; many families who would have been driven over to England or other Protestant countries, if some change had not been made in the laws about Protestants, now settled down in France, and as they were specially honest, prudent, and industrious, they soon became some of the most prosperous of Henry's subjects, and France grew richer through their industry.

Henry's reign lasted for about twelve years after the Edict of Nantes, and they were years of peace for him, and of riches and quiet for France. Henry, with Sully to advise him, made improvements of all kinds in the country; edicts were made on every subject that has to do with land; about marshes to be drained, forests to be cut down, lakes to be made, rivers which were to have their courses improved, or bridges built over them. Many new grains and plants were brought into France and grown there. Among other things Henry was specially interested in was the mulberry tree, which some of his subjects, after much difficulty, had succeeded in transplanting to France. The mulberry is a tree on which silkworms find their food, and when the trees became flourishing, silkworms were brought to live upon them, so that silk might be produced cheaply in France.

Still Henry was not able to give himself up entirely to these peaceful matters. He had at one time to go to war with a prince who had a small country at the south-east corner of France, the Duke of Savoy, who was rash enough to quarrel with Henry. The king and Sully

marched against him with a strong army, and were successful, as might have been expected.

At another time one of his chief generals and oldest friends, the Marshal of Biron, made a league with the Spaniards and plotted against Henry. The plot was betrayed to the king by one of the men who had taken part in it, and he found to his great sorrow that Biron had shared in the plot. Henry sent for Biron to come to court, and when he arrived, for he did not dare refuse to obey, the king asked him questions about what he had done, and tried to persuade him to confess his guilt, by which he might have saved his life. But Biron refused to confess that he had done wrong; and was at last arrested by the king's orders and thrown into prison. He was tried, and there proved to be no doubt of his having been a traitor to the king; among other things, he had secretly been the friend of the Duke of Savoy, when he was leading the king's army against him, and had sent him word of how many men the king had, which way they were coming, and as many of Henry's secrets as he himself knew. Biron was condemned to death to his great surprise; for he had never believed that the king would make up his mind to agree to it. He was studying the stars to try and read the future when the officer came to tell him his sentence, and he was beheaded a few hours later. Henry was much distressed at this sad end of a man who had been one of his most trusted friends, and if it had not been for Sully, would probably have spared his life, though there seems no doubt that he deserved death.

The peaceful years of Henry's reign passed by with no events of much importance to the country, except the mar-

riage of the king and the birth of a son, at which all the people of France were much delighted. He had been married before, but had agreed so ill with his wife that they had been separated and broken off their marriage. The king was not much more fortunate in his second wife. She was an Italian princess of the same family as Catherine de Medicis, ugly, grave, and sulky. She brought some of her own countrymen with her, and cared for them much more than for the king and his friends.

Henry was a friend of Queen Elizabeth of England, and they used to make plans together for resisting the power of Spain, and making some arrangement by which all the Protestant countries of Europe could join together and resist the Roman Catholics; for though Henry was a Roman Catholic king, he was always on the side of the Protestants out of his own country. Sully used to go from France to England, carrying messages from Henry, and bringing back Elizabeth's answers. She had helped Henry both with men and money in his wars, and though there had been quarrels between them, their friendship lasted till the death of Elizabeth, which happened seven years before that of Henry.

Towards the end of Henry's reign, the King of Spain, finding he was not able to conquer the people of the Netherlands, who had been fighting against him for so many years, made a truce with them for twelve years, by which they really gained all that they had been fighting for. The only country in which disputes were still going on between the Roman Catholics and Protestants was Germany. The duke of a small duchy died, and a great dispute arose as to who should be his heir; two Protestant

princes were on one side, the Emperor, who was a Roman Catholic, on the other. It was so important to Henry to have friends ruling the provinces which made up this duchy, that he prepared a large army to lead to the help of the Protestant princes, and made great preparations for leaving the country himself for some time. The queen was named Regent, with a council of fifteen of the wisest men in the country to help her. She had never been crowned since she came into France, and she was very anxious that this should be done before Henry left Paris. The king had been persuaded to agree.

At this time Henry, in spite of all the success which he had won, was gloomy and unhappy. He knew that he had enemies all round him. His wife was his enemy, and many of those people who seemed to be his friends were really the friends of the King of Spain, and were longing for some opportunity for getting rid of the king, who would never let France become in any way subject to Spain. During Henry's reign it had several times happened that men had tried to murder him. He had always escaped hitherto without being even hurt, but at this particular time, when he was about to start on this war to help the Protestant princes, he considered himself in special danger, and was anxious to leave Paris as soon as possible.

The coronation passed off safely, and the king was to start in six days. The next day he was unwell, and said that he should stay at home, but his servant advised him to go out, saying that the air would refresh him. He at last made up his mind to go and pay a visit to Sully, who was ill, and he set off to drive to his house in an open carriage. He was sitting between two of his friends reading

a letter, which one of them had shown to him, when the carriage was stopped for a moment by a block in the street. While it stood still, a man who had been following it for some way, sprang up on the wheel and plunged his knife twice into the king's body. Henry cried out, "I am wounded;" and then fell backward dead. One of his friends threw a cloak over him, called out that he was only wounded, and told the coachman to drive back to the palace.

The murderer, whose name was Ravailiac, was at once taken prisoner, and soon afterwards executed. He seems to have been half a madman, who had been in Paris for some time waiting for the chance of killing Henry, and telling several people what he meant to do. Of these only one lady had tried to warn the king, and she was not believed. It is probable that many of those who seemed to be Henry's friends knew of the plot, and did what they could to make it succeed. Certainly many of the courtiers and ministers were glad when they heard the news. The common people and all those of Henry's subjects who loved their country and hated Spain were deeply grieved, and felt that the loss of their king was one that never could be repaired. In this they were right. No king of France has done so much for his country since, and the plans which Henry would have carried out had he lived, had now no one to care for them, and were heard of no more. The Protestants had no more such friends as Henry. This king is probably, of all the kings of France, the one whose memory has been the most loved by his people.

CHAPTER XLII.

LOUIS XIII. (1610-1643).

WHEN Henry IV. died, the queen, Marie of Medicis, made no pretence of being sorry for her husband's loss; the only thing of which she thought was how to make herself regent during her son's childhood. The eldest son of Henry IV., who now became Louis XIII., was a child of nine years old. It was natural that Mary should be regent, because Henry had already settled that she should govern for him while he was away on the war which he was just about to begin at the end of his life; but he had meant her to have a council of some of the wisest men of the country to help and advise her, and now she hoped to have all the power for herself, unchecked by any one. Most of the great lords at the court were her friends, as they had most of them been the enemies of Henry, and by their help she was able that very day to persuade the Parliament of Paris to say that she alone should be regent of the kingdom. The Parliament of Paris was not in the least like our Parliament in England; it was a body of men whose business was to judge and do justice, and who therefore were not the proper people to settle such a question as the regency. However, the queen, with the great lords to help her, was too strong to be disobeyed, and the Parliament did as she wished, and the people

obeyed the Parliament as if it had done nothing but what was right and usual. Two hours after Henry had been murdered, Mary was Regent of France.

The Duke of Sully was ill in his own house when messengers came to tell him that the king was dangerously wounded. He set off at once in great grief and distress to go to the king's palace, the Louvre. He was met on the way by different friends, who all begged him to turn back and go home, telling him the king was dead, and that if he went on, he himself would soon be dead as well. Sully consented at last to turn back. The next day, however, he went to the court, saw the queen and the little Dauphin, and promised to serve them faithfully as he had served Henry. This promise, however, he was not able to keep; he found it impossible to work with Mary's friends, who were dishonest and foolish, took what they could find for themselves, and let everything else fall into confusion. He left public life altogether, and went to live at one of his castles, where he spent the thirty years of his life that were still to come.

Mary had one almost certain way of persuading the lords of France to be her friends, and that was making them handsome presents. She gave to each of them what he most wished for; to one a fortune, to another a rich wife, to a third a province to rule over, to a fourth a place in the Government, to a fifth a title. The great riches that Sully had laid up for Henry IV. to use in his wars against Spain began to dwindle away as the queen took from them whatever she wanted to satisfy her great lords.

The army that Henry had prepared for war in Germany was broken up; a small part of it was sent to attack

the town which he had wished to take, and succeeded in driving away the Roman Catholics, who were masters there, but after this they did no more; a kind of peace was made; the French soldiers came back to France, and nothing more was done about the matter for some years. So the four years of the queen's regency passed by, and when Louis was thirteen, she had him declared to be of age, and his own reign began. Mary had really as much power after this as before, for while her son was still so young, he did everything that she wished.

The States-General were called together soon after Louis began to reign, and after this they did not meet again for more than a hundred and seventy years. At this meeting the deputies did nothing of great importance; they disputed with each other for some time, chiefly about the different means by which money might be procured for the Government, for the people of France were in a state of great distress, which was partly brought on by the high taxes they were called upon to pay, because the king had no other means of finding money for himself. The deputies described the state of the peasants in the country. "Your poor people are but skin and bone, worn out, down beat, more dead than alive; we beseech you to do something to settle the disorders of the taxes." However, nothing was settled to relieve them; the deputies drew up their list of complaints, of which I have told you before, and as soon as it was done, the king closed the States-General by shutting up the hall in which they usually met, and saying there was to be no more discussion there.

The king promised, as the kings always did, to consider the complaints; but, as so often happened, nothing ever

came of his considering. It seems curious that the people of France can have been satisfied for so many hundred years to have no better arrangement for expressing their wishes about the government of the country than the States-General, from which they hardly ever gained the things they wanted. The wishes of the people were a matter which the Government of France scarcely considered at all. The kings were bent upon gaining more and more power for themselves, which they did with great success under the reigns of Louis XIII. and his son.

Mary of Medicis, the queen-mother, was, as I have said, much inclined to be the friend of Spain, and now that Henry was no longer there to object to it, she determined to keep an agreement which she had already made with the Spanish court, that two of her children should marry two of the children of the Spanish king. Her eldest daughter, Elizabeth, still quite a child, was sent into Spain; and a little Spanish princess, Anne of Austria, was brought into France, and married soon after to Louis XIII. The king's wife, when she became a woman, was an important person in the Government of the country, and brought France into many troubles. Louis cared very little about his wife; but he was the sort of person who likes always to have some favourite with him, and who, when once he has a favourite, is apt to listen to him in everything, and give up his own way to do only what his favourite advises. Troubles soon rose between him and his mother, who was not able to keep the power for herself as she had hoped to do. She joined in plots against her son and his friends, and at last he sent her away from Paris altogether, and exiled her to a distant part of France.

It was of great importance for the country that Louis should choose his favourite well ; in this he did not succeed at first ; one or two of his favourites were men who could do no good to him or to the country. But at last he had the good fortune to find, and the good sense to value, a man who is now considered as one of the greatest statesmen there has ever been in France or any other country ; who brought France to great power and glory, carried out much of what Henry IV. had wished to do for the good of the country, and by his wisdom and strength prevented Louis from receiving any harm from the great war which disturbed all Europe in this reign. His name was Richelieu ; he was bishop of a small town at the time of the meeting of the States-General ; and he was chosen then to take up to the king the list of complaints from the clergy ; afterwards he became a great friend of the queen-mother's, the Pope made him a cardinal, and he became a member of the king's council, and at last chief minister.

In Germany the questions between the Protestants and Roman Catholics had never yet been settled ; the Emperor was Roman Catholic, and many of the princes of different parts of the country Protestant. A good many of them joined themselves into a band against the Emperor. The struggle which then began lasted for thirty years, and is known as the Thirty Years' War. For some time the Germans fought only among themselves, and no other nation took part in the war, except the Spaniards, who were always friends of the Emperor, though the Emperor of Germany was no longer King of Spain as well, as he had been in the time of Charles V. Many of the chief

men in France were secretly friends of the Spanish king, and they were inclined to persuade Louis to let France join the Roman Catholic side, and help in making the Emperor more powerful than ever in Germany. Cardinal Richelieu thought differently. He said that Louis, though he kept down the Protestants at home, ought to help them abroad, so as to make the Emperor and Spanish king less powerful instead of more, and to have the Protestant princes of Germany for his friends. Richelieu arranged a league or agreement of friendship between several of the nations in the north of Europe, who were all enemies of the Spanish. The English, the French, the Dutch, the princes of North Germany, the Danes, the Swedes, all belonged to it, and the King of Denmark was chosen to be their leader. In Italy too, at the other end of Europe, Richelieu was able to help the enemies of Spain, and though there was not open war at first between the two countries, this was the beginning of a struggle which lasted all through Richelieu's life.

There were many difficulties in Richelieu's way besides the difficulties of the war which he hoped to persuade Louis to carry on against the Spaniards. One was that he never felt sure that the king would go on trusting him and being his friend. He had many enemies at court, and some of them were the most important people next to the king, in the whole country. The mother of Louis was one, his wife another, his brother a third. They were all friends of the Spaniards, and all hated Richelieu; they made plots to murder him, and were always trying to turn the weak king against him.

Another difficulty was that the French were not at

peace among themselves. The Huguenots, among whom were the best and bravest men of the country, were not satisfied; and at the beginning of Louis's reign there had been many small wars against them, which had always ended in the same way, by a peace being made in which different favours for which they wished were promised and never given to them. One of the most important Huguenot towns was called La Rochelle. This is a town on the west coast of France, about two-thirds of the way down, with a fine harbour protected by some small islands a little way from the shore. It had always been a kind of headquarters of the Huguenots, and they had been much vexed at a royal fort having been built on purpose to keep the town quiet, and to make it easy for the king to send troops in and prevent any rising up against him by the townspeople. This fort was called Fort Louis, and was full of royal troops. The people of La Rochelle believed Richelieu to be the enemy of the Huguenots, and so he had shown himself to be in France, though out of France he was persuading the king to take their side against their enemy, the King of Spain. They rose up against him, and called upon the English to help them.

At this time the English, who had been friends of the French, were suddenly persuaded by the Spaniards to turn against them. The English proposed to join with the people of La Rochelle, and help them to free the town from Richelieu and the French Government. They secretly hoped that they should be able to take it for themselves, but they soon found that the town had no idea of giving itself up to them. The Huguenots, though they were angry with the French Government, had not forgotten that

they were Frenchmen, and would have no foreigners in their town. An Englishman, the Duke of Buckingham, brought a fleet down the coast of France, and came near to Rochelle, but was never able to give any help to the townspeople.

Richelieu gathered together a large army, and came to besiege the town. For a year he and his army lay outside the walls, the soldiers continually at work to prevent any food from passing in. They made forts outside the part of the town that was turned towards the land, and with great labour and difficulty they made a mole or heap of earth like a wall, running almost across the mouth of the harbour, so that no ships could pass into La Rochelle.

Thus the people of Rochelle were entirely shut out from all help. The English tried to make their way through the mole with food, and invented a contrivance for blowing up some part of the wall; but it was of no use, their contrivance failed, and the English sailed away and left the town to itself.

Richelieu had the king with him outside the walls, but after some months Louis grew tired and went away to another part of the country. Richelieu knew that he was always in danger while the king was away from him, for Louis always listened to those of his friends who were near at hand, and he was among people who were enemies to the great minister; but the siege of Rochelle was too important to be left, and Richelieu stayed there with his army. The six thousand men in the town resisted with wonderful courage. Their governor was a man named Guiton, who, when he was chosen to be their leader, laid his dagger on the table and said that it should run into

the heart of the first man who spoke of giving up the town. He encouraged the people to hope even when the English sailed away and left them.

They began to suffer terribly from hunger; they ate grass and shell-fish which they found on the beach at low water; they turned all the old and weak people out of the town, and refused to open their gates to them again, though they were attacked by the enemy. At last the English fleet appeared once more, and tried again to break the mole, but the French ships beat them back. They made up their minds that they could do nothing, and began to make a treaty with the French. When the people of Rochelle heard this they gave themselves up in despair and submitted to Richelieu. When he came into the town the soldiers were horrified to see the streets filled with corpses, that those who still lived had not the strength to bury. One morning, while the siege still lasted, the sentinels had been found at their post dead from hunger.

Rochelle, when it had given itself up, was not unkindly treated by Richelieu and Louis, though from this time the townsmen lost such powers as they had had before of governing themselves; they were made completely subject to the king, and Rochelle has never been a town of any importance since. Many of the Huguenot sailors who had lived there in great numbers left France altogether and settled in Holland.

After the siege of Rochelle was thus ended, Richelieu made the king begin to take part openly in the Thirty Years' War. I have not space here to give an account of the events of that war, not even of the events in it which

had to do with France. I will say only that Louis went first into Italy, where he distinguished himself by his courage in crossing the Alps in the middle of winter, and succeeded in driving away the Spaniards from the particular town they were then trying to take. He then came back into France, and Richelieu spent some years secretly preparing troops and money for the war. The French declared open war seven years after the siege of Rochelle, and they carried it on all the rest of Richelieu's life, which lasted for seven years more.

During this time one event happened in France which was a great joy to all the people of France. The queen, after having been married to Louis since they were both children, at last had a child born, a son, who afterwards became the famous Louis XIV. Before the birth of this child it had always been feared that whenever Louis died his brother, a very bad young man, would become king in his place; but now the country was saved from him and from all question as to who should succeed. The war was, on the whole, good for France; the power of the Emperor of Germany was much weakened, so that France had less to fear from him; the French won for themselves many places in Spain and Italy, and Richelieu had persuaded the king to distrust those members of his family and court who were always secretly speaking and acting in favour of Spain.

Many plots were made against the life of Richelieu, but they were all discovered, and the enemies who had made them punished. Richelieu's last journey was with the king and the royal army, who were marching towards Spain to attack their great enemy in his own country. He

was ill, but travelled in great splendour, and had so many servants and attendants with him that he was obliged to keep some way behind Louis, as there would not have been room in many of the small towns through which they passed to receive the followers of both at once. A young favourite of Louis, named Cinq Mars, made a plan at this time to murder Richelieu, and tried to persuade the king to join in it. Louis, who had grown tired of his great minister, was at one time inclined to agree, and Richelieu, hearing of what was going on, kept away from Louis's camp for some time. At last Louis found out that Cinq Mars had also been making a treaty with Spain against him and his friends. Richelieu's enemies were also the enemies of their country. They were tried, found guilty of treason, and put to death. The king wrote to Richelieu, who was in a town some little way off: "I love you more than ever, whatever false stories people may tell."

The war against Spain went on well, though both the king and Richelieu went back to Paris soon after the discovery of this plot. Richelieu was carried most of the way in a litter. He grew worse and worse, and did not live many months longer. On the last day of his life he asked his doctors how much longer he had to live. Most of them, wishing to please him, told him that perhaps, he might still recover, that God would not let a man die who was so necessary to France; but one of them had the courage to tell the truth and answered, "In twenty-four hours you will be cured or dead." "That is what I call speaking," said Richelieu; "I understand you." He died calmly and quietly, after having received a last visit from the king, to whom he gave advice about the government of the country.

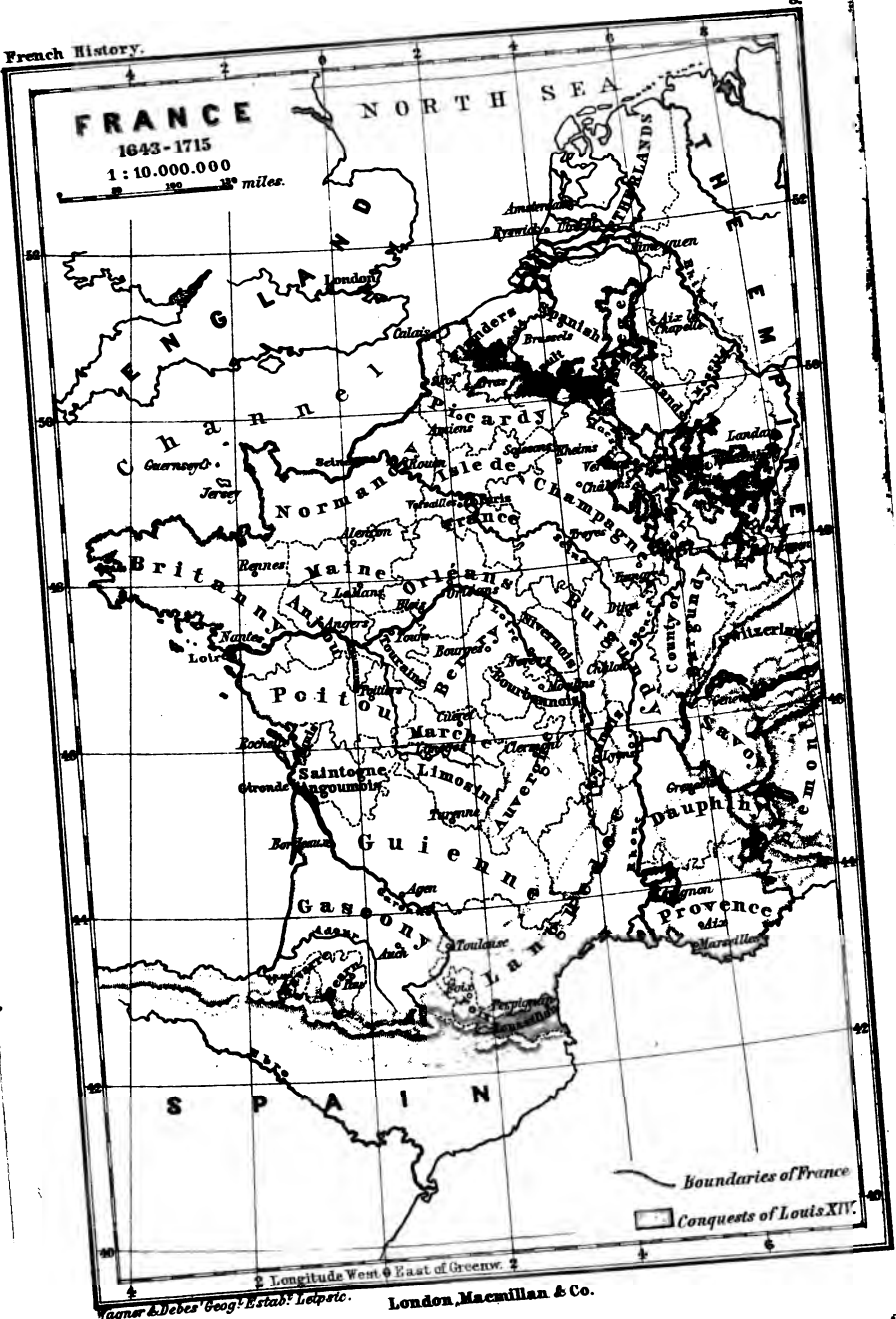
Louis himself died a few months later. During the whole of this reign Richelieu had been the really important person in the kingdom. Louis himself was a weak and rather foolish man, and what he did was always decided for him by the advice of his friends and ministers. He had enough good sense to know that Richelieu was the man to whom the affairs of France might most safely be trusted. Richelieu had done other things for France besides governing the country well and defending it against its enemies; he had encouraged poets to make poems and authors to write books; he had set up what is called the French Academy, a body of men supposed to be made up of the best writers in France, who settle what is good and what is bad in French writings, and give prizes for what they consider the best. I do not know that the Academy is really of much use, but it was supposed that it would improve the writings of Frenchmen, and the French were pleased at its being founded. It exists to this day.

Richelieu did more than almost any other Frenchman to weaken the great lords, who had before his time had a good deal of power in the country, and to make the king so strong that he would be able to do what he pleased without caring for his subjects' wishes. The French, having no parliament to find fault with what their kings did in a peaceable way, had no means of getting what they wished except rising up against them in a rebellion; but Richelieu was too strong for any one to dare to do this in his time, and so Louis XIII. became more and more powerful the longer he lived, and his power passed on to his son and increased with him still more. This was not a good thing for the French people, and came to a bad end at last. Richelieu was not loved

by the people of the country; though they did not understand that he was doing harm by adding to the king's strength, they disliked him for laying on heavy taxes, and being cruel and unfeeling to them in many ways. There was a feeling of joy through the whole country when he died.

ST. PAULI
PUBLIC LIBRARY
4709 LAMONT
TIDEN & HODGKINS

French History.



CHAPTER XLIII.

LOUIS XIV. (1643-1715).

WHEN Louis XIII. died in 1643, his son Louis was only four years old. This child, who became king while he was hardly old enough to know anything about it, had such a reign as no King of France or England has ever had before or since. It lasted for seventy-two years. When it began Charles I. was King of England, and when it ended George I. had just come to the throne. During all that happened in England in those seventy-two years—the war between Charles I. and his people, Charles's execution, the reign of Cromwell as Protector, the return of Charles II. to be king, the whole of his reign, the reign of his brother James II., and the disturbances that were caused by his being a Roman Catholic, the Revolution by which he was driven out of the country and William III. made king, during the reign of William III., and during the reign of Anne—Louis XIV. still governed the French people. And his long reign was full of great events; it had in it five wars, some long and all important. Many great men lived in it, who not only made themselves remembered by what they did and wrote, but made every one admire the time in which they lived, and speak of it as an age by itself, though all Frenchmen at that time admired the king so greatly and believed so firmly that everything good in the country

came from him, that the age of great men was called after him, and not after the names of any of the people who really made it famous, and is known as the age of Louis XIV.

When Louis XIII. died, he settled by his will that his wife, Anne of Austria, should be Regent of France, and that she should have a council, made up of men whom he chose for the purpose, to help her to govern.

Anne had till then had no power in the country; but she was ambitious, and now that she had an opportunity of making herself the most important person in the kingdom, she did not lose the chance, but managed to persuade the Parliament of Paris to declare that she should be regent alone, so that the council of regency never had any power in the country at all.

The chief friend of the queen was the man who soon afterwards became the chief minister of France, and who had been a friend and helper of Richelieu's in the last reign; his name was Mazarin, and the Pope had lately made him a cardinal. Anne of Austria had so strong an affection for Mazarin, that some people believe that after Louis XIII. died she was secretly married to him.

The first business to which the queen and Mazarin had to attend, was the carrying on of the war which had been begun under Louis XIII. It was the Thirty Years' War, which was now coming very near to an end. An army had been lately sent against the Spaniards, under the command of a very young general, who was descended from a warlike family, and who, Richelieu had hoped, would distinguish himself as his forefathers had done.

This was the eldest son of the Prince of Condé, who

was only twenty-two years old, and who was sent with an army and two of the best French generals to help him by their advice and experience, into the north part of France, where he found a large Spanish army attacking a French town called Rocroy, pleasing themselves with the thought that now Richelieu and the French king were dead, they had nothing to fear. Condé and his advisers heard that a fresh body of men were on their way to join with those who were already there, so that their numbers would increase even the next day, and they settled at once to begin the battle. They marched upon the Spaniards, and after a long struggle the French were successful, the Spaniards were completely defeated, and Rocroy was saved.

The French people were so much delighted at this victory that it made them satisfied and pleased with their rulers, Queen Anne and Mazarin, who at this time became first minister. The young prince who had gained the battle also became a great favourite with the people, and he grew up, as they expected, to be a brilliant soldier, though a few years later, when his father died, and he had become Prince of Condé, he gave a great deal of trouble in the country by his ambition and his restless, warlike spirit.

After the battle of Rocroy there were five more years of war with the Spaniards, and several other great victories were won by Condé, and by another young general, the Count of Turenne, who was as calm and prudent as Condé was brilliant and rash, and who knew more about the rules of war than almost any general of the time; besides being famed for his honesty, and virtues of all kinds. At last, after many meetings between the ministers of the different nations, a peace was arranged

and signed, called the Peace of Westphalia, which put an end to the Thirty Years' War in the year 1648.

It did not stop all the fighting that had been going on, for the war between France and Spain still continued ; but the Emperor made peace with every one, and the Spaniards made a treaty with the Dutch, ending the war that had been going on between them since the time of Philip II.

By this peace the French gained the province of Alsace, on the eastern side of France, and not only did they grow stronger, but the Emperor, their enemy, grew weaker, for the German princes succeeded in freeing themselves from his great power, and in making him promise to ask their advice henceforward about many matters which he had before settled for himself, so that his power was much lessened, and Louis XIV. had one strong enemy the less to fear. The French having been successful in several great battles, were more feared and respected in Europe than they had been before the war.

At exactly the same time as the signing of the Peace of Westphalia there began a civil war in France, which lasted for five years. Towards the end of the time it was carried on for very absurd reasons, and sometimes almost as a joke ; but it caused the death of many Frenchmen, and almost every one who took part in it disgraced himself more or less. It was called the war of the Fronde, or the sling, because the people fighting in it on one side were compared by their enemies to boys playing in the streets with slings and stones, who run away as soon as a watchman appears, and begin their play again when his back is turned. This absurd name pleased the people to whom it was given, and the war took its name from them.

These wars of the Fronde are very difficult to understand, for the sides were constantly changing, and the questions which were being disputed were changing too. The first war began between the Government, that is the Queen-Regent, with her minister, Cardinal Mazarin, and the Parliament. The Government wanted to set up certain taxes, which the Parliament said were not lawful; then the queen had one of the chief men of the Parliament arrested and put in prison, which made all his friends extremely angry. The people rose all through Paris, and put up barricades in the streets, as they had done in the time of the Duke of Guise. They refused to take down the barricades, till Broussel, the counsellor who had been arrested, was set free again. The queen agreed at last, very unwillingly; she let him go, but she prepared troops to be revenged upon the Parliament. She soon after escaped out of Paris, taking the little king with her.

After this the Parliament tried to make a peace with her; but she refused to promise what they wished, and both sides began to look for new allies to carry on the war. The Prince of Condé came to the help of the queen, and several great nobles who hated Mazarin were persuaded to take the side of the Parliament. These men had no real interest in the questions which the war was to settle. They made a joke of the war; they appeared in their gay clothes with plumes flying in their hats, with their sisters and wives by their sides. There were feasting and singing always going on at the headquarters of the army, the Hotel de Ville, but very little business was done there. As soon as these gay soldiers were attacked by Condé, they gave way at once; and a peace was made the

year after the first disturbance had begun. No one was satisfied by the peace: the Parliament, because no promises had been made to them about many of the questions which they considered of great importance, and their friends, the nobles and great lords, because they had not received any of the places and honours for which they had asked, and which were what they had really been fighting for.

This war was called the old Fronde, and very soon after its end a second war, the new Fronde, began. In this struggle the Parliament took no part. The nobles fought against the court, and this time the Prince of Condé was on their side. He offended the queen so much that she had him arrested and put into prison. But he was soon after set free, and he, the Count of Turenne, and many of the other great nobles, made a treaty with the Spaniards, the enemies of France, who were to attack it from the north side, where they were settled in the Netherlands. When the court was in this great danger the Count of Turenne was persuaded to come back to the side of the queen, and he led the royal army against the Frondeurs, with Condé for their general. A great battle was fought outside Paris, and Condé was near being both defeated and killed. But his friends inside the town came to his help, and the people of Paris, when he was once inside the walls, took his side warmly. After a time the Frondeurs turned against Condé again; he left France for a time, and his enemy Mazarin also went away, thinking that peace would perhaps be made more easily without him. After this the Fronde soon came to an end. Its chief leaders were sent into exile; Condé was condemned

to death, which, as he was not in France, did him no harm ; the king and his court came back to Paris ; and, after a time, Mazarin came back as well, and was received as a friend by the people who before had hated him so much.

Before the end of the Fronde the young king had been declared to be of age, and able to govern for himself, being thirteen years old. His mother still had as much real power as when she was regent, and the king did not interfere in public matters for some time to come. The war of the Fronde had done nothing to make the royal power less than it had been in France. Under Henry IV. and under Richelieu the French kings had been continually growing more and more powerful. Richelieu had made it a great object to subdue all the nobles who were strong enough to be dangerous enemies to the Crown ; he had succeeded so well that Louis XIV. had no trouble with any of them, except perhaps the Prince of Condé, all through his reign. He never held any States-Generals, and we have seen how little the Parliament was able to do to prevent the court from having everything their own way. In this reign France had a very strong army, and the successful wars of Louis against the most powerful countries in Europe gave him much strength and fame at home.

Few people had yet found out that Louis XIV. was likely to be a remarkable man. He was a solemn silent boy, and was thought dull and stupid, except by those who knew him best. Mazarin took care that he should be taught as little as possible. He wished the king to take no interest in the affairs of the country, that he might keep them in his own hands. Still he knew something of the character of Louis. He said of him once, " He will set off

late, but will go farther than others ;” and another time, that “he had stuff in him to make four kings and an honest man.” While the Fronde was going on through his childhood, Louis was brought up to look upon the Parliament as his chief enemy. When he heard of a victory won by the French army, he cried out, “How vexed the Parliament will be !” and one of the first acts of which we hear after his coming of age is his going into the Chamber where the Parliament were discussing whether or not some new taxes for which he wished should be imposed, and the commands which he had given about them obeyed. The king, who had been at Vincennes hunting, heard of what they were doing, came to the Parliament in his hunting-dress and his great boots, with all his lords about him dressed in the same way, and made the members a short speech, commanding them to obey his edicts instantly, and to assemble no more. This was an example of the way in which he was prepared to treat any one who seemed likely to resist his power.

The war with Spain went on for several years after this, but at last a peace was made, by which it was settled that Louis should marry the daughter of the King of Spain, the princess Maria Theresa. There was some chance that this princess or her children might some day come to rule in Spain, for her father was old and ill, and had only one delicate little son. The King of Spain made Maria Theresa give up her right to the crown for herself before she married, but he could not prevent her children from succeeding her brother if he had none of his own. The only difficulty was that Louis himself loved another lady, but he was persuaded by his mother and Mazarin to give

her up. This treaty of the Pyrenees was the second in the reign of Louis XIV. Very soon after it was ended Cardinal Mazarin died. He was not so great a man as Richelieu, but he was more successful, and many of Richelieu's wise plans first showed their result under him. He had managed the affairs of the country well in all that had to do with foreign matters, though he had paid little attention to what went on at home.

Before he died he gave Louis much advice about carrying on the Government, in particular, telling him never to trust to a minister. The young king had probably already settled this. After Mazarin's death he called together his ministers, his chancellor, and the other chief men in the Government. He told them that he would henceforward have no first minister, that they must come to him to receive orders, and do nothing without his leave. They were so much surprised that at first they did not believe he could be in earnest, and thought that after a short trial he would find the work too hard for him, and give it up. But, on the contrary, he continued through the whole of his life to do the governing of the country entirely by himself, and his ministers, as time went on, had continually less and less power left to them, for he liked best the men who behaved most humbly, and most fully owned him as their master.

One of the first things that happened after Louis began to reign in this way was the disgrace of one of his ministers, whose duty it was to manage the money of the Government, and who had been thinking more of his own good while he did it than of that of the country. The name of this man was Fouquet; he used to make up false accounts,

saying that he had received less money and spent more than was really the case, and then kept for himself the money which he pretended not to have received. Some one pointed this out to the king, who naturally resolved that Fouquet should soon be removed from his place. He had many friends, for he was gay, brilliant, and clever, and many men of that time, if they knew of his dishonesty, would not have thought much the worse of him for it. The king said nothing of his purpose of punishing Fouquet, or even of having found out his crimes. Fouquet gave a magnificent party at his country house, to which he invited Louis. He had spent on his country house some of the enormous riches which he had gathered together. The estate had cost more than three hundred thousand pounds. It had been adorned with buildings, canals, fountains, gardens, and every kind of ornament. The house had its walls and ceilings painted by one of the greatest French artists of the time, and Fouquet had sent to Italy to buy three shiploads of statues to ornament the castle and the gardens. He received the king with the greatest splendour possible, and at each fresh sign of his riches and grandeur Louis secretly became more angry with him, and more determined to ruin a man who seemed likely to make himself so great a person in the kingdom.

A few weeks after the entertainment Fouquet was arrested and tried for his life, for there were found in his papers all the arrangements for a plot against the king, orders for making cannon balls, oaths to Fouquet which the captains were to take, and other such writings. Fouquet's life was spared; but he was shut up in prison for the rest of his life, which lasted nineteen years, and

was never even allowed to see his friends till a few months before his death.

After this Louis began to be feared by his subjects, and his power was firmly established over them. There are still more than fifty years of his reign to come, which must be left for another chapter.

CHAPTER XLIV.

LOUIS XIV.—(*continued*).

1643-1715.

MANY great men, as I have said, lived in the reign of Louis, who is himself sometimes called the Great, and one of the chief of these was beginning to be known at the time to which I have now come in this history. He was the writer of the best and most amusing French plays that have ever been written, and his name was Jean Molière. The king, who was fond of books of all kinds, and also had a great love for the theatre, protected and helped Molière, who often had quarrels with the great lords and courtiers to be found in the palace of Louis. Molière used to bring them all into his plays and make fun of them, or point out their faults in a way which made them very angry, but which was both amusing and useful to the people of France, and was done so cleverly, that it is nearly as much pleasure to read his plays now as it was when they were written. At the same time lived Racine, who wrote plays of a different kind, usually very sad, and always graceful and touching, and written in beautiful language; and La Fontaine, who wrote fables about birds and beasts and all kinds of animals, which most people have read who know

any French at all; and Bossuet, who was a bishop, and used to preach some of the most eloquent sermons that ever were heard, and in particular, used to make what were then called funeral orations over any famous person who died, which were long speeches giving an account of their lives, of what they had done, and what sort of people they had been. At the same time, too, lived Madame de Sévigné, who used to write such charming and amusing letters to her daughter, that volumes full of them have been printed, and are read with great pleasure and interest now; and many other men and women, too many to mention, who wrote different kinds of prose or poetry, or both.

There were also great painters, who painted the insides of houses and churches, besides making beautiful pictures, and architects who built the houses and churches, and also palaces and halls and arches, and engineers who made roads and canals, and many people, both men and women, who set up schools of different kinds and taught children there.

There has never been a reign in which more famous people have lived; and the king encouraged them all, and treated them very kindly, in return for which they all looked up to him as the greatest man living, and did in his honour whatever they could do best, so that he became even more famous through them than he would have been by his own actions.

After the death of Mazarin, Louis had one minister who served him for many years well and faithfully, and pleased him by being humble and obedient, and not taking too much upon himself. His name was Colbert, and he did many things which were of great importance for France. For one thing, he managed to build a navy, that is, a set of

ships of war. France had never had a navy before, but it was very useful in the wars that were soon to come. I have not space to tell of all the improvements that Colbert made, and all the others that he tried to make. He always had great difficulty in making Louis give him the money he wanted for carrying on the business of the country, for the king spent it very fast in his various great wars, or when he happened to be at peace, in buildings and feasts, and giving it to his friends, which he did foolishly and thoughtlessly, without considering, in spite of all that Colbert could say, the misery of some of his poor subjects who had to pay the taxes from which he gained his wealth.

Not very long after Fouquet's disgrace, there was a war between the French and the Spaniards about some of the countries belonging to the Spanish princess whom Louis had married. Her father the King of Spain died, and her little brother became king. Louis said that certain parts of the Spanish kingdom ought now to belong to her, and he had in his mind secret hopes that he or his sons might some day be kings over Spain itself, for the young king was so weak and delicate that it did not seem as if he were likely to marry and have any children, and it was supposed that he might die at any time. He did, however, live for more than thirty years, though the ideas that he would have no child and that a French prince would succeed him on the throne both came true. The Spaniards refused to give up to the French queen the provinces which Louis said ought to be hers. Indeed, no one but the king thought that she had any right to them at all. Louis marched into the part of the Netherlands which belonged to Spain, and took some towns there. He had very easy

work, for the Spaniards hardly resisted him, so the war did not last long. Peace was made next year, and Louis kept most of the places he had won in the Netherlands.

At about this time he had a new minister named Louvois, who had a great deal of influence over the king, and often used it to persuade him to go to war with some of his neighbours. Louis was fond of war; he liked to appear grand and strong to every one in Europe, and his generals usually won victories and triumphs for him whenever a war gave them the opportunity. Louis had schemes of making himself the greatest king that had ever been known; more than king, he wished to be emperor as well, and have the greater part of Europe under his rule. The English king of that time, Charles II., was his friend. Charles was secretly a Roman Catholic, and so was inclined to like the French king, and Louis gave him money and advice and help against his own subjects, and made him more a friend than ever. But there was one man in Europe who was growing up to be a bitter enemy to Louis. This was the young Prince of Orange, one of the chief men at that time in Holland, the grandson of the great William of Orange, who had been at the head of the Dutch in their long struggle against the Spaniards. The Dutch were Protestants, and their country being small and not very strong, they were in great danger from the French, and were always more or less expecting to be attacked by them. They now began to consult with some of the Protestant countries of Europe as to how they might make a league against France. Louis made a treaty with the English, who promised to help him, and then declared war against the Dutch.

This war lasted for six years, and is a very remarkable

one. Louis gained great glory by it, and a good deal of land; yet, on the whole, the Dutch showed that they were able to resist him, and he then first found out what a dangerous enemy William of Orange might come to be. Louis marched into Holland through Germany and crossed the Rhine, which was thought a very wonderful and glorious event, though there was not really much difficulty about it; but many poems have been written in its honour, and the people of Paris came to have an idea that a great feat had been performed; some of them thought that the whole army swam over the river with their enemies firing at them as they went.

The Dutch seeing Louis in their country, and not being able to resist him, were much alarmed. It was proposed, as the only way of stopping the French army, that the whole country round Amsterdam, the capital of Holland, should be flooded, so that it would be impossible for an army to pass. Holland is so low that the sea would naturally flow over the north part of it if the water were not kept out by great walls or banks called dykes, built on purpose by the Dutch. In these dykes are gates called sluices, and when the sluices are opened the water comes rushing through them and covers the country inside. Of course the sluices are usually kept carefully shut, but it was now proposed to open them. There was a little town near Amsterdam where the chief sluices were. One of the French generals was told to take four thousand men and march towards this town. Instead of four thousand he took rather less than two thousand, being short of food. When he got near the town he stopped, and sent on a body of a hundred and fifty soldiers towards Amsterdam. Even these did not get all the way; they

stopped in a town which they took on their road, and only four of them went on to Muiden, where the sluices were. The people, thinking that all the army was behind them, fled away, and these four soldiers had Muiden in their power. However, the Dutch soon found out that no one else was at hand; they came back to Muiden, made the soldiers tipsy, and sent them out of the town, and from that time guarded it carefully. After this the sluices were opened, and Amsterdam was soon an island in the middle of a sea of water, underneath which were country houses, gardens, fields, all given up by the Dutch for the sake of resisting Louis. They had some idea, if he should still prove too strong for them, of flooding the whole country, and all going off in a body on board their ships, to find themselves a new home in America; but this did not prove to be necessary. William of Orange found friends to help him in Europe, and a league was made against the French king.

When winter came and Louis went back to France, his subjects resolved to give him some name to show him how much they admired him for the success he had so far gained against the Dutch. After some disputing they settled that he should be called Louis le Grand, or the Great, and by this name he is known in history. Most of the countries of Europe, Protestant and Roman Catholic alike, now joined together against Louis, for they were all growing afraid of his great power. Germany, Spain, and Denmark came to the help of Holland, and the war went on for year after year. One great misfortune for the French was that their great general, the Count of Turenne, was killed by a cannon-shot while he was fighting in Germany. All the best and

wisest people in France were grieved at his death. Peace was made at last between all the different countries that had been at war, but it was a peace that was not to last long. William knew that he and Louis XIV. must always be deadly enemies, but for the time they ceased fighting. This is called the peace of Nimeguen, from the name of the Dutch town where it was signed.

When this war was over, Louis had a few years of quiet. One of his chief friends at this time was a lady called Madame de Maintenon. She had at one time been governess to some of his children, and he gradually came to admire and respect her so much that he asked her advice about everything, and at last, after the queen's death, ended by marrying her privately. She was never called queen, or treated as one, but went on being considered as a private person, though she really was the wife of the king. In many ways the advice she gave him was very good and useful; she made him attend to serious matters, and think more about religion than he had ever done before; but she was partly the reason of his doing what is usually considered as one of the worst actions of his life—at once wrong and foolish—which happened between the war with the Dutch and the next war ten years afterwards.

Since the time of Richelieu the Huguenots in France had been left tolerably quiet. The Edict of Nantes, which Henry had made on purpose to protect them and make it possible for them to live comfortably in France, had been more or less observed. They had churches of their own, they held their services as often as they liked, and they were able to hold places in the Government and offices of different kinds. The Huguenots had for many years past

been very loyal; they never rose up against the king or gave any trouble of any kind in the country; and they were among the best of Louis's subjects, specially sober, honest, and industrious. But Louis had always had a great dislike to them. He looked upon them as enemies to France, and the priests and Madame de Maintenon encouraged him in these feelings, and told him it was his duty to try to put a stop to heresy. He showed his dislike more and more plainly; he never appointed Huguenots to offices or places; money was collected on purpose to bribe Huguenots to change their religion; and at last Louvois, his minister, invented a horrible plan of quartering soldiers on, that is, sending them to live in the houses of, the Protestants who refused to change their religion.

A body of soldiers would be sent to some village, and five or six men to the cottage of each Huguenot family. The peasants had to give them lodging, find them food, for which they often did not pay, and bear the rude rough way in which the soldiers treated them. The peasants who became Roman Catholics had no soldiers sent to them, and so great was the cruelty of these men, who were told to make themselves as unpleasant as possible to their hosts, that more people were persuaded to change, or pretend to change their religion by this plan than by any other that had been tried. Great lists of people who had changed were sent week by week to the king, and at last his ministers and Roman Catholic friends succeeded in persuading him that there really were scarcely any Protestants left in the country.

He now did what he had long wished to do; he revoked or called back the Edict of Nantes. It ceased to be a law in France, and all the help and protection it had given to

the Huguenots was gone. They were never to meet for worship ; all the Protestant pastors or clergymen must leave the country in a fortnight ; all children must be brought up as Roman Catholics, and, under pain of terrible punishments, no Huguenot, who was not a pastor, was to escape out of France. It was soon seen how great a mistake had been made when it was said that there were not many Huguenots left in France. In spite of the order that they should stay, thousands of them left their homes, and, in spite of every difficulty and danger, they fled away from their native country and escaped into England, or Holland, or Germany, where they might carry on their own religion undisturbed.

They had terrible adventures ; the king's soldiers were always on the watch to stop them, turn them back, carry them off to prison and to cruel punishment. The ports were watched all round the coast, and it was almost impossible to find boats to carry them across the sea. Families had to separate, so as to have a better chance of escaping safely ; husbands and wives, parents and children, brothers and sisters, often said good-bye for the last time before they set off on their separate journeys, and never saw each other again. One would escape safely, and another be taken prisoner, or sometimes both would be taken prisoners and sent to the galleys, or kept in prison for many years, perhaps their lifetimes. Roman Catholics who helped the Protestants to escape were punished as if they had been Protestants themselves, and many Roman Catholics suffered in this way.

The galleys were great boats, on which were fixed benches, where the unfortunate galley slaves spent the whole of the day and night chained to their seats, and

rowing from place to place, with an officer watching to see that they never stopped their work, and to flog any one he chose, as he walked up and down the deck, with a great whip in his hand. Many Huguenots were condemned to this for life, and died on the galleys. But the Protestants ran the risk of all these horrors sooner than stay in a country where they were forbidden to worship God as they thought right, and where their children were taken from them and brought up to believe a false religion. They found fishing-boats and other small vessels in which they crossed the sea, sometimes hidden underneath the cargo of coal, or of whatever made the lading of the boat. They were most kindly received in all the countries to which they fled, and were very useful visitors, for they carried their industrious habits and their skill in all kinds of work to the countries that received them, where their hosts were eager to learn what they had to teach. In London, they set up places for making silk; in Holland, they taught the making of cloths and paper. Some of them settled in Berlin, which was then a small and unimportant town, but which soon became so rich by their industry and the wealth which it brought, that it has now become one of the principal cities of Europe, being the capital of Prussia and of the German Empire. Thus other countries gained as much as France lost by the folly and cruelty of Louis in driving the best of his subjects from their homes.

The king had now reigned for forty years; but as he had thirty years still before him at the time when he revoked the Edict of Nantes, and as there still remains a good deal to be said about him, I will finish his reign in another chapter.

CHAPTER XLV.

LOUIS XIV.—(*concluded*).

1643-1715.

THE cruelty of Louis to the Protestants had made him enemies in all the countries of Europe. Many of his neighbours had been afraid of his great power for some time, and had been trying to make up a league to join together against him; but now all the Protestants were so angry with him, that some of those who had been inclined to take his side went over to the League; and Louis saw that he was in great danger, and that war might begin against him at any moment. His chief enemies were the Emperor of Germany, several of the German princes, and William of Orange; the English, for the present, were on his side, as James II., a Roman Catholic, was now reigning over them, and was the friend of Louis. His enemies called their league the League of Augsburg, from the name of a German town, where it had been chiefly arranged between them; and the war which began about three years after the persecution of the Huguenots, is called the War of the League of Augsburg. It lasted for nine years, and Louis won several great battles, and took several large towns, with great difficulty; yet it was not on the whole successful for him.

Very soon after it began there was a revolution in England: the people drove away James II., their Roman Catholic king, and invited William of Orange, his son-in-law, to come and rule over them. He went, became King of England, and had all the strength of the English to help him in his war against Louis. At the same time, having all the affairs of England to attend to, he could not spend so much of his time in fighting the French as he otherwise might have done. Every summer he went over to the Continent to take part in the war; his armies were made up of Englishmen, Dutchmen, and a great number of the French Huguenots who had been driven from their country by Louis. Their great wish was to go back again to France and be settled there as before, and they believed that no one could bring them back but William. They hoped that if they helped him to conquer his enemy Louis, he would make Louis agree to their going back to France, and living there undisturbed; but this hope was never fulfilled. The Huguenots who had joined the English army spent their lives in England; many of them married English people, and their children and grandchildren became as much Englishmen as any of their neighbours.

Louis had a very strong army with which to resist the other countries of Europe; he also had with him an engineer named Vauban, who knew more about defending and besieging towns than any other man of that time. He used to build towers and walls round a town, and make it so strong that it was almost impossible for any one else to take it; or, on the other hand, he could arrange guns so well, and make trenches and siege-works of different kinds so skilfully, that very few towns could resist when he be-

sieged them. This man was of the greatest use to Louis all through his wars; he could also make canals and bridges; and he wrote a very useful book on the state of France.

While the war was going on Louis had tried to make difficulties for William by helping his enemy, James II., who had come for shelter to the French court when he was turned off the throne of England. Louis gave him a fleet and an army, and sent him to Ireland, where he fought the battle of the Boyne against William III. and his Protestant army, and was entirely beaten; so he fled back to France again. Louis then let him live at Versailles, a palace which had been built in this reign just outside Paris, and treated him with great kindness. William's wife Mary died in the course of the war, and as it was supposed that many of the English cared for William only because he was her husband, Louis thought that now would be a good time for James to try once again whether he could find no friends in his old kingdom. A plot was arranged in England, and James was sent off with some ships, and a brave and skilful captain to command them, to cross the Channel, and land, if possible, in England. But it was of no use; the English fleet was watching, and James had to come back to France once more. He stayed there for the rest of his life.

In this war William and his friends hardly ever won a victory. William himself gained only one in the whole course of his life, and that was in Ireland, at the battle of the Boyne. Year after year he went to the Netherlands, or to Germany, or wherever the war was going on, fought a great battle, or tried to take or defend a town, and was

beaten. Yet, after nine years of fighting, Louis was willing to agree to the terms of peace which William proposed. These terms were, that he should acknowledge William as King of England, and give up to the English and Dutch and Germans all the towns and country he had taken from them during the war. A peace was made at Ryswick in Holland, which was, on the whole, good for the allies of the League of Augsburg, and bad for France and Louis; but it is said that the reason Louis agreed to it was that he wanted to give all his thoughts and strength to the question of who should be the next King of Spain, about which he was very anxious. Before the peace was settled, William III. tried to persuade Louis to give leave to the Huguenots who had been driven away from France to come back to their own homes and settle there again, but the French king would not hear of it.

There are so many wars and treaties of peace in this reign, that I have made a little table of them at the end of this chapter, for it is impossible that any one can remember them by merely reading their names once. By seeing a list of them all together, one comes to understand what an extraordinary reign this was, on account both of its length and of the number of events which happened in it. We have now come to the end of the seventeenth century. The peace of Ryswick was signed three years before 1700; all that comes after this happened in the last century, in which people no older than our own grandfathers were born.

During all this war of the League of Augsburg the people of France had suffered terribly. Two or three men in the country were bold enough to write books, in which they gave an account of all the misery they saw about

them. Louis XIV. had such complete power in France that there were not many of his subjects who dared to tell him the truth, and he never called together the States-General, so that he did not even have the lists of complaints which they would have drawn up, and which might have given him some idea of the state of his subjects. This is the way in which one of the great writers of that time—Fénélon, who was tutor to the king's grandson, and afterwards a bishop—describes France as it was then:—"The whole of France is one great hospital, with no food in it. The people who once loved you so well (his book is a kind of letter addressed to Louis) are now losing their trust in you, their friendship, and even their respect for you. You are obliged either to leave their rebellions unpunished, or to massacre people whom you have driven to despair, and who are dying every day of illnesses brought on by famine. The land is almost uncultivated; the cities and the country have lost their inhabitants, commerce has come to an end, and trade brings in no riches." The letter goes on to say that Louis ought to make peace, even on bad terms, for that the war he was carrying on was an unjust one, in which he was thinking only of his own glory, and that his first duty was to attend to his people's happiness.

It is not certain that the king ever saw this letter, but it gives us some idea of what the state of the country must have been; and other people wrote books, saying the same sort of thing, which were published and read by every one, though they do not seem to have had any special effect on Louis.

In the year 1700 the King of Spain, Charles II., died,

after having been for thirty-two years so weak and delicate that it had been supposed every year that he must die before the end of it. He had been married three times, but had never had any children, so that it was not certain who would be king after him. In Spain the king could make a will if he had no child, leaving the Crown to anyone he chose, so that there was great interest to know what Charles would settle. He had had no brothers, but two sisters, and each of his sisters had a grandson. One of these sisters had been the wife of Louis XIV., so her grandson was his grandson as well, and what Louis naturally wished was that this young man, whose name was Philip, should be King of Spain, in which case Louis himself would really govern both kingdoms, for Philip was young, and would have done as his grandfather desired him. But Charles II. liked the grandson of his other sister better than Philip, and always said he should leave the kingdom to him. This was a child of seven years old, a little prince of Bavaria, called Joseph Ferdinand. There was one other person who thought he had a right to be king, and this was Charles, son of the Emperor of Germany, who was not so near a relation as either of the others, but who had the wife of Charles II. for his friend.

The poor King of Spain spent the last year or two of his life in the greatest distress, trying in vain to make up his mind which of all these people should succeed him. His wife wished for Charles, and he wished for Joseph Ferdinand, and some of his ministers wished for Philip, the grandson of Louis; and the other countries of Europe, in particular England, interfered, and began making treaties with each other for dividing the kingdom, which he thought

worse than anything. At last little Joseph Ferdinand died suddenly, and the question was now only between the French prince, the grandson of Louis, and the German prince, the son of the Emperor. Louis sent an ambassador to Spain, who lived at Madrid, and did everything he could to please the king and make friends with the great nobles and the people. His wife came to live there too, and was a great help to him, for she was so charming that every one liked to come to his house, and he was then able to say to them all that he wished. In the end he was successful. Charles II. made a will leaving all his possessions to Philip, and if he did not accept them, to Charles, the Emperor's son. Directly after this he died; the will was read, and Philip was invited to come to Spain, and settle himself there as king.

Louis had now gained what he had been wishing for so long, but it brought him great trouble as well as pleasure. He had just made an arrangement with William of England, by which the Spanish kingdom was to be divided between England, France, and Germany, and he knew the English would be angry at his taking it all for himself. However, after some little thought, he decided to accept the will, and sent his grandson Philip to Spain, telling him to be a good Spaniard, without forgetting that he was a Frenchman, and hoping that France and Spain would now be like one country. "There are no more Pyrenees," he said to Philip, meaning that the natural division between the two countries had come to an end.

After this Louis, in several small ways, offended every one who had already been made angry by his allowing his grandson to accept this great inheritance, and at last his

chief enemies made a league against him and began a war. These enemies were the English, the Dutch, and the Emperor. Their league was called the Grand Alliance, and the war, the War of the Spanish Succession; it lasted for twelve years. Peace was made only two years before the death of Louis. Soon after the war had begun William III. of England died, and was succeeded by Anne—"the good Queen Anne"—his sister-in-law, whose general, the Duke of Marlborough, was almost as good a soldier as William, though a far less great man, and carried on the war very successfully for England.

Louis had bad generals; he usually appointed men who were friends of his own, or of Madame de Maintenon's, whether they were good soldiers or not. This was one of the bad results of doing everything for himself, and trusting so little to any minister. The Emperor's son Charles, who now called himself Charles III. of Spain, attacked Philip V., King of Spain, and at one time drove him from the throne and set himself up there instead. But the Spanish people, in the course of this war, came to care strongly about Philip, and fought for him faithfully, so that at last Charles was driven out of the country; and when his father and his elder brother died, he became Emperor of Germany, and cared no more about Spain, so Philip and his descendants ruled there peacefully as Louis had wished.

But with Louis himself, as the war went on, things did not go so well. He had two specially dangerous enemies, the Duke of Marlborough in England, and the Prince Eugene in Germany. These two were both great soldiers, and they planned the war so skilfully that their armies were always coming up to help one another and to destroy

the French. A great battle was fought at Blenheim, near the river Danube, where the French were entirely beaten, and lost not only many men, but all their power and force in Germany. This was the worst misfortune that had then ever happened to Louis.

The war went on, and two years later Marlborough won another great victory at Ramillies. This was in the Netherlands, and therefore much nearer to France and Paris than Blenheim had been. The king and his people were frightened, and Louis tried to make peace with England and Holland separately. However, the war still went on; the English took the Rock of Gibraltar from the Spaniards, and have kept it as their own till this day. They had constant success, though they lost many soldiers in every battle, and there was a party in England which was very anxious that the war should stop as soon as might be. Seven years after the war began there came a dreadful winter in France; till January the weather was so warm that leaves came out, and flowers and blossom began to grow, then there came a sudden sharp frost, and everything was killed. The frost lasted for some time, and the people, who were in great poverty and wretchedness to begin with, suffered terribly; their houses were falling down, their clothes were thin and bad, and when they could buy no food they fell ill and died in great numbers. Wolves came down from the forests and mountains and attacked the people in the plains.

The next summer Marlborough gained a third great victory, as famous as those of Blenheim and Ramillies; it was at Malplaquet, in Belgium. Here more men were killed on both sides than in any former battle. The English, though they were victorious, had lost more men than the

French, and people in England became more and more anxious that the war should come to an end. The French, who had retreated from the battle in good order, were in rather better spirits, though they had been beaten, than they had been before, and were becoming less afraid of the "fierce Malbrook," as he was called in France. After this there was no other serious battle, and four years afterwards peace was signed at Utrecht. Philip was to remain King of Spain, and Louis solemnly promised that the countries of France and Spain should never be ruled by the same king. Louis recognised Anne as Queen of England, and promised to send away from France the son of James II., called the Pretender, who wished to make himself King of England as James III. There were altogether ten treaties made at Utrecht, for France made peace separately with all the nations which had joined the Grand Alliance, and Spain and Portugal did the same. Thus, at last, there was peace through all Europe.

A year before the end of the war a great trouble came upon Louis XIV. His eldest son, the Dauphin, had lived to be about fifty without making himself remarkable in any kind of way. The king had taken great pains with his education, and had him brought up by one of the greatest writers, and the most famous Churchman of the time—Bossuet, Bishop of Meaux—who had written books entirely for him, and done everything possible to make him a perfect king, in spite of all which he grew up with hardly any character, no virtues, no particular vices; and hardly anything is known of him till, when he was fifty years old, he suddenly died of smallpox. He left a son of about twenty-five, who had been brought up with as much care as his

father, and with much better success. His tutor had been Fénelon, the Archbishop of Cambrai, who is sometimes called the Swan of Cambrai, from his gentleness and innocence; while Bossuet is called the Eagle of Meaux, from his strength and activity, and king-like qualities. Fénelon's pupil, the Duke of Burgundy, had had many faults while he was quite young, but had been cured of them by his master, and was at once so good and so clever that the people were looking forward to a good king in him. Now that his father, the Dauphin, was dead, he was next heir to the throne, and Louis felt that he should leave a worthy successor behind him.

The Duke of Burgundy had a wife who was very gay and charming, made the court amusing and cheerful to every one, and was specially loved by the old king. Suddenly she fell ill of a violent fever, and died after a few days' illness. The next morning her husband, the duke, was seized with the same illness; a few days after he also died, leaving two children, both boys, one five and the other two years old. Both children caught the fever from their parents; the elder died, the younger was saved with great difficulty, and lived to succeed his great-grandfather as Louis XV.

The poor old king was deeply grieved by these misfortunes, which happened to him one after another. He also knew that his people were in great distress; he found it vain to try and raise any more money from them. There were riots for bread in several cities. The court became more and more gloomy; even Madame de Maintenon grew tired of the king, who was still devoted to her. He had now been on the throne for seventy-two years, and was dying of old age. He was calm and grand and king-like, as

he had always been, to the very end of his life. On his death-bed he had his little great-grandson Louis XV., who was then five years old, brought to him, and said good-bye to the child in words which were afterwards painted on the head of his bed, that they might be in his sight night and morning. "You are soon to be king of a great country. What I commend most earnestly to you is never to forget the obligations you owe to God. Remember that you owe all you are to Him. Try to keep peace with your neighbours; I have been too fond of war, do not imitate me in that, nor in my too great expenditure." Louis XIV. died, left alone by his friends, even by Madame de Maintenon, and his people were glad to hear of his death. They had suffered so much in the last years of his reign, that they hoped for something better under a new Government, whatever it might be. They could not foresee how bad a king was to succeed their Great Monarch, as Louis was called during his lifetime and since. Louis was one of the most remarkable kings in French history; and though no one would say that he was altogether a good man, there are many reasons for thinking him a great one.

THE WARS AND TREATIES IN THE REIGN OF LOUIS XIV.

Thirty Years' War. Ended by the Peace of Westphalia, 1648.

(Going on when he began to reign.)

War with Spain. Ended by the Peace of the Pyrenees, 1658.

(By which it was settled that Louis should marry Maria Theresa.)

War with Spain (about Maria Theresa's rights). Ended by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1668.

War with Holland (lasted six years). Ended by the Peace of Nimeguen, 1678.

War of the League of Augsburg. Ended by the Peace of Ryswick, 1697.

War of the Spanish Succession. Ended by the Peace of Utrecht, 1713.

CHAPTER XLVI.

LOUIS XV. (1715-1774).

THERE have been very few worse kings than Louis XV. of France. He was a bad weak man, with none of the virtues of his father, or the great qualities of Louis XIV. He was not so fortunate as to have any great minister to help him in his reign, as Richelieu helped Louis XIII., and he lived at a time when there were great disturbances and troubles in France and in other countries, so that it was of special importance to each country that its king should be a wise and prudent man.

When Louis XIV. died the little Louis was, as I said, only five years old, and his great-grandfather had made arrangements that the country should be governed, not by any one regent but by a body of men, who were to be what was called a Council of Regency. At the head of this council was a man who had been the nephew of the last king, and was the great-uncle of the present one, and the nearest relation of the young king. His name was the Duke of Orleans. This man had expected to be Regent without any council to prevent him from doing what he wished, and when he had gone to see Louis XIV. on his deathbed, the poor old king had been afraid to tell him what had been arranged by the will, and so had said, "I have left

affairs in such a way as will quite satisfy you." After this the Duke of Orleans was made very angry by finding out that he was not to be regent, and that another man had even been chosen to be guardian of the little king.

The Parliament held a meeting to hear the will read, and then the duke made a speech, saying that he was the fit person to be regent, and that the king had almost promised that he should be, and he succeeded so well in bringing all his hearers round to his side, that it was resolved to pay no attention to the will, but to make the Duke of Orleans regent, and let him choose the men who were to form the council and help him by their advice. At that time it was supposed that Louis would never live to grow up, and the Duke of Orleans was full of hopes of getting the crown for himself whenever the little king should die.

The regent and his advisers began their government by making everything as unlike as possible to what it had been in the reign of the last king. As he had done everything for himself, and had not even had chief ministers for the different parts of the Government, the regent resolved that each different part should be managed not by one man, but by a council of several men, who were to discuss together and settle what was to be done. This plan was tried for about three years, and did not answer well. It was found that matters were settled less, not more, quickly when there were several men to talk over what was to be done, instead of one, who would only have had to make up his own mind. The councils were done away with, and ministers chosen instead.

Philip of Orleans, the regent, had some things about him that were good and pleasant. He had a great taste

for learning of all kinds ; he was fond of music, and had written an opera ; he spoke well, and was a good soldier ; besides this, he had kind pleasant manners and was never cruel. But he was idle, and so fond of pleasure that his good qualities were of very little use to him, for he spent his time in feasting and amusing himself in bad ways, when he should have been attending to the government of the country.

He had a favourite minister, named Dubois, whom he allowed to manage the affairs of France very much in his own way, and who was a bad dishonest man, but anxious for the safety of the country, and clever in finding out plans for defending it against the attacks of the other nations who were its enemies. One of his great difficulties, as is always the case with the rulers of any great nation, was how to find enough money for carrying on the Government without putting on any fresh taxes, to which it was known the people would object. There was at this time a Scotchman in France, called John Law, who was full of a plan he had invented for making the Government of France rich, without, as he hoped, making anybody else the poorer. The way in which he meant to do this is rather difficult to understand, but his chief idea was to have paper money instead of the usual gold and silver coin.

Before this, paper money had been used sometimes by private people who had business together. People had begun to understand that money is useful to us only because we can change it away for other things we want. Therefore, anything which people agree to take in exchange for what they have to sell, will serve for money just as well as gold and silver. Law thought it would be a good

plan to have money made of something so common that the Government could always make as much as was wanted, and every one have plenty. He proposed that it should be made of paper like our bank-notes—sheets of paper, with the sum of money they were worth stamped upon them. This paper money was to be used as well as gold and silver, and orders were to be given that it should be considered as money all through the country. There was to be a bank, or place where money could be kept, at which the sheets of paper, which were called notes, could always be changed for money when the people to whom they belonged wished it.

But Law had forgotten one thing, which made his plan fail. Nobody cares to have anything that is not useful in itself, if it is very common indeed, and very easily to be had. If every one has great quantities of paper money already, it will be of so little value to them, that they will not consider a small quantity of it worth having, and they will ask for a great deal of it in exchange for their goods, so that the people who buy will be no richer than before; they will have more money than usual to begin with, but they will also have to spend more than usual.

This happened in France when Law's plan was tried there. The paper money became less and less valuable, and at last people began to dislike having it at all, and to ask for gold instead. They all took their notes to the bank to be changed for gold and silver; and then found that there was not enough gold and silver for them to receive what was owing to them. Hundreds of people were ruined in this way. Law had other plans besides that of the notes, and they all seemed to fail at the

same time. The French, who had believed in him, had all joined in his plans, taken his paper money, helped him in all he undertook, and hoped to make their fortunes ; but many of them, instead of this, were utterly ruined, and found they had lost all their good money, and had, instead, only notes that were of no use to them. Law himself, who seems to have been an honest man, and to have really thought that what he did was for the good of the country, was ruined also. He had bought land in France with the first money he had gained ; he left it and wandered away poor, after all his grand hopes, to the neighbouring countries, where he lived till his death, ten years afterwards.

While inside France every one was taken up with thinking about Law and his plans, which turned out so ill for all who believed in them, the affairs of the French abroad were going on very well, managed by Dubois, the regent's favourite Minister. The chief enemy of France was Spain. The hope of Louis XIV., that after his grandson became King of Spain, the two nations would always be friends to one another, had not come to pass. The very fact of the kings of the two countries being relations made a reason for their quarrelling, for the Spanish king hoped to succeed Louis XV. on the throne if he died young, which every one fully expected him to do. The French, the English, and the Dutch, all joined to make an alliance against Spain, and as there were three of them, they called it *The Triple Alliance*. After a time they persuaded the Emperor of Germany to join it. And then, as there were four nations allied together, they called it the *Quadruple Alliance*.

After all these preparations there was not much fighting. The Spaniards were not strong enough to resist England, France, Germany, and Holland, all at the same time, and peace was very soon made by a treaty called the Treaty of London, in the year 1720. The Spanish king sent away the minister who had persuaded him to wish for the French crown, and Spain gave up some places about which there had been a dispute, to the Emperor and to France. After all, Louis XV. did not die for many years after this, and when he did, he left a grandson to succeed him, so there was no need for the King of Spain and the Regent to quarrel about his possessions.

What Dubois wished at this time, more than anything else, was to be made cardinal. It was the greatest honour, next to being Pope, that a Roman Catholic priest could have, and the Pope was always chosen from among the cardinals. Perhaps Dubois may have had hopes in his mind of even coming to be Pope some day; and many of the great French ministers had been cardinals, in particular, Richelieu and Mazarin, and Dubois, who thought himself nearly as great a man as they were, was anxious for the same honour.

There was hardly any king or important person in Europe to whom he did not write letters and send presents, begging them to ask the Pope to listen to his wish. In spite of all this the Pope who was then reigning refused the request, but when he died, Dubois managed that the new Pope should be one of his own friends; and one of the new Pope's first actions was to send a cardinal's hat, which was the way of showing that a man was made cardinal, to Dubois. Very soon after this Dubois met with an accident

while he was reviewing the king's troops, and died a day or two afterwards.

A few months later the Regent too, who had been ill for some time, died suddenly one evening while the King was sitting in a room close by, waiting for the Duke to come up to work with him. Philip of Orleans had left off being regent by the time this happened. The little king was now thirteen years old, and, according to the French laws, was old enough to rule by himself. Philip of Orleans and Dubois had not been good rulers for France. Philip had thought only of his pleasures, and Dubois had cared more for his own power and fame than for anything else ; but still they had done something to make France strong and powerful among the countries of Europe, and the men who were to come after them were worse than they had been.

Louis XV. was not a promising child. He was dull, silent, took no interest in anything, and cared for nobody. He had a very small cow and a white doe, which were his chief friends. He used to milk the little cow himself, and the doe followed him about everywhere ; but he did not really care for them. Just about the time that he came of age, he made up his mind, for no special reason, to kill his white doe. He took a gun and shot at it. It was wounded, but had strength enough to crawl up to him and lick his hand. He had it taken away to the right distance, shot at it again, and this time killed it. He had never had any one to teach him anything good ; his parents had died when he was two years old, and the people who brought him up seemed to be trying to make him cruel and self-indulgent and idle. He grew up as bad a man as might be expected.

His first minister was the Duke of Bourbon, a man as bad as the Regent, and less clever; his second was Cardinal Fleury, an honest, quiet, rather slow old man, who managed the affairs of the country well through the sixteen years during which his power lasted. When the king was old enough to be married, a Polish princess was chosen to be his wife. Her father had once been king of Poland, but had been turned off the throne, and was living as a private person. He was much delighted when his daughter was sent for to become Queen of France. She was several years older than the king, who never cared much about her.

A few years later the King of Poland died. It was a question who should be king after him, whether the father of the French queen, or the son of the last king, who was a German. The Poles wished for Stanislaus, the French king's father-in-law, and he set off for Poland, hoping that Louis would send him an army to help him conquer his German enemy, but he was disappointed. Louis was thinking about other matters; no army came, and Stanislaus soon had to leave the country and come back to France, where he stayed for the rest of his life. Directly after this there was a war between France and Austria, which lasted for three years, and at the end of which France gained, by a treaty, the province of Lorraine on the east side of France; which, joining on to Alsace and the Three Bishoprics, Metz, Verdun, and Toul, made a kind of boundary between France and Germany, and was considered then, and has been thought since, very important for the safety of France.

At this time the people of France were suffering

terribly. A French writer, just after the peace had been made between France and Austria, said: "At this very moment in which I write, in time of peace, men are dying all round us, as thick as flies; they are wretched, eating grass." One day, when the king drove into Paris, the people, instead of crying, "Long live the King!" shouted out "Misery, famine, bread!" as he went by. Once when Louis was holding a council, the Duke of Orleans threw on to the table a bit of bread made of bracken or fern, and said: "See, Sire, this is your subjects' food." At this time one of the taxes which the people most hated was put on all over the country; it was called the *corvée*, and it meant that when new roads were made, going from one part of the country to another, the peasants who lived where the road was being made were to go and work upon it for nothing, and lend their horses or carts, if they were wanted, both for making the road at first and for keeping it in repair afterwards. As they had to do this without being paid, it made them very angry.

At about this time the king began to lead a very bad life, doing nothing but amuse himself in all sorts of wrong ways. But the people did not know of this, and cared much more about him than he deserved. Once when he had a dangerous illness, they were all in despair at the thought of his death, and when he began to get better, they could hardly do enough to show their pleasure.

When the reign of Louis XV. was about half over, the Emperor of Germany died. He had been very anxious that his daughter Maria Theresa should govern the empire after him, and that her husband should be Emperor. He had made laws to say this should be so,

and he had been constantly asking the other princes of Europe to promise that they would do nothing to prevent it. Some of them had promised and others had not, but when he died they almost all turned against Maria Theresa and said, whoever had the empire, it should not be she. After some disputing, almost all the countries of Europe went to war. Maria Theresa's husband was the Archduke of Austria, so Austria was on her side, and England and Russia. On the other side were France, Spain, Prussia—which was just beginning to become known as a distinct nation—Poland, and many of the small German princes.

The war lasted for eight years, and while it was going on there were two great battles fought between the English and the French—one at Dettingen, in the Netherlands, won by the English, and another at Fontenoy, gained by the French. When peace was made at last at Aix-la-Chapelle, it was settled that Maria Theresa's husband should be Emperor, under the name of Francis I., and that she should have all the possessions her father had meant to leave her, except one, which she gave up to the King of Prussia.

While this war was going on the French gained a great deal of land in India. They had two famous generals, who conquered Madras and other places, driving the English out of them. The English took nearly all these places away from them about ten years later, in the time of Lord Clive, but just at the moment the French gained great glory by their triumphs in India.

After the war with Austria there were eight years of peace, and then seven years of war, but neither in peace nor in war did Louis XV. show any good qualities or do

anything that was for the good of his country. An ambassador staying at his court said that he could not find even one hour a day for serious business. He spent his time in hunting and other amusements, and there was usually some lady about the court to whom he would listen more than to any one else, and whose advice he took on all sorts of matters, which he ought to have settled himself, or with the help of the ministers. Several great men lived under his reign; among others, several great writers, of whom the chief was Voltaire, a great friend of the King of Prussia, and a man who has written many interesting books himself, and had many amusing and curious things written about him, which are to be read in books of various languages. There were other writers, too many for me to tell you their names, though they were none of them, except Voltaire, as famous as the men who had lived in the reign of Louis XIV.

The last war in this reign was called The Seven Years' War, so called from the length of time for which it lasted, and was between England and France, and also between Prussia and Austria. England and Prussia were friends, though their armies did not fight together, but went on separately, each attending only to their own enemies, and France and Austria, who had been such fierce enemies, had now made a treaty and were on the same side.

At first the French armies seemed to be successful, especially against King Frederick of Prussia, who was beaten in a great battle, and who, with his small army and enemies all around him, expected to be entirely destroyed. But in this great difficulty he showed himself to be one of the best soldiers in Europe. No one had known

it of him before, and there was great surprise when he suddenly led his men against the French, and defeated them so thoroughly that for a long time he had no more trouble with them. He made marches which took every one by surprise, and always appeared with his small army just when his friends wanted him most, and his enemies the least expected him. The English beat the French by sea, and then took from them all they had won in Canada and in India. When the war ended by the Peace of Paris in 1763, the English gave up some of the places in India, but kept all Canada, which has been under English government ever since. A peace was made between Austria and Prussia at the same time as the peace of Paris between France and England, and thus all the war in Europe stopped.

While this war was going on, a man named Damiens made an attempt to kill the king. He stabbed him in the back with a knife, one day when Louis was getting into his carriage at Versailles for a drive. Damiens always said that he meant only to wound the king, not to kill him, and this seems true, for he had stabbed him with the smaller of two blades which he had in his knife, and had made only a slight scratch, so that the doctor said: "If the king were any common man, he would be able to go to his work again to-morrow." However, the king was terribly frightened, thought the knife might be poisoned, and even when he found that he had got completely well, was so much disturbed, that he had Damiens tried and put to death in the most cruel way that had then been discovered.

The reign of Louis lasted for eleven more years after

the peace of Paris, but there is scarcely anything to be said about them. As I have said, he had always some great lady for his favourite, whose advice he took about everything, so that when he chose his favourite badly the affairs of the country went on ill. One was the Madame de Pompadour, of whom pictures are often to be seen in old French fashion-books, and who seems to have done up her hair in a powdered pyramid on the top of her head, which was probably the fashion for ladies of that time. She gave Louis bad advice, and was the enemy of the Dauphin, the king's eldest son, who died before his father, so that the next heir was the king's grandson. Louis XV. died in 1774.

CHAPTER XLVII.

LOUIS XVI. (1774-1792).

LOUIS XV. was succeeded by his grandson, also called Louis, as every French king since Henry IV. had been. He was twenty years old when he became king, and was an honest, well-meaning young man, who fully intended to do what he could for the country, and to undo as much as possible of the harm his grandfather had done. He had a young wife named Marie Antoinette, the daughter of Maria Theresa, who had fought with the French in the Seven Years' War. Marie Antoinette was beautiful, lively, and kind-hearted, very proud and determined, but foolish and ignorant. She was often much provoked with the king, who, though kind and gentle, was weak and undecided, and never could make up his mind as to what to do in a difficulty, till it was too late to do anything. However, her advice was often bad, for she knew scarcely anything about the country over which she had become queen.

The reign began happily. Louis changed all the old ministers, and did all he could to change the old habits of the courtiers as well. He worked hard himself at his duties as a king, and tried to make his ministers do the same; and to prevent the people about him from wasting their

time and money in amusement, dress, and other foolish or bad ways, which had been usual in his grandfather's reign.

His chief minister was named Maurepas ; he was an old man who had had nothing to do with the Government for so long that he did not understand the state of the country, and gave the young king much advice which did not turn out well for him in the end. But Louis was fortunate enough to have one really great and wise man among his ministers. His name was Turgot, and Louis made him Finance Minister, that is, the minister who has to attend to all that concerns the money of the kingdom, to see that the taxes are collected, to know how much the king has in his treasury, and above all to think of new ways for getting more, so that the treasury may never be empty. This was still as great a difficulty as it always had been in France. The people who had most money to spare paid scarcely any taxes ; the poor people already paid so many, that it would have been useless to ask them for more. Turgot did what he could, and made himself many enemies, so many that at last even the king was persuaded that Turgot's plans could never be carried out, and he was sent out of the ministry. The king at one time used to say, "There is no one but Turgot and I who cares for the people."

After this there were several finance ministers, one after the other, who all tried different plans for filling the treasury, and all failed. The most successful was one called M. Necker, who was a great favourite with the people. At this time there was a war between England and the English colonies in America, in which the colonies were successful, and separated themselves entirely from England under a government of their own, which they

have kept till the present time. While the war was going on the Americans asked for help against England from many of the countries of Europe, in particular from France, which was nearer to them than Russia, Prussia, or Austria. A band of young French noblemen went over to help the Americans, and had the pleasure of seeing them get the better of the English and end the war, as I have said, by a peace, in which they gained all that they had wished.

It is said that these Frenchmen brought back to France the idea of a country without a king and without noblemen, where the people governed themselves; and that hearing of it was one of the reasons which made the French so discontented with their king and all the hardships they had to bear from the proud nobles. In particular, the soldiers heard of the new ideas, and listened to them eagerly. The war was a fresh difficulty to France, by causing still more money to be spent. The nobles would pay no more taxes; the poor could pay no more; and all Necker could do was to borrow money, which, as it all had to be paid back again, did not really help him so much as he had hoped. He gave it up at last, left off being minister, and another man was chosen instead of him. By this time the king and queen were no longer such favourites as they had been with the people. The king's faults began to show themselves more. As the difficulties of governing grew greater, he seemed less inclined to struggle against them. His favourite amusements were hunting and locksmith's work; he spent a great deal of time in both of these. He had a locksmith to give him lessons in making locks and keys, and was often engaged in this amusement

when he might have been learning things about his country, which it would have been a blessing for him and his subjects if he had known.

The queen was gay and lively, and liked to behave as if she had been a private person; she had a little farm made for her, called Trianon, where she often went in plain clothes, and passed the day in looking after the cows, poultry, and butter. She also gave balls and parties of all kinds at her different palaces and places of amusement, and went constantly to the play, the opera, and all kinds of gaieties. She had boating parties and moonlight parties in her garden, and walked or danced with the gayest of her courtiers for hours at a time, while the king was shut up with his locksmith, enjoying himself as any private person might have done. The people, who were in great distress, were vexed to see the queen enjoying herself in this way, and thought her more heartless than she really was, for she seems to have had a kind heart, and to have wished well to everybody, though she had no idea in what way to please them.

The new finance minister soon got into fresh trouble, as Necker had done. He proposed to put some fresh taxes on the nobles and the clergy, and advised the king to call a council of some of the wisest men in the kingdom, in order to propose this tax to them, try to persuade them to agree to it, and ask their advice as to what else could be done to free the country from its difficulties. These men met together, and were called the Notables, as they were supposed to be noted or specially known for being important people among their neighbours. The Notables could not agree to the minister's proposals, and after a few months

the Assembly was closed without having done much good, though the angry speeches that had been made might have shown the king's Government that the people were growing more disturbed than they had ever been before, and that they were becoming more and more inclined to examine for themselves into what was going on, and to try to set right the matters which Louis and his ministers did not seem able to set right for them. #

About this time the king and queen had their first child, a daughter, and soon afterwards a son. They gave away a great deal in presents to the poor in honour of these happy events, and so pleased the people for a time; but some of the enemies the king had at court soon managed to stir up the people again against him. Louis had been persuaded to promise to call together the States-General. These had not met since the beginning of the reign of Louis XIII., a hundred and seventy-five years before. It was hoped that the States-General would settle all the affairs of the country, which had now fallen into so much confusion. In the meantime Louis recalled Necker, and made him Finance Minister once more.

The members of the States-General were elected or chosen as they had always been by the people, but there had never before been so much interest in the elections. The old lists of complaints were drawn up by the electors, and given to the deputies, who were to lay them before the king. Twelve hundred members were chosen, some by the nobles, some by the clergy, and the rest by the people. The members all met at Versailles, and they marched in procession into Paris, fifteen miles off, to go to mass at the church of Nôtre Dame. Out of the twelve hundred mem-

bers, six hundred had been chosen by the people, so that their deputies were half of the whole number, and had as much power as the deputies of the clergy and the nobles added together. There had been different arrangements to prevent this in the old States-General, but now no one was strong enough to resist what the people wished.

The procession was a very grand sight. The deputies of the commons marched first in plain black cloaks and white cravats; then came the nobles, in cloaks of velvet, dyed bright colours, or worked with gold, adorned with rustling laces and waving plumes; after them the clergy in their full dress as priests; and last of all the king himself, with his household all in their most splendid costumes. All along the road were thick crowds of people who had come out from Paris to see them pass, and were looking on from roofs of houses, windows, lamp-posts, or from the road, wherever they could find a place to see the deputies pass by. The deputies reached Paris, heard mass, and next day came back to Versailles, to the hall where they were to meet, and where the king opened the States-General.

From this time the serious troubles of Louis XVI. began. His people had been angry and discontented before, but he had hardly known it, or had thought that the troubles might easily be set right, if he and the people once understood each other. The people themselves had hardly known how much there was which they disliked and wished to have altered in the Government, till their deputies met together and began to make their grievances seem worse by talking them over with each other. It was so new an idea to the common people of France, that they were strong enough to force the Government to give them

what they wished, that they did not know how to use their strength wisely. At this time the king felt the bad results of what Richelieu and Louis XIV. had done in weakening the nobles, and taking away so much of their power that they had no strength left, and could do nothing on the side either of the king or of the people. They might have taken the side of the king, and been ready to defend him against the people, or they might have helped the people to gain the things which it was right that they should have, and have resisted them when they became lawless, and began to take what could not be given up to them.

However, Louis had no idea of fighting with his people, and when the States-General began, the people had no idea of fighting with their king. The deputies of the common people decided to give themselves a name. They had been called the Third Estate, the clergy and the nobles having been the First and the Second Estates, but they now wished for something different, and after some disputing, settled to call themselves the National Assembly, as if they had been there to answer for the whole of France, and the nobles and clergy had been of no importance at all. The other two orders were not strong enough to resist this, especially as the king could not or would not help them.

After this had been settled the National Assembly became more and more violent. The king tried to stop the meetings for a time by shutting up the great hall in which they were usually held; but the deputies at once found another place of meeting, and in a tennis-court close by they took an oath never to separate, whatever any one might do to dismiss them, till they had finished their work of setting right all that had gone wrong in the government

of France. Most of the deputies of the clergy came over to the side of the National Assembly, though the deputies of the nobles still resisted them.

The king, at last determined to satisfy his people, and leave them no excuse for refusing to obey him, went to the National Assembly and made a speech, in which he promised to make great alterations in the laws, giving them more than they had ever had before, of the power, the freedom, and the safety, for which, as he knew, they had long wished. Louis fully expected that the Assembly would now be satisfied, but it was too late; the deputies had grown angry, and refused to accept these promises from the king, saying that it was for them to make such laws, not for him. They refused to separate until the next day, as the king had ordered them to do at the end of his speech, went on with their discussions as usual, and when the king's officer came to command them to leave the hall, they replied that they would not go unless they were driven out by the bayonet.

This was the first time the king's subjects had actually disobeyed him, and this was the time at which he should have defended his own rights, if he ever meant to defend them; but even now it was hard for him to defend himself, for many of the soldiers took the side of the people, and refused to march when their officers commanded them. The king could never make up his mind in a difficulty; he was slow and undecided, listening to first one person and then another, and always inclined to think other people's opinions better than his own. He commanded the nobles to join with the other two orders in the National Assembly, and they at last did so.

The king now began to feel himself in danger, and he ordered that some bodies of soldiers on whom he thought he might depend, should be brought up round Paris. The Assembly begged him to dismiss these troops, and he refused. A few weeks after, the king dismissed Necker, the Minister of Finance, who was a great favourite with the people, but who was not able to give any help in these troubles. When the people heard that he was gone, they thought that the king must be planning some great attack upon them. Some of the king's chief enemies made them speeches, telling them they were in great danger, and the townspeople marched through the streets in bodies, with green boughs in their hats, carrying busts of Necker in triumph.

After this the French Guards, the king's own soldiers, joined the people; they refused to march against the mob, or to listen to their officers, and they drove the foreign troops, who were still faithful to the king, out of Paris. The officers of these troops had no orders from the king; they only made matters worse, and the people more angry, when they tried to keep order. This was a Sunday; the next day, Monday, no work was done. All the shops, except those for food, were shut; the people put on ribbons of red, white, and blue, the old colours of Paris and of the army mixed, in order to show that the people and soldiers were friends. This ribbon of three colours was called the tricolor, and has been the colour of the French Republic ever since.

The people with their ribbons marched through the streets from one place to another asking for arms. On their way they came to a debtors' prison, broke it open,

and let out the prisoners. Some other prisoners who were being punished for crimes, not for debt, heard of this, and hoping the people would help them, began to break up the pavement of their prison and prepare to escape; but when the crowd came by they fired down upon the prisoners and made them stay where they were. There were not many arms to be found, but all the smiths of Paris were set to work making them. They found money, more than a hundred thousand pounds, in the Hôtel de Ville, or Town Hall, which they carried off, and bought every musket in the town.

It was reckoned that in thirty-six hours fifty thousand pikes would be ready for the masses of men who were waiting for them. The next day the mob went for arms to the Hôtel of the Invalides, a large building used as a hospital for old soldiers. They rushed to the building, and the governor knew that his troops would not resist them. They made their way in, and carried off thirty thousand muskets and twenty pieces of cannon. The pavement in the streets was pulled up; those who had no arms carried stones; the city was in an uproar, and all this time the king and his advisers and captains could do nothing. The king at Versailles thought there was no danger. When they told him of what was going on, he said, with some surprise, "Why, this is a revolt!" "Sire," one of his friends said, "it is not a revolt, but a revolution."

The French Revolution is indeed the name by which this great rising up of the French people against their rulers has always been known. Revolution really means a turning round, and so it is used to express any great

change in the state of affairs, of whatever kind. There have been other revolutions in France since this first great one, but no other of so much importance.

The people in Paris next resolved to attack the Bastille, an old and very strong prison, guarded by a governor and garrison, in which important prisoners were kept, and which answered in some respects in Paris to the Tower in London. The people wished to destroy it, because it belonged to the king, and was a strong place from which they might be attacked; and the king had given special orders to the Government to defend it, whatever might happen. It had thick walls round it, with towers on them, drawbridges, and dry ditches. The people cut the chains of the outer drawbridge, so that it fell down, and they were able to make their way into the outer court. For four hours they besieged the building, firing muskets, attacking it with stones and pikes, forcing their way in at doors or windows, till at last the governor, who had only a hundred and thirty men, and saw that they would fight for him no longer, handed out a paper, saying that he would give up the castle—opened the doors, came out with his men, and let in the crowd. A promise had been made that his life and the lives of his men should be safe, but it was not kept. He and many of the others were put to death by the angry people as they went through the streets. The Bastille was destroyed, and the prisoners, of whom there were only seven, set free.

The next day the king went to the Assembly, promised that the foreign troops should leave Paris, and assured the deputies that he was ready to do what his people wished. He went into Paris, where he showed himself with a

tricolor cocade in his hat, and was loudly cheered by the people. He went back again to Versailles, hoping that everything might yet go well.

The nobles saw more clearly that this was impossible. The king would never be able to control the people; he was too weak, and they were too angry to be kept quiet, except by force. The nobles, who were also weak, instead of staying to do the best they could for the king, left him and their country, and went away to Germany and the neighbouring countries, where they waited till it should be safe for them to go back again into France. This is called the Emigration of the Nobles. Their servants, who were left with nothing to do, went at once to join in the disturbances and confusion that were now going on, not only in Paris, but all over France.

The peasants were rising up to murder their lords, burn down their houses, and destroy their property. They were not satisfied with putting their prisoners to death, but tortured them first in many horrible ways. In Paris, if a man was of noble family it was considered reason enough for hanging him in the streets without any kind of trial. The streets of Paris at this time were lighted by lanterns hung on chains stretched across the road from one side to another, and so arranged, that when the lamp was to be lighted the chains could be loosened and the lantern let down so low as to be reached from the street. The usual way which the people chose of putting their enemies to death was to lower the lantern in this way, fasten the prisoner to it by the neck, and then draw the lantern up again.

All order was entirely at an end in Paris, and as no

one did any work, there was soon great distress ; a large crowd gathered every morning round the bakers' doors, and formed themselves into a queue, that is, a tail or long row, each going up in turn for his loaf as soon as the doors were opened. The women of Paris were usually sent to stand in the queues and buy bread, while their husbands were joining in whatever was going on. Many of these women were fishwives, or sellers of some kind of goods, wild, fierce, strong women, often more cruel than the men.

One morning in October a body of these women were waiting as usual in the streets for their daily supply of bread. The evening before the king and queen had given a large party at Versailles. A new body of soldiers had joined the troops the king had with him, and were welcomed by a grand dinner. Louis and his queen went round to see the feast as it went on, and the soldiers received them with loud cheers, and sang a loyal song, "O Richard, O my king, the world has all forsaken thee." The poor queen, who had so few friends left, was much pleased at this friendliness ; she gave cockades of white ribbon, which was the royal colour, to the soldiers ; they drank her health, and were eager to put on her colours.

An account of this had come to Paris. The people were angry to hear of fresh troops being at Versailles. The women were very likely provoked to think of all this feasting going on so near at hand, while they and their children were starving. A young woman took up a drum and began to walk through the streets, beating it and calling out, "Bread ! bread !" All the other women joined her in a body, and they went to the Hôtel de Ville, or

Town Hall, broke into it, and took out arms, and then finding some of their friends, and of the king's enemies, to lead them, set out for Versailles to speak to the king himself and the National Assembly, and ask for bread.

The distance from Paris to Versailles is about fifteen miles. The women took nearly seven hours for the march. It was raining, and the women were dripping with wet by the time they reached Versailles. Numbers of men had followed them, and some of the National Guard, or the soldiers of Paris. All these people came to the hall of the Assembly, and sent in a few women to ask for leave to go and speak to the king. They were allowed to go with some of the deputies from the Assembly, and the king spoke to them kindly, and promised that food should be sent to Paris, and that grain should be sold cheaply.

When the people who had been waiting for an answer to their message heard of the king's promises, they said words were not enough, and they must have food at once. They broke into the hall of Assembly, and would have broken into the palace if the guards had not kept them back. The business of the Assembly was stopped by the women shouting to the deputies as they got up to speak, "Bread! Not so many long speeches." This went on all the evening, till at last night came. The crowd had to sleep in sheds, coffee-houses, churches, or under whatever shelter they could find.

The king and queen, who had been in great distress and trouble all the day, could even now scarcely decide whether to resist the people boldly, to agree to all they wished, or to make their escape to Germany, where their friends the nobles were, and leave matters in France to take their

course. The queen was always brave and active, and she tried to persuade Louis to call out his soldiers and resist the people, but to this he could not make up his mind.

Early the next morning a dispute arose between the crowd outside and the soldiers in the palace. The mob attacked the gates, killed some of the guards, and made their way into the palace. The queen had to escape in her dressing-gown to the king's room, thinking her own would be broken into by the people, but her guards were able to defend her door until a body of friendly soldiers came to their help. The people were at last persuaded to leave the palace by Lafayette, the captain of the National Guard, who was a friend both of them and of the king and queen. Later in the day the king came out on the balcony, and spoke to the crowd of people. They invited him to go with them to Paris, thinking that if he were there he would be forced to keep his promises for the supply of bread. The king at last agreed to go, and set out the same day with the queen, who had refused to be separated from him, whatever risks she ran, and their two children—a daughter and a son. They went back in their carriage with the procession of women, who shouted out jokes and insults at them all the way. "Here is the baker, the baker's wife, and the baker's boy," was one of their rude jokes. The royal family was taken to the palace of the Tuileries, and they never, except once, left Paris again.

The reign of Louis may be said to be over. A king who is a prisoner in his capital in the power of a mob can hardly be said to govern, though he was still called king,

and still expected by his people to set everything right for them, though they had left him scarcely any power to do anything. I will continue the story of the Revolution in another chapter.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

THE REVOLUTION (1789-1792).

THE people all this time were not obeying the Assembly which they themselves had chosen any more than the king, neither were they obeying the men who were called the king's ministers, of whom new ones were being constantly chosen, without any one even knowing or caring who they were, or what they wished to do. The real leaders of the people were constantly changing. When a great body of men join together to do anything, they must always have some one to lead them, but when all law and order has been overthrown, the leader is not likely to be able to keep his power long. If he tries to keep order, he is certain to become disliked and to lose his power. This happened to many different sets of men before the Revolution was over.

At first the leaders of the people were members of the Assembly, and of these the chief was a man named Mirabeau, who was a great speaker and a friend of the people. He spoke so well that he almost always persuaded his hearers to agree to what he wished, and to think as he did, and as he tried to prevent the people from going too far, and to put a stop to the struggle between them and the king, he was of great use to the country, and if he had lived longer might have prevented some of the troubles which were

coming upon the nation. The Count of Lafayette was another of the important men of this time. He was a soldier who had fought in America, a brave, honest, sensible man, loved by the people and trusted by the king. He had persuaded the people to leave the palace of Versailles when they were trying to break into it, and he always had great power over them.

There were many other men who gave the people far more violent advice. The best known of these are three men who had not become of much importance at the time of which I am writing, but who soon afterwards became so strong that no one could resist them. Their names were Robespierre, Danton, and Marat. They were amongst the fiercest and most cruel of all the leaders of the Revolution.

The king and queen soon found that they were really prisoners in their palace. The people were constantly watching them, whatever they did, and wherever they went. They would not let them leave Paris. When the king tried once to go out into the country to hunt, the people cut the traces of the carriage, so that he could not go on. When the queen went to walk, she was so much insulted by the people that at last she left off going out at all, and spent her time indoors, doing needlework and teaching her little son, the Dauphin, a boy of about seven years old. They were always trying to make plans for leaving Paris and joining their nobles and other friends in Germany, who were ready to raise an army and march into France to put a stop to the Revolution, if the king would come to put himself at their head. Marie Antoinette was very anxious he should do this, thinking it was

worth while taking some trouble, and running the risk there would be in making his escape from prison, in order to be free from the dreadful life they were leading; but Louis could not persuade himself that things might not even yet come right, and he could not bear to declare himself openly as the enemy of his people.

The Assembly, meantime, went on making very surprising laws, and altering all old habits and customs. The right of making peace and war was taken away from the king; the clergy had their livings taken away from them, so that they were left with no means of earning money; the nobles lost all their rights, and even their titles; they were to be called only by their family names. After a time people even left off saying Mr. and Mrs., and called each other citizen or citizenne instead, as if we were to say in English Citizen Smith, or Citizeness Brown.

When the day came round on which the Bastille had been taken the year before, the people resolved to have a great meeting in honour of the event. Seats were put up in an open space in Paris, called the Champ de Mars, and there three hundred thousand people came together with the king, those of the nobles who were left, and every one of importance in the country, and solemnly took an oath to be true to the king, the law, and the nation. In the evening a dance was held on the place where the Bastille had stood.

But the leaders of the Assembly were not certain of their power in spite of all these rejoicings; the soldiers were revolting because their wages were not paid, and refusing to obey their officers. The soldiers about Metz were the worst, and Bouillé, the commander there, had to

fight regular battles with some of the regiments, killing or taking prisoners almost all their men before they would yield to him. The disorder grew greater all over France, and more and more of the nobles fled from the country. It became a common thing for young noblemen, when they left the opera at night, to tell the coachman to drive to Coblenz, a city in Germany, close to the borders of France, where many of the nobles had assembled to make plans for forcing their way back into France.

All the king's friends advised him to do the same. Even Mirabeau, who was now openly leaving the side of the people and going over to that of Louis, advised him to leave Paris, put himself at the head of some of the troops, who would still have been faithful to him, and resist his enemies by force. It was, however, settled at last that he should leave the country altogether. The royal family made a most clumsy plan for escaping. They meant all to travel together, disguised as the children and servants of a certain Baroness de Korff, who, it was said, wished to leave Paris on a particular day. The governess of the royal children was to be the baroness, the queen her waiting-maid, the king her man-servant, the king's sister, Madame Elizabeth, her friend; the little princess and prince her children. They were to travel in a large, slow, lumbering coach, so big, that no one who saw it could help noticing it, and they were to take with them a great deal of luggage and some German servants, who knew scarcely any French.

However, some of their friends arranged the journey itself very cleverly and carefully; bodies of soldiers were sent to all the towns through which the travellers would

have to go till they reached the borders of Germany, which ought not to have taken them more than about two days. The soldiers could not come quite close to Paris, as the people would have suspected that something special was going to happen, but they stayed at a place so near, that it was supposed the coach with the royal family would reach it in about twelve hours. But everything went wrong with the king on this journey, as it did in the other events of his life.

The big coach with the royal party escaped from Paris one night, and set off on the road for Germany. The king was foolish enough to stop often, to walk up the hills, and to show himself in the villages through which he passed. It was soon found out that he had left Paris, and messengers were at once sent after him. All along the way the big coach and the soldiers waiting to meet it had been noticed. It was easy to find out which way Louis had gone, and not very difficult to catch him up, for the coach went so slowly that he had only gone sixty-six miles in about twenty hours. However, the king's friends had arranged things so well for him, that he had reached the very village in which the soldiers were waiting for him before he could be caught.

In the last village where he had stopped, the post-master had seen him put his head out of the window, and had noticed his likeness to the heads of the king on the the paper money that had lately been printed. He was a friend of the Revolution, and he set out after the coach to bring the royal family back. The courier, or servant on the coach, whose business it was to know the places through which they passed, had no idea whereabouts in

the village the soldiers waiting for the king were to be found. They were in another part, over the bridge, of which he knew nothing. The post-horses were also waiting at the other end of the village. It was now about eleven o'clock at night; the royal family had been travelling since about the same time the day before. The queen was in despair, she went from door to door herself, inquiring for the horses. They were delayed for half an hour, and while they were waiting the postmaster from the last village, who had found out their secret, came up with a friend, passed by them into the village, and blocked the bridge with waggons and barrows, so that no one could pass.

When the coach at last came up, the postmaster and the mayor of the village, whom he had warned of what was coming, seized the bridles of the horses, and bade the coachman stop. Muskets were put in at the window, the passports of the travellers were looked at; the mayor invited the whole party to come to his house till the morning, in order to save them from the crowd, which was beginning to collect. The king soon saw that this man knew who they were. He himself was certain that the soldiers who were to meet him must be somewhere close at hand, probably in the village; and if he had forced his way across the bridge, taking the chance of being shot by the people, he must have found them in a few minutes. But he never could do what was bold and decided; he agreed to leave the carriage and go to the mayor's house, and the poor queen was obliged to follow him.

Here they spent the night, and the next morning came messengers from Paris to take them back there. One of

Louis's officers made his way to Varennes, the village where Louis had been stopped, and offered to bring his soldiers and cut Louis out from his enemies, but when the king asked if it would be hot work, he was obliged to say yes, and Louis refused to give the order for it.

At eight o'clock in the morning the royal family set out for Paris with a guard; the troop of soldiers who should have saved them, came into Varennes after a hasty morning's march an hour after they had left it. They reached Paris after a dismal journey with two of their chief enemies sitting with them in the coach, their servants bound on the roof, and a guard of ten thousand men walking by the side to keep watch over them.

After this the royal family were more than ever watched and guarded in their palace. Even while they were asleep, guards sat in the rooms next their bedrooms, and watched to see that they stayed in their beds. It would have been wiser and better for the French people, as well as for the royal family, if Louis had been allowed to leave France as he wished. They did not want to be ruled by the king, and he did not want to govern them. If they had let him go, the difficult question of what to do with him would not have had to be settled.

The National Assembly had now done its work of making plans and laws, which it was supposed would set right everything that had been wrong in France. The king agreed to everything they had arranged, and the Assembly came to an end. An arrangement was made that an Assembly like an English Parliament should be elected every two years to manage the affairs of the country. The first of these parliaments, called the Legis-

lative Assembly, because its business was to be to make laws, met almost directly after the National Assembly came to an end. The new deputies had been chosen like the old from all parts of France, and they were as fierce, as angry, as eager to make changes in everything, as the others had been. As the people who had joined in the Revolution had not all the same ideas as to what would be good for the country, they soon began to form into parties, some parties being more violent than others. The most violent of all were the Jacobins, a set of men who used to meet in a church belonging to a convent called the Convent of the Jacobins. The church was now used only as a hall for their meetings. The president or chief person at the meeting used to sit on the top of a monument of black marble, the other members of the club sat in the nave of the church, old instruments of torture were hanging on the walls, and bats used to fly about at night in the dark vaults, interrupting the noise of the meetings by their cries. In this strange place the fiercest men in France met to discuss and to consult.

The king, though really he had no power but what the people chose to allow him, was still allowed to forbid any measure of the Assembly from becoming law; it was not to be the law of the land till he had agreed to it, and he several times refused to agree to laws about which the Assembly was very eager. There was one in particular against the priests to which he would not agree, and one day the people resolved to go in a procession to the Tuileries and force him to yield to them, and give his consent to the law. They set off one morning in a body of thirty thousand men, women, and children, to plant a

poplar which they called a *tree* of liberty on the terrace in front of the Tuileries windows. They were wearing the tricolor riband, waving pikes and olive branches round their heads, and singing some of the songs of the Revolution. There were so many people that it took them three hours to pass through the hall where the Assembly was sitting, which was the beginning of their expedition. After this they marched to the palace.

The gates were shut, but they battered at the doors and threatened to blow them in, till at last they were opened, and the mob rushed into the palace, up the staircase, and at last, breaking down the folding-doors, burst into the room where Louis was. Now when there was nothing active to be done, the king showed great courage, good sense, and good temper. He drew back into a window with a table before him to keep off the people, and quietly asked them what they wanted. They told him that they wished him to agree to the laws against the priests. He answered, "This is neither the way nor the time to obtain what you ask from me." The people crowded in with angry cries. One of the men standing near Louis told him not to be frightened. "Frightened!" said Louis, "feel here!" putting the man's hand on his heart, which was beating as steadily and quietly as usual. Some one gave the king a red woollen cap, which was considered a sign of the Revolution like the tricolor ribbon. He put it on his head, and then forgot to take it off, so that it stayed there for the rest of the day.

The queen came in with the Princess Elizabeth, Louis's sister, and the royal children. They all stayed with the king, as brave and as calm as he. After about three

hours, the people, finding that Louis would promise them nothing, left the palace by degrees, and at last all were gone, and the king and his family were alone together. This disturbance happened on the 20th of June, and made all the friends of Louis more angry than ever with the men who were the chief leaders of the Revolution, and several of the chief officers in the army, and other great men in the country, offered to fight on Louis's side against the rebels, but he would give them no orders.

Outside France the king's friends were more active. An army was being formed in Germany by the noblemen who had fled out of France, helped by foreigners from different countries, and a German prince, the Duke of Brunswick, took the command of it. It began to march towards France, and the people became frightened and sent for soldiers from the south of France to come up and defend Paris. A band of six hundred men arrived from Marseilles, brave, strong townsmen, who sang on their way a song which is now called the Marseillaise, and has become to the French Republic much what "God save the Queen" is to Englishmen. When these men marched into Paris, the people there were much encouraged, and began to feel themselves strong enough to resist all their enemies.

They began to ask that the king should be dethroned, and that they should have the little prince, who was then about seven years old, for king, with protectors, who should be friends of the Revolution. As this was not done, the people grew more and more discontented, and at last, on the 9th of August, they resolved to rise up in a body the next day, with the soldiers from Marseilles to help them, and to attack the Palace of the Tuileries, make

themselves masters of the king, and prevent him from bringing in his friends to do them harm. The king and his family knew what was coming, and had a body of the National Guard with them in the palace—men whom they believed they could trust; but their chief hope was in the Swiss Guards, a body of men who had always been faithful to the royal side, and who were ready to die in the king's defence. These men were posted outside the Tuileries, in a square now called the Place de la Carrousel, between the palace and the people.

It was the morning of the 10th of August, soon after daybreak, when the crowd of people began to rush towards the Tuileries. Messengers came to ask the king whether his guards were to fire against the people. He would answer nothing, but sat hesitating. At last some one advised him to leave the Tuileries, and go for shelter to the hall where the Assembly was sitting close by. He was told that his National Guard could not be trusted, and that in a quarter of an hour more he would not be able to escape. He sat doubtful for a few minutes, then looked up at the queen, and said, "Let us go." She was obliged to follow him, though she would sooner have seen him fight, at the risk of death, to defend his crown and his palace. They walked through the crowd with their children and Princess Elizabeth to the hall of the Assembly, and the king told the deputies that he was come to put himself and his family under their protection. They were at once taken into the hall, where they knew their enemies would not dare to attack them.

But while they made themselves safe in this way, they left their brave Swiss soldiers to take care of themselves,

and without giving any orders as to what they were to do. Now that the king was gone, there was really no use in their staying to guard the Tuileries, but the king sent them no message, and they stood steadily at their posts. The Jacobins, with the Marseillaise and other troops, soon appeared, and when they heard the king was gone, tried to make their way into the Tuileries. The Swiss resisted them; the Marseillaise fired, the Swiss fired back, and soon a fierce fight had begun. The Swiss had no chance against the enormous number of their enemies, but they fought like lions, and at first drove back the French and took a few guns. But no help came, and their enemies came back in greater and greater numbers. They stood in their places till they were shot down one after another, so that at last scarcely any of them were left alive. Too late Louis sent an order to stop firing. This was impossible, for nothing would have made the other side stop. All through the evening and night the people hunted for any Swiss who might by chance have escaped, and if they found any, put them to death, so that at last scarcely any were left.

These Swiss are among the few men who did their duty bravely and honestly in the Revolution, and were not led away by the excitement and great events of the time to do what was wrong, hoping that it might bring some good to themselves. A stone monument, representing a dead lion, has been put up at Lucerne, in Switzerland, to their honour.

That evening some deputies from Paris came to the Assembly to ask that the king's power might for a time be entirely taken away from him, and to this the Assembly

agreed. Louis and his family were sent a few days afterwards to a building called the Temple, where they would be safe from the people, and could be strictly watched to see that they did not escape. The rest of the lives of almost all of them were passed in this place.

The Temple was really a prison, and for the six months in which the king and his family were there, they were treated in every way as prisoners. They had guards always watching them—at their meals, when they walked in the garden, even when they slept, or were amusing themselves as best they might in their private rooms. They had many plans by which they managed to hear news from their friends of what was going on in France and Germany, but they did not hear of much to cheer them. The army of nobles under the Duke of Brunswick took one town; but, after that, the French general sent against him was able to prevent him from coming farther into France, and the people only became more fierce and angry with the king the more they feared his friends. On the 2^d of September, about a fortnight after the king had been sent to the Temple, there grew up an absurd idea in Paris that all the nobles, priests, and people of importance in the prisons had a scheme for rising up against the people of Paris and destroying them. The people were so much excited by this notion, which they had no reason to think was true, that they broke into the prisons, seized upon the prisoners, and murdered hundreds of them. They had up each prisoner in turn before a kind of sham court, where a pretended trial was held to decide if the prisoner were guilty of doing anything against the Revolution. If he were found guilty, he was turned out to the people waiting at the doors, who

killed him at once. Women were treated in the same way as the men. Some of the few prisoners who escaped alive have written terrible accounts of all that they and their companions suffered in the prisons, waiting to be brought up for trial, and of the deaths of many of their friends before their eyes. At almost all the prisons in Paris the prisoners were treated in this way, so that more than a thousand people were murdered in Paris on this one night. They all died without trial or fair judgment of any kind.

In this same month a new Assembly met to take the power which had belonged to the old one. The Legislative Assembly had lasted only for one year, instead of two as had been proposed; but the leaders of the Revolution wished for a change. The new Assembly, as soon as it met, began making decrees, of which one of the first was that from that day there should be no more royalty in France. The country was no longer to be a kingdom with a monarch to rule over it, but a republic, where the ruler was to be changed continually, and to be chosen by the people whom he was to govern. France is a republic at this day; but it has had several kings and several republics as well since the time when this first republic was set up. The ministers who had been carrying on the Government in the king's name, though they were always being changed, so that no one knew exactly who they were, were done away with altogether, and a body of men was chosen to manage the affairs of France.

Now that the country had become a republic, it became an important question what was to be done with King Louis. He was living in the Temple prison patiently waiting for what might happen to him, teaching his little son, reading

to himself or aloud to his family, and waited on by a faithful servant called Clery, who refused to leave him. The guardians of the Temple were rude and unkind to the royal family, and after a time separated the king from his family in order to make his life still harder than it had been. Questions as to what was to become of him began at last to be asked in the Assembly; almost all the deputies looked upon him as their enemy, and wished that he should be punished in some way or other for being the enemy of the Republic.

At this time some papers which Louis had written a few months before were found in an old iron press which the king had made with the help of the locksmith who used to teach him his trade. This man told the secret of the papers having been put in the press, and took some of the members of the Assembly to the place where the press was hidden. The letters were to his different friends, asking them for help, and telling them his plans. The people were made very angry by finding that some of the letters were to men whom they had always till then supposed to have been entirely on their side, but who now proved to have been secretly friends of Louis.

One morning in December a message was sent to Louis that he was to come before the Convention, which was the name given to the new Assembly, to be tried as a prisoner. When he came in, the president, or chief person in the Convention, spoke to him as Louis, adding no title of any kind, and questioned him as to all the crimes which he was supposed to have committed. He answered shortly and calmly, defending himself so well that his enemies were surprised and disappointed. After this he chose a lawyer

to defend him, and his trial began in a fortnight's time. Fifty-seven charges against him were read, and his lawyer answered them, defending him on every question. Then the members of the Convention discussed for many days what should next be done. At last they decided to ask three questions:—Is Louis guilty? Has the Convention a right to try him? If he is guilty, what punishment shall he have? Each deputy gave his vote separately; they all said he was guilty. Two-thirds of them said that the Convention had the power of trying him.

As to the question of the punishment, it took forty hours for all the members to give their votes, though they went on voting night and day. One member after another went up into the tribunal, or place where the speeches were made, and said what he wished for; some were for imprisonment, some for banishment, some for death. When the votes were counted it was found that the greatest number wished for death, and, after another long voting, it was decided that Louis XVI. should die within twenty-four hours.

Louis was allowed to see his family once more, to tell them this terrible news. He sat with them for nearly two hours on the last evening of his life—his wife and sister on either side of him, his daughter, the Princess Royal in front, his little son between his knees. When at last they left him, all in the deepest grief, he promised that they should see him again in the morning; but this promise was not kept. He thought that another meeting would be too sad for them to bear, and instead of seeing him they only received his last affectionate messages. No one went with him to the scaffold but the abbot, his confessor, who stayed

with him till the last moment of his life. It was early in the morning when he drove through the streets to the place where the execution was to be. He began to make a speech to the people; but one of the Republican officers who stood by made a sign to the drums, which began to beat, and drowned his voice before he could say more than a few sentences. What he did say was:—"Frenchmen! I die innocent. I pardon my enemies; I pray to God that France——" Here the drums began, and the executioner seized him. The confessor stooped down and spoke these last words to him:—"Son of Saint Louis, ascend to heaven!" The axe of the guillotine fell, and the executioner held up his head to the people.

He was little more than thirty-eight years old.

CHAPTER XLIX.

THE REVOLUTION (1792-1795).

AFTER the death of the king the people found themselves not much happier or more prosperous than they had been before. There was a riot in Paris for bread, of which scarcely any could be found ; and a body of washerwomen came one day to complain to the Convention that there was no soap to be had in Paris. But what was worse than this, the different parties who had joined together to make the Revolution now began to quarrel with each other. Some of the men who voted for the king's death had really been his friends ; they had voted against him partly from cowardice and partly because they thought it the best way of helping him, as, if they pleased the Jacobins by saying he ought to die, they hoped afterwards to be able to persuade them to change his punishment to something less severe. When they found their hopes were vain they were much grieved at what had happened, and they began to hate the Jacobins, who were the men most pleased by the death of the king, and to look upon them as their enemies.

The friends of Louis were called the Girondists. They had wished for a revolution of a much quieter and more orderly kind. They did not like to see the laws broken, and they were not really in earnest about helping to free

the people from all the wrongs they had had to bear, but wanted a republic which would be like those of the Greeks and Romans of old times; for the Girondists were most of them learned men, and knew about old times and what had happened in them.

The Jacobins, on the other side, were called the Mountain, because they used to sit in the Assembly in a part of the hall which was raised up above where the others were. The men of the Mountain were the most violent of all the people who took part in the Revolution, and they looked upon the Girondists as traitors to the people, and considered themselves as the people's special defenders.

Thus there were constant disputes going on; difficulties in Paris grew greater rather than less. At last the people rose up in a body, went to the Convention, and obliged the members to arrest all the leaders of the Girondists. There were thirty-two chief leaders, who were all arrested at once, and some of them were afterwards brought up for trial, and put to death. Others escaped from their prisons and had strange adventures of many kinds while they were trying to fly for their lives out of France, or into distant parts of the country, where they thought they should be safe from their enemies.

The Jacobins had made an easy arrangement for having every one who resisted them condemned quickly, so that there might be no fear of the prisoner escaping when he was tried for treason to the people. They had set up a kind of court of law or tribunal, which was called the Revolutionary Tribunal, where any one who was accused of being an enemy of the Republic was brought up and tried, and where almost every one who was tried

was found guilty and put to death. The men who were to judge in these courts were chosen by the people, and so were pretty sure at this time to be Jacobins.

The way in those days of executing prisoners was by what was called a guillotine, a kind of axe fastened in a frame, instead of being held in a man's hand, as was done in old times. The prisoner had to lay his head on a ledge like a window ledge, and the axe dropped down on his neck from above, so as to cut his head off. In this way the king had died, and most of the other people who had been put to death in the Revolution, except those who had been hanged to the lanterns in the streets. The guillotine had been invented by a doctor after whom it had been named—a kind man who wished to spare people pain by making their deaths as quick as possible. It is said that he was himself put to death by one of these machines that he had invented. The Revolutionary Tribunal was always sending people to the guillotine, more and more every day. There were tribunals of this sort in every town in France. The Girondists were tried before the Paris tribunal, and twenty-one of them were guillotined together.

Before their death one of their worst enemies had also ended his life. Marat was one of the three most violent men of the Revolution. He had made himself hated by his cruelty, and by continually stirring up the people to fierce acts and risings against the Convention and every one in power.

There lived at Rouen a young woman, named Charlotte Corday, who was a friend of the Girondists, and who was made very angry by hearing of their arrest and trial. She had heard much about Marat and his cruelties, and she

fancied that if he were but dead, the country would be quiet once more, and the troubles of the Revolution come to an end.

Some of his enemies had once brought him up before the tribunal and had a kind of trial, hoping that he might be sentenced to death or some other punishment for his bad deeds ; but the tribunal was on his side, and he had been declared innocent. Charlotte Corday saw that the only chance of his being put to death was that some private person should do it. She knew of no one who would do it but herself. She went to Paris, asked to see Marat, and found him sitting in a covered bath, where he was accustomed to write and do business. She began to talk to him about the affairs of Rouen, and suddenly stabbed him in the heart with a large knife which she had brought with her. He died at once. His friends, who heard him cry out, rushed in, and Charlotte Corday was taken prisoner. Three days afterwards she was tried for murder, and sentenced to death.

She declared solemnly at the trial that it was she who killed Marat ; that she had killed one villain to save a hundred thousand innocent people, one fierce monster to give rest to her country. She was taken that same evening to the guillotine, and there her head was cut off. She was perfectly firm and brave to the end of her life, and looked so young and good and beautiful that even the people who hated her most, because she had murdered their friend, were sorry for her, and could scarcely help admiring her. Marat was buried with great pomp and honour, and speeches in praise of his virtues were made all over France.

At about this time the Convention made a new set of rules for the government of France. There had now been several such made, and it had not been found that the country was much the better for them. The new plan gave still more power than they had had before to the common people, who were all to have a share in choosing the deputies who were to make the laws of the country. These deputies were to be chosen new every year. In order to show more decidedly that a new state of things had begun, all the weights, measures, and even the names of the days and months were changed, as well as the names and size of the different provinces into which France was divided. There were to be no more weeks, the year was divided in decades, each decade having ten days instead of seven. There was to be no Sunday, but every tenth day was to be a day of rest, so that there were three instead of four days of rest in every month. This arrangement lasted in France for twelve years, after which it was given up, and the old names were used again for days and months, though the weights and measures in France have never been altered back to the old plan, the new one being better and more convenient. The money of France too, has stayed as it was made at the time of the Revolution, and the division of the country into eighty-five departments, instead of thirty-six provinces, has remained unaltered. The names invented for the months were taken from the different natural events that might be expected to happen in them. This is a list of them.

January,	changed to	Nivose, the snowing month.
February	„ „	Pluiviose, the rainy month.
March	„ „	Ventose, the windy month.
April	„ „	Germinal, the budding month.

May,	changed to	Floreal, the flowery month.
June	”	” Prairial, the meadows month.
July	”	” Messidor, the harvest month.
August	”	” Thermidor, the heat month.
September	”	” Fructidor, the fruitful month.
October	”	” Vendemiaire, the vintage month.
November	”	” Brumaire, the foggy month.
December	”	” Frimaire, the freezing month.

In the month of Vendemiaire or October, another person of great importance was brought up for trial in the Revolutionary Court at Paris. This was the former Queen of France, Marie-Antoinette. When King Louis was put to death nine months before, she was left living in the Temple with her two children and Madame Elizabeth, her sister-in-law. In August she was separated from them, and shut up in the most miserable prison that was to be found in Paris. It was small, damp, and gloomy, with nothing in it but an old mattress and a bed of straw. She was not allowed to have any employment. Madame Elizabeth wished to send her some knitting, but her jailors would not let her have it, lest she should try to kill herself with the knitting needles.

When, after two months of this horrible treatment, the queen was brought up for trial, there was much excitement in Paris, and the few friends she had left tried to stir up the people to do something in her defence, but it was of no use. She was an Austrian by birth, and had always been considered as a foreigner, and it was now thought unsafe for the country that she should be kept alive. She was accused of the same crimes as the king. She was still beautiful, though she looked old and sad, and all her hair had turned white. Nothing was found for which she

could justly be punished, but it had been already settled that she was to die, and sentence of death was passed upon her. Nine months after the death of her husband, she was taken in a cart to the place of execution, and there her head was cut off, and all her many troubles were ended; while a crowd of people looked on, horrified, but, on the whole, wishing her to die. Her last words were: "O God, pardon my enemies; farewell, my beloved children, I am about to join your father."

A few months after her, Madame Elizabeth, whom she had charged to take care of her children, and be like a second mother to them, was also brought up for trial and guillotined. She died bravely, cheering her friends who were to die with her by her last kind words. The children of the king and queen were left alone in the Temple; the little prince was now about nine years old and his sister fourteen. They were not together, the little boy having been taken away from the others before his mother left them. He had been kept since in a room by himself with no companions or amusement—no one to teach him or talk to him except the man supposed to be in charge of him, who treated him unkindly, and at last cruelly, not even giving him clean clothes or fresh air.

He grew dull and silent; by degrees he fell ill and seemed to become almost an idiot. His keepers asked him questions about his mother, and persuaded him to say things which they repeated at her trial, and which they told in such a way as to make it seem that she had done wicked and horrible things of which she was entirely innocent. The little prince heard of this, and was so much grieved that he declared he would never speak again, and

for some time kept his word. After the worst part of the Revolution was over, he had a kinder guardian, who tried to amuse him and to bring back his health by kindness, but it was too late, and the poor boy died a year or two after his father's death. His sister lived to escape out of her prison, and grew up to be a woman, and to write an account of all that she and her relations had suffered.

After this a time began in France known by the name of the Reign of Terror, and no name could better describe the state of the French people at that time. All over France the Revolutionary tribunals were at work, having up before them one person after another, trying them as enemies to the Revolution, and sending them to the guillotine. In some towns the guillotine was thought too slow. At Nantes, on the river Loire, a company of women, with their babies in their arms, were sent on a flat-bottomed boat into the middle of the river. The bottom of the boat then opened, the water rushed in, the women found themselves struggling in the river, and soon all sank and were drowned. This happened one night after another; sometimes old men or clergymen were sent out instead of women; but whoever went out, the people along the banks took good care that no one should come back alive. At the same place five hundred children, girls and boys, all under fourteen, were brought out in a body, and arranged in lines to be shot. They were so short that many of them were not touched by the bullets, which went over their heads. After the first shot they broke out from their lines and rushed up to the soldiers round them, begging for their lives; but the soldiers killed them all with their bayonets.

In other cities the same kind of executions were going on. There was at this time a war in a western province of France called La Vendée, where the people, peasants and noblemen alike, had risen up to resist the Revolution, and do what was possible for the royal family while they lived. These people made a brave struggle, but were defeated at last, and it was some of the prisoners from this war who were the most cruelly treated, and put to death with the worst tortures. One of the places attacked by the Revolutionists was Saint Denis, where the kings of France had been buried. Their tombs were opened, and many of the bodies were found preserved, so that they looked just the same as when they were buried. They were taken out of their graves and destroyed.

Soon after, it was resolved that a great feast should be held in honour of Reason. The people who had given up so many of their old beliefs had also given up their religion. Many of them said that they believed all they had been taught of God was a fable, and that there was no God; but still wishing for something to worship, they said that Reason should be their God. They dressed up a woman whom they called Reason, and then held a feast in her honour, carrying her on their shoulders, and dancing and singing before her. The same was done in most of the other towns of France. It was as if for a time people had lost their senses.

In Paris, meanwhile, the prisons were crowded more and more. There were sometimes as many as eight thousand prisoners shut up at one time. Every evening carts went round to the prisons to collect those who were to be guillotined that night. The chief leaders of the

people were now Robespierre and Danton. These two were at this time the most important men of the Revolution; they were cruel and bloodthirsty towards their enemies, though in private life Danton was kind and generous both to friends and enemies. They have always been remembered as almost monsters of wickedness, though something might no doubt be said on their side by people who knew all that the French nation had had to bear before the Revolution began.

Danton, who had always been gentler than Robespierre, now began to wish to put a stop to the executions. Robespierre then turned against him, and accused him before the Convention of having always been an enemy of freedom. The Convention sent him to be tried before the Revolutionary Tribunal, which he himself had invented; he was tried for some days, and then sentenced to death with some of his friends. He was guillotined, as so many of his enemies had been before him. When he was on the scaffold he said to himself, "Danton, no weakness;" and then to the executioner, "Thou wilt show my head to the people, it is worth showing." These were his last words.

Robespierre was left, and Robespierre was now the most powerful man in France. He had friends who for the time seemed faithful to him, though the deaths of Danton and Marat might have shown him that he had not much good to hope or expect for himself. The people in the prisons suffered terribly; they were at first, all of them, either nobles or people of high family, who had been accustomed to comfort and riches, and who were now crowded together in small, low, dirty rooms, hardly ever allowed to go even into the prison-court, with scarcely any

air to breathe, no change of clothes, coarse unwholesome food, old ragged mattresses for almost their only furniture, and large rats, which sometimes came out from the walls and gnawed their clothes, for companions. At night the jailors would come and rattle chains outside on purpose to distress them by making them think that some of their friends were being taken away for execution. At first thirty were sent to the guillotine each evening, but the number grew greater. At last eighty often went out together, and their places in the prison were at once filled by new prisoners sent in from the country round Paris. A plan was made for a new kind of guillotine, which could cut off the heads of four people at one stroke. But at last this grew more than the French people could endure. They saw, too, that when all the more important men in the country were destroyed, the turn of others, who were more nearly of the rank of common people, would follow. They began to turn against Robespierre; the Convention suspected that he would not be satisfied till some of them had also been put to death, and resolved that if so, he himself should die first. His different enemies, the friends of the Girondists who were still left, the Jacobins who were becoming afraid of him, and the people who had seen their friends and relations put to death by him, all joined together against him. He was accused in the Convention as Danton had been, and arrested; his friends brought up a guard and set him free. The struggle went on all day, but by the evening his enemies had been successful.

They came into the room where he was, to arrest him. He took out a pistol and tried to shoot himself, but only managed to give himself a severe wound. The next after-

noon Robespierre was carried to the guillotine, and was treated as so many other people had been by his orders—his head was cut off and held up to the people.

This was the end of the Reign of Terror, and it may be said of the Revolution as well. That evening, for the first time, no prisoners were sent to the guillotine; the people in the streets, as soon as he was dead, ran about embracing each other, and calling out, "Friends, rejoice. Robespierre is no more, the tigers are dead!" This was on the day, called, in their new calendar, the 9th of Thermidor, which meant the 27th of July, and the party who had triumphed then were called the Thermidorians in honour of the date. All the peaceable and more respectable men in France rose up to support and help them, so there seemed, for the first time, to be some chance of the Government in France being strong enough to resist any fresh attack that might be made against it by the people. I will here end the chapter of the Revolution.

CHAPTER L.

DIRECTORY AND CONSULATE (1795-1800).

BEFORE the fall of Robespierre, it had always happened that each great change in the course of the Revolution had been made by some one rising up against the people who had till then been chiefly carrying on the government, driving them out, and taking the power from them; but now the Convention, which was the Government, had all the strength on its side. After Robespierre's death a number of people suddenly showed themselves, who had been hiding out of sight till the Reign of Terror should be over. They all became Thermidorians, and in particular, there appeared a large troop of young men, ready to fight for the Convention, and keep down any tumult or disturbance that might arise, who were called the Gilded Youths, because they wore bright clothes, and made themselves look very gay. They carried clubs with lead at the end, and were always ready to fight with the Jacobins, whom they usually managed to drive away when fights did happen between them. If some of the young nobles and other people, who were attacked at the beginning of the troubles, before the Bastille was taken, had been able to fight like this, it is very likely that the worst horrors of the Revolution might have been prevented.

The executions stopped, and, by degrees, order came back into Paris. People began to dress themselves well, to give dances and festivals of all kinds, and to amuse themselves as they had not cared to do while the Revolution went on. There was one kind of dance called the Victim's Dance. No one might come to it who had not lost some relation by the guillotine, and every one who was allowed to be present wore a band of crape round his arm, to show that he had some victim to mourn for.

The Jacobins were driven out of their hall, and allowed to hold no more meetings there, which caused fresh rejoicings all over France. The prisoners who had been sent up from the different parts of France just before the death of Robespierre, so that they had escaped being put to death as he meant them to be, had terrible stories to tell of all that had been going on in the different provinces. All over the country the same kind of troubles had happened as those of which we hear so much in Paris.

The war in La Vendée had come to an end, the Royalists there had been beaten by the Republican soldiers, and all the chief leaders of the Vendéans had been either killed in battle or put to death. The war of France with the countries round—Germany, Austria, and Prussia—was still going on, and after the execution of Louis XVI., England had also declared war against France.

There was great distress in the country, as there was very little money and a great want of food, which made the people restless and angry with the Government. They were stirred up by the Jacobins, who had still a little power, though their hall was closed, to attack the Convention and ask for bread, and for the carrying out of the

laws that had been made by the National Assembly two years ago, before the death of Louis. On the 20th of May they rushed into the hall of the Convention with loud shouts, and killed one of the deputies, but they were driven back by the body of Gilded Youths, who came to help the Convention, and their leaders were taken prisoners and put to death.

The Convention now began to make what was called the Constitution, that is, a set of laws, arranging the government of the country for the future. The Convention itself was to come to an end, having lasted since the trial of Louis, which was about three years. The chief governors of France were to be five men called Directors, of whom one was to leave the Government every year, and a new one to be chosen in his place, so that there was to be a constant change. They were to be chosen by two large councils, who were also to help them with the work of governing the country, and to turn them out of their places if they behaved improperly. There was some resistance to this arrangement in Paris, but the Convention were strong enough to make every one submit to them at last, and when all was settled, they gave up their power, the Convention came to an end, and the Directory began to rule over France.

The Directory kept its power for about four years, during which time the affairs of the country did not go on specially well. What was chiefly wanted in France now was some man, strong and clever enough to make other people obey him, so as to be able to put an end to the confusion which had followed the Revolution. All the old ways of carrying on government had been overturned, and

the work of planning new ways and carrying them out was so difficult, that it could not be done by any common person. Just such a man as had been wanted now appeared, and though he afterwards showed qualities which brought much trouble upon himself and his country, there is no doubt that at this time he did for France what no one else could have done so well, and helped the country out of the great difficulties into which its violence had brought it.

His name was Napoleon Bonaparte, and he was born in the island of Corsica. His father was a private gentleman ; and he himself was brought up at a school for young soldiers, and sent into the army as soon as he was old enough. At school, his masters soon found out that he was unusually clever and thoughtful. He was specially quick at learning mathematics, but was also very fond of reading, and thought about other matters besides what were wanted for a soldier's business. Soon after he joined the army the Revolution began, and he was in Paris the day that the people broke into the Tuileries, on the 21st of June, when Louis XVI. stood for so many hours behind the table with the red cap on his head ; and also on the 10th of August, when the Swiss Guards were attacked by the people and put to death.

Soon after this he was sent to help in a siege that was going on against the town of Toulon, of which the English had made themselves masters. An old French general was besieging this town, who knew scarcely anything about his business. He was very glad to ask advice of Captain Bonaparte, though, when it was given, he was so stupid that he could hardly be made to understand it. Bonaparte undertook to manage the siege by himself, and succeeded

so well that the town was soon taken, and the English driven out of it.

He was afterwards sent to Italy, where he was again of so much use that he was at last made general of the army there. In Italy his great powers showed themselves more and more. He always thought of unexpected ways of coming up with the enemy when they thought him far away; of cutting off one division of the enemy's army from another; and of moving his own men about more quickly than had ever been done before. The soldiers were delighted at the victories to which he led them, and soon became devoted to him. They used to call him the Little Corporal, and had many stories about his courage and kindness to his men, and his readiness to take part in everything they did. Once, when one of his gunners was killed in besieging a town, Bonaparte stepped into his place, and fired the cannon himself for some time; and he would often show the men how to point the cannon, and encourage them by always appearing himself when they were in the greatest danger.

One of his first battles was fought and won on a wooden bridge, called the Bridge of Lodi; one of the principal streets in Paris is now called after another of his Italian victories, the Rue de Rivoli; and there were others too many to mention. The list of Bonaparte's battles lasts through almost the whole of his life, and is a long one. For many years he almost always won the battles in which he commanded. His soldiers fought better under him than they would have done under any one else. Before going into battle he often made them a little speech, by which he so much pleased and excited them, that they

called out eagerly to be led against the enemy at once; and his kindness at other times made them all feel him to be their friend, as well as admirè him as the greatest soldier they knew.

One night, after a long and anxious march, Bonaparte felt too anxious to sleep, and went out to visit the outposts. He found a man who should have been keeping watch asleep at the root of a tree. Without waking him he took the gun from his hand, and watched himself as sentinel for about half an hour, when the man woke, and was terribly frightened at seeing what had happened. The general only said, "My friend, here is your musket; you have fought hard and marched long, and your sleep is excusable, but the army might be ruined by a moment's inattention. I happened to be awake, and have held your post for you. You will be more careful another time." It was such stories as these that his soldiers delighted to tell one another about him. Many years afterwards some one repeated this story to Napoleon, and asked him if it were true. He said, "No, certainly not; I was far too tired that night to do anything of the kind. I should have been more likely than the sentinel to be asleep." However, there is no doubt that the story was told of him for many years; and it shows the opinion his soldiers had of him.

By the end of the second year Bonaparte had defeated the enemies he had been sent to fight in Italy, and a peace had been made. He himself went back to Paris, and found the Directors in great trouble and anxiety, for they had begun to quarrel with each other, and the Government did not go on well. They soon grew jealous of General Bonaparte, who was looked upon as a hero by all

the Parisians. They determined to send him away again, and gave him the command of an army which was going to attack Egypt, as part of a great attack which they were preparing against England.

The army was the same with which he had been fighting in Italy. The men were worn out and tired with all they had had to do already, and no one but Bonaparte could have kept them in a good humour, and have prevented them from losing courage among the deserts of Egypt, where they suffered from heat, thirst, and illness, besides being so many hundred miles from their homes, and in a place so unlike any they had ever seen before. However, they fought and gained a great battle against the Turks and Arabs, who were the soldiers of the country, and who were some of the best and fiercest horsemen in the world; it was called the Battle of the Pyramids. After this battle Bonaparte was called in the country Sultan Kebir, or King of Fire, in memory of what the Turks suffered from his muskets.

But while this went on inland, the English admiral, Nelson, brought a large fleet of ships to the coast of Egypt, and fought a battle against the French fleet in the Bay of Aboukir. The battle was a very fierce one; it lasted for twenty hours, and went on through the whole night in spite of the darkness, though each ship could only just see the ship against which for the moment it was fighting. A great French ship called *L'Orient* was blown up just at midnight. The tremendous noise of the explosion was heard all through both fleets, and was so awful that for a few minutes the battle stopped entirely, and no gun was fired; then it went on again as before, till at last the

French were completely beaten, and had only two ships left.

Still Bonaparte kept up his own and his soldiers' courage. He stayed in Egypt about a year, fought several battles, and besieged several towns, some of which he took. He conquered a good part of the country, and was then obliged to go back to France, where important events were happening, and to leave the army in Egypt to the care of one of his generals.

When he arrived in Paris he found that the Directors had brought themselves into such difficulties that it was impossible for them to carry on the Government. All the soldiers in Paris were his friends, and many of the chief men were willing to try and change the Government, and give the power, for a time at all events, to him. Bonaparte had two of the Directors for his friends; he was first made commander-in-chief of all the troops about Paris, and soon after the Directors gave up their power, and it was settled that there should be three men named Consuls, after the old Roman consuls, who should carry on the Government, and of whom Bonaparte should be the chief, and should be called First Consul. His power was to last for ten years, after which other consuls were to be chosen.

From this time Bonaparte, who now began to be called Napoleon, grew stronger and stronger every day. He behaved already very much as if he were King of France; and the people who, ten years before, had risen up in rebellion against Louis XVI., and had resolved to have no more kings in France, were now tired out with all the horrors they had brought upon themselves in their struggle, and were willing to submit to the only man who seemed strong

enough to keep the country in order. The soldiers, too, who would have obeyed no one else, always obeyed him.

France was still at war with England, Austria, and Italy. Napoleon left the other consuls to take care of affairs in France, and went himself with an army over the Alps to Italy, sending another army to Germany. His crossing the Alps was a wonderful feat, which took all his enemies by surprise, as it had been supposed that at that time of year it was impossible. The passes were slippery with ice and snow, so that it was hard enough for the men of the army to get over themselves, even if they had not had to take their arms, luggage, and food with them. The heavy cannon were especially difficult to manage; but all the difficulties were overcome at last, and the First Consul and his soldiers marched down into the plains of Italy. Here Napoleon gained one of his most famous victories at the battle of Marengo; and a few months afterwards his general in Germany won another great battle at Hohenlinden, which is known from Campbell's poem—

“On Linden, when the sun was low,” etc.

After these two defeats of Marengo and Hohenlinden, the Germans agreed to make peace, and a treaty was signed at a town called Luneville, by which all the country between the old boundary of France and the Rhine was declared to belong to France.

When Napoleon went back to Paris he found most of the people his warm friends and admirers; but he still had enemies, both among the Royalists and the Jacobins. The Royalists went so far as to make a plot to murder him, which very nearly succeeded. They filled a cart with gun-

powder and shot, put it in a street through which Napoleon was to drive one evening to the opera, and when they saw his carriage near put a lighted match into the cart and left it to explode as he passed. Fortunately, his coachman was tipsy, and drove faster than usual, and the explosion did not happen till half a minute after the carriage had passed. Twenty people were killed, several wounded, and windows broken on both sides of the street. Napoleon persisted in going on to the theatre, where he appeared looking as calm as usual; and the people, having heard of what had happened, received him with loud cheers, and every sign of joy at his escape.

The war still went on with England, though the peace of Luneville had put an end to it as far as Austria and Italy were concerned. Some of the northern countries, in particular Denmark, joined in a league to help Napoleon against England. The English, under Lord Nelson, attacked the Danish fleet at Copenhagen, and entirely defeated them in a battle known as the Battle of the Baltic. Soon after this battle a peace was signed at Amiens between England and France. There were great rejoicings at this event in both countries; and now, at last, there was peace all over Europe.

Napoleon now turned his thoughts to many matters which had to be settled in France. He restored many of the old customs which had been overthrown by the Revolution. The expressions Sir, Madam, Mr., and Mrs., which had been given up by the Jacobins, began to be used as before. Citizen and citizeness were left off. Napoleon also made friends with the Pope, and brought back the Roman Catholic religion into France. The churches were

opened, the priests were recalled or new ones chosen, and Sundays were observed again. Napoleon also set up schools, and took great pains to make a new code of laws, to make roads and public buildings, and to improve the country in every way. At the same time his ambition began to show itself more and more. He had done so much that he imagined he could do everything, and was always interfering in the affairs of other countries, and trying to win fresh glory and honour for himself.

At this time he and the other consuls governed with the help of three bodies of men who were supposed to give them advice, and to have some control over the affairs of the country, but there was really scarcely any one in France who dared to resist Napoleon in anything. Soon after the peace of Amiens it was decided that he should become consul for life, and it was afterwards decided that he should have leave to choose himself an heir to succeed him when he died, as it did not seem likely that his wife Josephine, whom he had married many years before, would ever have any children.

Unhappily, peace only lasted for one year. Napoleon was gaining fresh power in one country after another. He had now interfered in the affairs of Switzerland, and the English, who saw him growing stronger and stronger, were afraid that soon all Europe would be in danger from him. They refused to give up to him the island of Malta, which had been promised to him by the treaty, and thus the war began again. As soon as war was declared, the English seized a great number of French ships which happened to be in English harbours. Napoleon, in return, took prisoners all the English travellers he could find in France, of whom

there were as many as ten thousand, for there had been no idea that the peace would end so soon, and every one wished to go and see the country where there had been war for so many years, and where no Englishman could have travelled before since the Revolution. All these innocent people were thrown into prison, and some of them were kept there for many years before the French Government could be persuaded to let them go.

Napoleon then made a scheme for attacking the English in their own country. He collected together a great number of boats at Boulogne, opposite Folkestone, where the straits between England and France are so narrow that it is possible to pass from one side to the other in a few hours. He also collected a large army of soldiers, and made every possible arrangement for their being taken across to England and marching upon London. His difficulty was to escape the English ships, which would try to prevent his crossing. Many people would not believe that Napoleon really thought of invading England; still, the English sent Lord Nelson to watch carefully over all that was done by the French ships, and the young men of England became volunteers, and learned to march and shoot and perform all the duties of soldiers, so as to be able to help the regular army if there was need for it.

However, Napoleon had other matters to think of besides invading England. The old friends of the Royalists, who had been living in England, and had always been more or less plotting against him, made a more serious plot than usual, and some of them went to France and made friends with some others of Napoleon's enemies, who hated him because they were Republicans, and wished for

that form of government. A plan was made, chosen, and the First Consul, but he found it out, seized also set up Cadondal, the chief Royalist plotter, and had him and several of his friends, and put to death. It was very clever to catch Cadondal, for he was specially clever in all kinds of disguises, and the story of his adventures is so very interesting one.

After his capture, Napoleon committed what is perhaps the worst and most cruel action of his life. A young prince living in Germany, called the Duke d'Enghien, was the friend of the Bourbons, the brothers of Louis XVI. He was living quietly out of France, and there was no reason for thinking that he had been in any way concerned in the plot. But some of the prisoners had spoken of a stranger whose name they did not know, and who used to come and join in their plots against the First Consul; and Napoleon thought, or pretended to think, that this might have been the Duke d'Enghien, and, glad of some excuse to show his strength and be revenged on an enemy, he had the duke suddenly carried off from his home in Germany, brought to Paris, tried in the middle of the night, and, without any just reason, declared guilty of treason, and instantly put to death. He was taken out into a courtyard and shot by the soldiers, scarcely knowing of what he was accused. This cruel and wicked act of Napoleon's made him enemies all over Europe.

Soon after this the people were persuaded to ask Napoleon to become Emperor of France instead of First Consul. He, who had first proposed the idea, of course at once agreed to it, and the Pope was persuaded to come to Paris and crown him solemnly at Nôtre Dame. His wife

there were, Josephine was Empress, and he was to be succeeded on
no idea of the throne by some member of his family. Thus France
wished to came back to the same kind of Government that it had
war of had before the Revolution, only with Napoleon on the
hav throne instead of Louis XVI. Napoleon's reign, as it
ir must now be called, will be finished in another chapter.

CHAPTER LI.

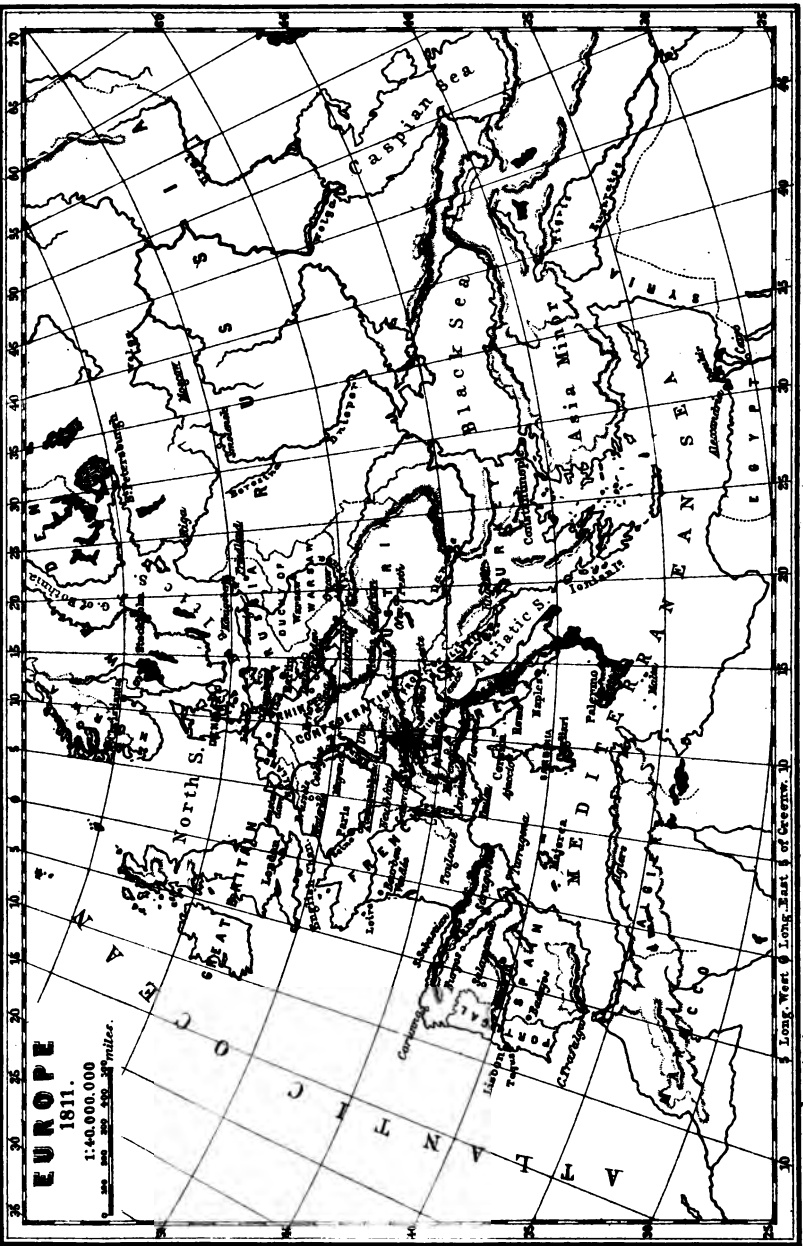
THE EMPEROR NAPOLEON (1804-1815).

NAPOLEON was crowned Emperor in December of the year 1804, and early in the year he left Paris to march against his enemies. He was obliged to give up his plan of sailing against England. In spite of all the pains he took to entice away the English fleet that was guarding the Channel, and to bring up his own ships there to watch over the passing of his soldiers, Lord Nelson was too quick for him, and followed the French about so closely that he could not be taken by surprise. At the same time the Russians and Swedes joined with the English against Napoleon, and Austria was persuaded to do the same.

Napoleon marched first against Austria, and fought another of his greatest battles, the battle of Austerlitz, which is as famous as the battle of Marengo. The Austrians and Russians had joined their armies, and the two emperors, Alexander of Russia and Francis of Austria, were both present at the battle. The Austrians and Russians were entirely beaten; the French took twenty thousand prisoners, and all the Russian standards or flags. The French soldiers called this the Battle of the Emperors, because the three emperors of Austria, Russia, and France, had all taken part in it. The battle had been fought on a

LIBRARY
MUSEUM
HIDDEN & UNDISCOVERED

French History.



London, Macmillan & Co.

Wm. & A. Benson, Geog. Anst. & Lith.

very beautiful day, and the "sun of Austerlitz" became a common expression with the soldiers.

The Austrians at once made a treaty with Napoleon, who, even before the battle of Austerlitz, had made himself master of Vienna, the capital of Austria, so that there was no hope of resisting him. The Emperor Francis had to give up a good deal of land, which Napoleon either kept or gave to his friends. The Emperor of Russia led his troops back to his own country, and still went on with the war.

At just the same time as the battle of Austerlitz another battle was fought, which had a very different result. Lord Nelson met the French fleet in Trafalgar Bay, and forced them to fight him. Every one knows the story of the battle of Trafalgar; how Lord Nelson gave the signal, "England expects every man to do his duty;" how he attacked the fleets of France and Spain together and destroyed them completely; how in the beginning of the battle a shot from the topmast of a French ship struck him in the breast, wounding him, so that he was carried to his cabin, and died a few hours afterwards, living just long enough to know that a complete victory was won. Napoleon heard of this just before the battle of Austerlitz, and was furious with the French admiral, who had been beaten at Trafalgar. He seemed to think that if he himself had been with the fleet he could have beaten Lord Nelson. However, he took his revenge, as we have seen, at the battle of Austerlitz.

The next year the King of Prussia declared war against France, and Napoleon fought another of his great battles at a place called Jena, where the Prussians were beaten

as completely as the Austrians had been at Austerlitz. Napoleon marched to Berlin, and treated the Prussians not only with great harshness and cruelty, but with great meanness, in robbing them of pictures, statues, and works of art, which they had at Berlin, and all of which he sent to Paris. It was his habit to do this in all the countries he conquered, and he made himself many enemies by this ungenerous treatment. He took away the sword of Frederick the Great, the greatest King of Prussia, off his funeral monument, and to the end of his life he had Frederick's silver watch hanging in his room.

After the battle of Jena Napoleon still had to conquer the Russians, and he found more difficulty with them than with the Austrians and Prussians. However, the next spring he fought the battle of Friedland, after which, though it seemed on the whole to be a drawn battle, the Russians were anxious to make peace, and a treaty was soon made between the Emperors of France and Russia, who met on a raft in the middle of a river near a town called Tilsit. By the treaty of Tilsit peace was made between France and Prussia as well as between France and Russia, so Napoleon had now no more to fear from the east of Europe, and could turn his attention to England.

The English, however, were at that time taken up with fighting the Dutch, and Napoleon had a short time of quiet, which he spent in arranging the Government of France in every particular. He had a great wish to see and understand everything for himself, and his ministers worked well and actively, never knowing when he might come to examine their work, and being sure that he would discover anything that was going wrong.

However, it seemed impossible for him to satisfy himself with governing the country to which he really had a right, though to do that well would have been work hard enough for any man, however wise and diligent. He soon began to mix himself up with the affairs of yet another country. This was Spain, where there were constant quarrels and disputes between several people, who all wished to govern for the king, a weak, foolish old man, who could keep no order. The king's son asked Napoleon for help. The story of all that happened is too long to tell here, but Napoleon managed so well for himself that at last the king, the queen, the heir-apparent, and the chief minister of Spain, were all prisoners in a French town, and Napoleon's brother, Joseph Bonaparte, was declared the new King of Spain.

The Spaniards resisted Joseph, and the English came to help them. There were many battles all over Spain, and the war went on for a long time, while Napoleon was away in Germany attending to his other affairs. It was in this war in Spain, which is called the Peninsular War, that the English general, Sir Arthur Wellesley, began to make himself famous. He won several battles, and was made Lord Wellington, and afterwards became Duke of Wellington, and Napoleon's worst enemy.

Napoleon had a short war with Austria, in which he won the battle of Wagram, and took Vienna a second time. He made a peace with Austria, at which some of his enemies were surprised, wondering how the Emperor of Austria had escaped with such easy conditions, but this was explained afterwards when it was announced that Napoleon was going to send away his first wife Josephine,

who had never had any children since she married him, and who seemed as if she never would have any, and to marry instead a daughter of the Emperor Francis, a princess named Maria Louisa. This he did, poor Josephine, who could not help herself, agreeing to do as he wished, and the next year Maria Louisa had a little son, who was declared King of Rome as soon as he was born, and who was to be Emperor when his father died.

At this point Napoleon's good fortune ended. He had not used it in a way which would be likely to make it last long, and now his misfortunes began. The year after his son was born, he again went to war with Russia. He hoped to be able to march to the capital, St. Petersburg, as he had before marched to Vienna, Berlin, and Madrid, and not to have to fight more than perhaps one great battle, but he was disappointed. The Russians had a new plan of resisting him, and as soon as he came into their country with his huge army they began to retreat before him. But as they went they destroyed all the trees, corn, and whatever could be used for food that they passed. Napoleon found only a desert, and had nothing to give his soldiers. He called this a barbarous way of making war, and settled to change his plan, and march not to St. Petersburg but to Moscow, the old capital of Russia.

As he went along he every now and then saw the Russian troops, but they never stopped to fight him or resist him in any way till they came almost within sight of Moscow, and then the Russian soldiers refused to retreat any more, and their Emperor was obliged to let them wait and give battle to the French at a place called Borodino.

The battle was a very fierce one. It began at four o'clock in the morning and lasted the whole day. Great numbers were killed on both sides, but after all, neither side could be said to be the conqueror. The next morning the Russians retreated again, going on with the plan they had already begun, and the French followed them till at last Napoleon was within sight of Moscow.

X It was a beautiful city, full of steeples and domes, with the towers of the Kremlin, or palace of the Emperor of Russia, rising over all the rest. When Napoleon saw it from the top of a hill overlooking it, he stopped his horse and said: "Behold at last that celebrated city." Then he added to himself "It was time." The army waited for a time to see if any one would come to them out of the city, but when no one did they went in, and to their surprise found it quite empty. The Russians had left it and were gone away.

The French established themselves in the houses, and the Emperor lodged in the Kremlin, but at night a fire broke out. The wind happened to change, and at once another fire broke out in the quarter from which the wind then blew, and afterwards others, showing that the fires were not the work of chance. They were put out with some difficulty, but next night the same was done again, and this went on till four-fifths of the city were destroyed, and at last the Kremlin itself was partly burned. The Russians had left a few citizens hidden in the cellars of Moscow to light the fires, and in this way had given up their capital sooner than allow the French to become masters of it.

Napoleon was at last obliged to retreat, and led his

army back through Russia. But it was the middle of winter ; the supplies that were to have come from Paris had not been able to pass along the road, the Russians had made the whole way a desert, and the French soldiers were without food. They died by thousands, of cold, hunger, and misery. Sometimes the Cossacks, or Russian soldiers, attacked them, and killed any one who stayed behind or strayed from the ranks. At night they were often so benumbed by the cold that they sat almost in the fires that were lighted in the camp, till their clothes were burnt without their knowing it, and when the fire went out, they died of cold. There was one terrible battle when the French were attacked as they were crossing the river Beresina, which was only partly frozen, and in which many thousand men were drowned.

At last, Napoleon determined to leave the army to its fate, and to go back himself to Paris. He knew that he was wanted there, and he does not seem to have felt it his duty to stay with his soldiers. He disguised himself and set off in a sledge with only three attendants. He arrived safely in Poland, in Saxony, and at last at Paris. The army followed as best it could, but only about a twentieth part of the men who had left France at the beginning of the war came back there afterwards. Besides the men who had been killed, nearly a thousand pieces of cannon were lost, and a number of standards and eagles taken by the Russians. The eagle, which had been the sign of the old Roman Emperors, was used in the same way by the French Republic, and was on all Napoleon's flags. Napoleon began at once to do what he could to repair his misfortune. He called out all the young men in France

to come and serve as soldiers. These young soldiers were called conscripts. With them Napoleon was able to fill up his army again, though of course they were untrained and were not of so much use in fighting as his old soldiers who had died in Russia.

Prussia now joined Russia ; and an army from Sweden marched against France ; also the Duke of Wellington, who had been fighting successfully in Spain, brought an army up from the south against the Emperor ; but Napoleon would not give in or try to make peace with his enemies, which he easily might have done. A great battle was fought in Germany, at a place named Bautzen, which lasted for two days. The Allies then retired, with Napoleon following them ; but this could hardly be called a victory for the French, as nothing was gained by it.

Soon afterwards Austria joined the Allies, and Napoleon now had almost all the countries of Europe joined together against him. He might still have made peace with them all if he would have given up forcing a king upon the Spaniards, and could have been satisfied to stay quietly in France ; but he could not make up his mind to this.

The great battle of the war was fought in Germany, at Leipzig ; it lasted for four days, and was one of the sternest and fiercest battles ever fought. The people of the town of Leipzig were able to watch it from their steeples. At last Napoleon retreated. His troops marched through Leipzig, where was the King of Saxony, his friend. They retreated with great difficulty, as they had only one bridge on which to cross a river outside the town. Great numbers of them were unable to cross, and gave themselves up to

the Allies. Napoleon led back the rest of his army into France.

A few weeks after this the Allies also were in France, and near Paris. Napoleon fought them again and again. His sudden marches, his attacks when he was least expected, were as wonderful as any he had ever made before; and he still refused the offers of peace which the Allies made him. He said good-bye to his wife and child before he left Paris, and gave them into the charge of the National Guard, or soldiers of Paris, who were all devoted to him. He never saw them again.

At last, after much marching backwards and forwards, the Allies found themselves between Napoleon's army and Paris. They at once marched towards Paris, leaving the Emperor behind them, and began an attack by throwing shells against some of the houses. The people were soon frightened; the few soldiers in the town found that it was of no use to resist. Joseph Bonaparte, Napoleon's brother, who was commanding, left the city. Maria Louisa and her son were also taken away. Then Paris gave itself up to the allied armies. Napoleon hardly heard that it was in danger before it had surrendered, and the Emperor of Russia and King of Prussia had gone into the town together, and been welcomed with loud cheers by the people.

Napoleon came back as soon as possible, but found it impossible to get into Paris. He was obliged to stop at Fontainebleau, about forty miles away, and there, after a few days, finding everything against him, and even his friends deserting him, he resolved to resign the crown. He consulted with his marshals, or chief officers, and then wrote a declaration, saying that he would descend from

the throne and leave it to his son, with his wife for Regent ; but his enemies took no notice of this, and declared the brother of Louis XVI. king, under the name of Louis XVIII.

A few days after this Napoleon had his old soldiers of the Guard drawn up in the court of the castle of Fontainebleau, and came out to say a last good-bye to them. He made them a speech, telling them how all Europe had joined against him, how France had deserted him, and how he was about to leave the French to the king they had chosen. He then said, "Be faithful to the new sovereign whom your country has chosen. Do not lament my fate ; I shall be happy while I know that you are so." He called for the flag with the eagle on it, kissed it, and said his last farewells. Then, while many of the soldiers burst into tears, he got into his carriage, and drove away from Fontainebleau.

It had been settled that he should go to live at Elba, an island in the Mediterranean Sea, and that he should stay there as a sort of prisoner, doing whatever he liked in the island, but never able to leave it. Meanwhile, Louis XVIII. began to reign as King of France. But after a few months Napoleon grew tired of Elba ; he was so near to France that he could hear about everything that went on there, and he was told that the French did not like Louis XVIII., and that many of them would be glad to have him back to rule over them again. The next spring he left Elba secretly, and sailed to France.

He at once marched towards Paris. The people welcomed him back as he passed ; the soldiers that were sent against him put on the tricolor ribbon, and marched with

his army as soon as they saw him. His own old officers, who had been put at the head of the armies by King Louis, could not bring themselves to fight against him, and many of them who had deserted Napoleon for Louis before, now deserted Louis for Napoleon. At last Louis fled from Paris, and Napoleon arrived there, went to the Tuileries, set up his court again, and found most of the people in the town delighted to welcome him back.

But this did not last long; the Allies soon joined together again to help Louis. The Austrians, the Prussians, the Russians, the English, joined their armies, and Napoleon was obliged to march against them at once. His soldiers were proud to be under him once more, and went to battle feeling as sure of victory as ever. They met the English and German armies in Belgium. The English were commanded by the Duke of Wellington, the Prussians by Marshal Blucher. The battle of Waterloo was fought on the 18th of June 1815, and there the French army, after fighting bravely for a whole day, was entirely beaten, and even Napoleon's Old Guard, who had never been resisted before, were beaten back and almost destroyed by the English. In the evening, seeing that everything was lost, Napoleon left the army, rode to Paris, and finding every one there turning against him, he resigned his crown for the second time a few days afterwards.

He then left France, went on board an English ship, and asked to be taken to England. This was done, and after some discussion as to what should be done with him, he was sent to St. Helena, an island in the Atlantic off the coast of Africa, which is about as large as the town of Paris.

He was to live here as a prisoner, closely watched by an English governor and a body of soldiers, with four of his own friends, whom he was allowed to choose for himself, to keep him company ; and here Napoleon passed the rest of his life.

He made many complaints of the way in which he had been treated by the English, but he was far too dangerous a man ever to have been allowed to come back to Europe again, and after his having escaped from Elba, they were obliged to keep a strict watch over what he did. It was a sad ending to the life of such a man. Five years after he reached St. Helena, he died. He was buried under a willow-tree in the island, and some years afterwards his body was taken to France, and buried at Paris with great pomp.

This is the history of Napoleon Bonaparte. Few men have had so remarkable a life. He was not a good man, but it is impossible to say that he was not a great one. He was one of the best soldiers that have ever been known, and had so good an understanding, that he seemed able to do everything well. But he was selfish, cruel, and ambitious, and carried away by the idea of his own greatness, and these faults led him to throw away the great opportunity he had of being of use to his country, and leaving a glorious name behind him.

CONCLUSION.

(1815-1880.)

NAPOLÉON'S death happened only sixty years ago, within the memory of our grandparents, and what has happened since in France is so near our own times, that I think there is no need to say more than a few words about it. Many of the people now alive remember it all, and there have as yet been scarcely any books written about it, so I will make my account of it very short, and I hope all my readers will live to read longer and better accounts of it hereafter.

When Napoleon was sent away to St. Helena, Louis XVIII. was, as I have said before, brought back into Paris by the Allies, and set up there as king as he had been before. He was called Louis XVIII.; not Louis XVII., because it was considered by the Royalists that Louis XVI. had gone on being king to the end of his life, and that his little son Louis became king at his death, just as would have happened if Louis had died a natural death. Little Louis was called Louis XVII. by them while he lived, and spoken of by that name after he was dead, so that the next king had to be called Louis XVIII.

He had learned that it was necessary to yield in some degree to the wishes of the people. He gave them a charter or agreement to govern in a particular way, by

which he promised them many of the rights for which they had asked at the beginning of the Revolution, the right of believing what they liked, of publishing what books they liked, and others of the same kind. After this, he ruled quietly for nine years, when he died, and was buried with all the ceremonies that were usual in old times at the funerals of the kings of France.

His brother succeeded him, and was called Charles X. This is the third instance of three brothers succeeding one another on the throne in French history, and each time there have been no more of the same family after them. It happened when the family of Capet ended with the three sons of Philip le Bel, in the fourteenth century; when the Valois ended with the three sons of Henry II., in the sixteenth; and now again with the Bourbons the grandsons of Louis XV., in the nineteenth. Charles did not succeed so well as Louis had done. He made himself disliked by being entirely under the control of the priests, and doing whatever they wished.

The king and his ministers quarrelled with the Chambers who had been appointed to help him govern. After he had reigned for six years the quarrel came to a point. Charles published five decrees or acts, taking away some of the rights that had been promised to his subjects by the charter. At this the people were so angry that they rose up in a rebellion, and made barricades in the street as they used to do in old times. The king would not yield to them, because, as he said, "yielding had brought his brother to the scaffold," but at last he agreed to change his ministers, and choose some who would be pleasing to the people.

But when he found that this was not enough to satisfy his subjects, he gave up the crown. He wished his grandson to succeed him, and to be called Henry V., but the people would not hear of this, and offered the crown to his cousin, the Duke of Orleans. Then Charles X. left France altogether. He went to England and lived there for some time as a private gentleman, and afterwards went to Austria, where he died. His grandson, the Count of Chambord, is alive now, and it has often been proposed that he should be made King of France, but he has refused the crown, and there is no prospect of the French being governed again by any of Louis XV.'s descendants.

The cousin of Charles X., who had been Duke of Orleans, was known as king by the name of Louis-Philippe. He was called king not of France but of the French, to show that he had been chosen by the French people, and was not king either because of his birth, or from having taken the crown by force, which had been till then the only ways by which a man could become King of France. He reigned for eighteen years.

There were some troubles during his reign, both in and out of France. In France there were risings up against the government, and one year a terrible illness, called cholera, of which more than a million people died. Out of France there were wars in different countries in which the French king was concerned. There were two or three attempts made to murder Louis-Philippe, but he was never hurt; and, on the whole, the people seemed satisfied with his rule.

In his reign the bones of Napoleon were brought from St. Helena to Paris, and solemnly buried in a fine building,

called the Hôtel des Invalides, on the shores of the Seine. Just at the same time a nephew of Napoleon, the son of his brother Louis and his step-daughter Hortense, whose name was Louis Napoleon, came secretly to France, and tried to stir up the army to revolt against the Government. He was taken prisoner, and shut up in a castle, from which he escaped a few years afterwards in the dress of a working man. It was not long before he was able to go back to France in triumph.

The people grew discontented with the king. They held meetings, and set up barricades in the streets. The king then gave up the crown, as Charles X. had done before him, and left Paris with the queen and his children. The mob had taken away the royal carriages, and they had to drive out of Paris in cabs.

After this it was resolved that there should be a republic, as there had been after the great Revolution, with a president for chief, and two councils, called the Senate and the Assembly, to help him govern. All over France deputies were chosen to make up the Assembly. Louis Napoleon was one of them. A little later he was chosen President of the Republic for four years, and before the end of that time he had managed to prepare everything for having himself declared Emperor, as his uncle had been before him.

The army was on his side, and no one made much resistance when Napoleon declared that the Assembly was at an end, arrested his principal enemies, and filled Paris with troops. He now governed by himself for about a year, and then the crown for which he so much wished was offered to him by the people, and he was crowned

Emperor at the Palace of St. Cloud, and took the name of Napoleon III. Napoleon II. was the son of Napoleon I., who died when he was about nineteen, and had always lived with his mother in Germany, and had never really governed any one.

Napoleon III. was emperor for eighteen years. He was a great friend of our Queen Victoria, and helped the English in the Crimean War against Russia in the year 1855; but he was not successful in his different undertakings, and he soon left off being popular in France. In the year 1870 he went to war with Germany, thinking he was certain of success, and wanting to turn away his subjects' attention from his government in France; but he found his enemies stronger than he expected. His armies were driven back, the Germans marched into France without his being able to stop them, and at last a battle was fought at Sedan, after which Napoleon gave up himself and his army as prisoners to the King of Prussia.

The French, who had long been tired of the Emperor, now turned against him. He was declared to be deposed from the throne, and France for the third time became a republic. Napoleon went away to England with his wife and son, and lived there for about two years, when he died. His only son was killed fighting with the English army in Africa when he was twenty-three years old.

Meanwhile the Germans took several towns in France, defeated all the French armies, besieged Paris for four months and took it, made a peace called the Peace of Frankfort, by which the province of Alsace and part of Lorraine were given up to them, and went back again to Germany, all in less than a year from the time when the

war began. France has ever since been a republic, with one president after another to be at the head of affairs. Whether this form of government will last, or some other change be made in the course of time, it is impossible to say.

I have now given you some account of the history of France from the time of Julius Cæsar to that at which I write, and I hope that all my readers will feel inclined to learn more about it when they grow older. For, if people care at all for history—that is, for knowing what has been happening to the people who lived in the world before they were born—they ought to care about the history of a nation with which their own country has had so much to do, and which has been concerned with so many of the important events happening in all the other countries of Europe.

. The French are our nearest neighbours on the Continent, and are, besides, one of the greatest and most important nations in the world. Their history is full of interesting and amusing events, of which I have been obliged to leave the greater part untold, because there was not space in this book to hold them.

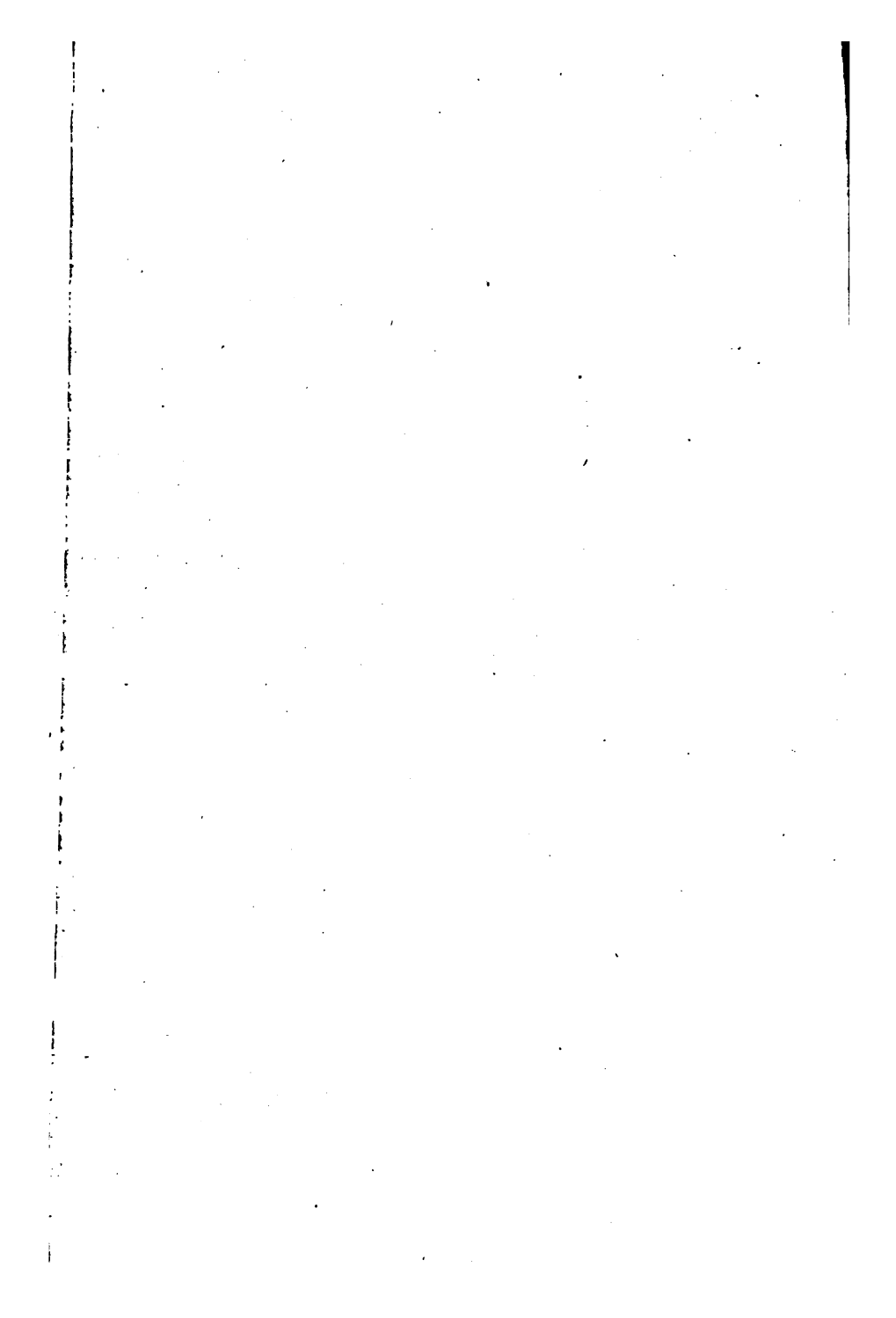
And now, being come to the end of all I had to say, I will wish all my readers who have managed to come so far as the journey's end with me a friendly

FAREWELL.

June 22^d 1880.

Printed by R. & R. CLARK, Edinburgh.

21



**THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT**

**This book is under no circumstances to be
taken from the Building**

